# CONTENTS (Mokuji)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KEY QUESTIONS</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greetings &amp; introductions, farewells &amp; other key expressions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asking the way / Celebrating being lost</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thanking someone for a meal, saying goodbye, saying thank you</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apologising, asking permission</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making &amp; refusing requests</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling on neighbours, going on holiday</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casual conversation</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal pronouns</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting sentences &amp; improving the flow</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic conjunctions (sentence joiners)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More conjunctions – connecting words and phrases</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar &amp; particles – grammatical relations between words or phrases</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERBS - form types, descriptions, conversion rules</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB CONJUGATION TABLES (MS Excel)</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes about verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives (list), opposites, notes about adjectives</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVERB LISTS (sorted by English &amp; Japanese)</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYS WORDS, OBJECTS, FOOD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the airport, at passport control</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countries, languages, nationalities</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan place names</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasons and weather, nature – key words (83), climbing mountains (84)</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plants and trees, at the beach, snowy days, harbor</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animals (85), parts of animals, religion (86)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinosaurs, etc., night sky, space, planets</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telling the time, weeks years, expressing time</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days of the week (91), dates of the month (91), months of year (92)</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese public holidays</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupations, interests and hobbies (96)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction materials &amp; jobs</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GARDENING WORDS AND PHRASES</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insects/bugs, on the farm, garden</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counting people &amp; objects</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weights, measurements &amp; shapes</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eating, food (106), food descriptions</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COOKING, seasoning, parts of animals &amp; fish</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Having friends to dinner

ENTERTAINMENT

Key words
In a theatre/movies, charges and cancellations
At the movies
At a restaurant/cafés, Japanese food definitions
Teas, onigiri, alcohols, wines
Ordering, serving sizes (113), general restaurant words
Sushi restaurant, ramen restaurant
Paying
Fast food joints, going out for a drink
Karaoke, Internet cafes, etc.
Sports and outdoor activities
Japanese festivals

SHOPPING, AROUND THE HOUSE

Shopping & general words
Department store departments
Food shopping, special diets and food allergies (119)
Clothes and accessories, what’s it made of (materials) (120)
Trying on clothes, shopping for shoes, discount terms
Internet shopping
Shop names
Places, objects, clothes, location, colours
Location, colours, how much is it?
At the post office
At the chemist, medicines
At the bank
At the bike shop, at the hair dresser
At the library
Souvenir shopping
Delivery services – sending bags, suitcases, boxes, etc.
Houses and buildings, around the house: parts of houses
Types of buildings, kitchen, bedroom, bathroom
House action verbs
In the house, describing breakdowns (130)
Tools

TRAVEL AND GETTING AROUND

Key words
Planning a trip – Internet web page booking
Confirming a room reservation
Travelling by car, parts of a car
TRANSPORT, travelling by train (135), taxis (136)
Travelling, buying express train tickets, missing a train
Hotels, accommodation, checking in
Hotel words and expressions, problems
Hot springs, onsen, Japanese inns (140)
Inside a room in a Japanese inn
Using the in-room telephone, checking out & paying the bill
Asking & giving directions, orientation points, giving directions
Exact (relative) location
FAMILIES, CHILDREN & THE BODY

Families, people and kids 145-146
Baby/childcare 147
Types of nursery 147
Baby & childbirth-related terms 147
CHILD ACCIDENTS & SEEING THE DOCTOR 148
CHILDHOOD ILLNESSES and MEDICAL TERMS 148
Children's play – names of toys, play equipment, etc. 148
  Admiring a baby 149
  Asking about a kindergarten 149
  Introducing yourself at kindergarten or school 150
  Phoning the kindergarten/school 150
  Writing an absence note 150
  Meeting your child's teacher 150
In school, schools, school rooms (151), subjects (151) 150
Pre-school, grade school, junior high/high school 151

Parts of the body, body action verbs, moving/movements, feelings 153-154
Personal condition, expressing emotions 155
Personal characteristics 155

BUSINESS

In the office, ranks, jobs (general) & office objects 155
Seniority in a company 157
Introductions, introducing yourself: exchanging business cards 157
Introducing people, meeting someone for the first time 158
Starting a conversation, other words and expressions 159
Gratitude and apology, farewell 159
Asking someone for something, expressions of declining 160
Refusing a request, making a proposal 160
ANSWERING THE PHONE (range of expressions) 161
Answering an outside call for someone else 161
When your boss is not at his/her desk 162
If the person can't get to the phone 162
When the call is for someone else 163
Leaving a message, using your cell phone 163
Apologizing/being late to an appointment 164
Asking for directions, calling in sick, asking permission 164
Making an appointment, asking for someone, starting a conversation 164
Interrupting someone at work, general phrases (166) 165
Business Japanese 166
Other words and expressions 166
Taking clients out to dinner, leaving somewhere 167
Computer terminology 167
More office vocabulary, types of company, departments (169) 168
Internal and external e-mail messages 169
Business Japanese vocabulary

MISCELLANEOUS

Let’s do stuff! 171
Gift giving 172
Expressions and verbs for giving and receiving 173
Sentence structures 176
Describing past activities 178
PLAIN (conversational) FORM 180
Deletions 183
Keigo: sonkeigo, kenjougo & teineigo, polite family terms 185
Polite family terms 188
Additional notes 189

SENTENCE STRUCTURES

Amari (189) Arimasu (189) Baai wa (193) Bakari (194) -ba yokatta (194)
Chikaku (194) Chinami ni (195) Demo (195) Deshou (196)
Kamo shiremasen/kamoshirenai (196) Dono gurai (199) Dono kata (199)
Dono koto (200) Dono ni shimasu (209) Koto ni shimasu (210) Koto (210)
Dochira (197) Dore (200) Mieru/miemasu (212) Mima (212)
Donny yatte (201) Hado (202) Monon (213) Moshi (214)
Hou ga ii (196) Ichiban (204) Mono (213) Moshi (214)
imasu iru (205) to imasu (205) Miso (214) Miso (214)
-to itte imashita (206) Iro iro (205) No yameru (239) No yameru (239)
-ke (217) Jibun (206) No (217) Nai (217)
Kanarazu (207) te kudasaimashita (227) Okimasu (222) Okimasu (222)
Kamarazu (207) Koto (208) Omoimasu (222) to omote imas (223) Tsumori desu (223)
Kota ga arimasu (208) Kommoi (215) Uchi ni (224) Yotei desu (224)
Mada...masen(211) Muma (211) Shi (226) Shika (226)
to misemasu(212) mii desu (213) Sugimasu/sugiru (229) Suki (229)
Motte (214) Mueru (215) Tame ni (231) Tara (232)
Nakana (217) Mido (215) -tara ii desu ka? (234) -tare (234)
Narimasa (219) Mieru/miemasu (212) -tare ii desu ka? (234) -tare (234)
Omoimasu (222) Miki (215) -tare ii desu ka? (234) -tate (234)
Uchi ni (224) Owaru (225) Kote (210) Kote (210)
Sugi (226) Shimaimashita (227) Kote (210) Kote (210)
Sugi (226) Shira (226) Shimaimashita (227) Shim (227)
Tome ni (231) Shima (227) Shimaimashita (227) Shim (227)
Wasuremashita (238) Shi (226) Shiki (226) Shiki (226)
You ni narimashita (240) Shi (226) Shiki (226) Shiki (226)
Zuibun (241) Shi (226) Shiki (226) Shiki (226)

CHARACTERS AND WRITING TIPS

Hiragana & katakana characters and stroke order 243
Tips for writing kanji 244
Kanji word list 185-192

MISCELLANEOUS WORDS AND PHRASES 244
Politics, officialdom & economics terms 254
Official words and expressions 254
At the immigration office 254
Forgetting to renew your visa 254
Losing your foreigners registration card 255
Tax and insurance 255
Economic terminology, miscellaneous words 255
Notes (space) 256

EMERGENCY ESSENTIALS, HOSPITALS / DOCTORS 257
Reporting a robbery at the koban, general words 257
HOSPITALS / DOCTORS, illnesses (list), types of pain (260) 259
When do you feel pain?, expressions of general problems 260
AT THE DOCTOR, AT THE DENTIST, visiting the pediatrician (263) 261
Medical departments and wards, other signs and notices 263
MEDICAL DICTIONARY TERMS 264

In the event of an earthquake 267
Fire! 267
MISCELLANEOUS VOCABULARY LIST 267
Disclaimer: The author has tried to make the information in this book as accurate as possible, but it is provided 'as is' and he accepts no responsibility for any loss, damages or inconvenience sustained by anyone resulting from this information.

**KEY QUESTIONS**

**Table of Contents**

Who
- Who is this?
- Who is the Manager?

Why
- Why did she buy a book at the bookshop?

When
- When are you going to the Department store?
- When did you graduate from college?

How
- How do I get to Ikebukuro?
- How is [ ]?

Did you go out somewhere yesterday?

Which one?
- Which person is A-San?
- Which is Paul's bag?

Which way/place/What place?/Which one (of 2)
- Which way to [PLACE]?

How many?
- How many mikan did you buy?

How many/How much/How often/How long

[ ] (ikaga/dou) desuka?

Did you go out somewhere yesterday?

Which way/place/What place?/Which one (of 2)
- Which way to [PLACE]?

How many/How much/How often/How long

Doko & Dochira
- What is the name of your company?
- Where is your company?

Can I ask for an interpreter?

May I?
- Please point out.

Give it to me please.
She gave it to me.
She gave it to us.
He lives in a house with a red roof.

Do you have my address and telephone number?

No, I don't.
Let me have it.
Can you give me your office address, too?

Dare or Donata (more polite)
- Kochira wa donata desu ka?
- Manager wa donata desu ka?

Naze (nah-zeh)
- Kanojo wa naze honya de hon o kaimashita ka?

Itsu (itsu)
- Itsu departo e ikimasu ka?
- Itsu daigaku o sotsugyou shimashita ka?

Dou (dou) / Ikaga
- Ikebukuro e dou ikimasu ka?
- [ ] (ikaga/dou) desuka?

Did you go out somewhere yesterday?

Dono (adj) / Dore (of several)
- A-san wa dono hito desu ka?
- Paul-san no kaban wa dore desu ka?

Dochira
- [PLACE] wa dochira desu ka?

Ikutsu
- Mikan o ikutsu kaimashita ka?

Dono / Dore kurai

Anata no kaisha wa {dochira} desu ka?
Anata no kaisha wa {doko } desu ka?

Tsuuyaku onegai shimasu?
Ii desu ka?
Yubi sashite kudasai.

Watashi ni kudasai.
Watashi ni kudasaimashita.
Watashitachi ni kudasaimashita.
Yane no akai ie ni sunde imasu.

Watakushi ni juusho to denwa bangou wa omochi deshou ka?
Iie, motte orimasen.
Itadakemasu ka?
Jimusho no banchi mo itadakemasu ka?
Have you two met?
Do you know my friend [this person]?
No, I don’t think so.
No, I haven’t had the pleasure of meeting [this person].
I believe you already know one another?
Yes, we have already met.
No, I don’t believe we have met before.
What kind of personality does Michael have?

Allow me to introduce Mr. Smith.
Glad to have met you.
Same here.
We haven’t seen each other since New Year’s.

The other day: a few days ago
ie: Thank you for (your help) the other day.
Good to see you again.

Please don’t forget.
I’ll certainly do so.

It’s true, isn’t it?
You are coming, aren’t you?

When it comes to food….

Could you ____ for me?
I want to ____.
May I ____?
I have to ____.

EXAMPLES
Who is that person?
Whose bag is this?
Which do you like better, meat or fish?
Where did you meet Mr Yamanote?
How do you read this kanji?
What are you reading?

Sumisu-san o goshoukai itashimasu.
Omen i kakarete yokatta desu. check with H
Douzo yoroshiku.
Oshougatsu irai ate imasen, ne?

Senjitsu
Senjitsu wa arigatou gozaimashita.
Senjitsu wa doumo.

Please don’t forget.
I’ll certainly do so.

It’s true, isn’t it?
You are coming, aren’t you?

When it comes to food….

Could you ____ for me?
I want to ____.
May I ____?
I have to ____.

EXAMPLES
Who is that person?
Whose bag is this?
Which do you like better, meat or fish?
Where did you meet Mr Yamanote?
How do you read this kanji?
What are you reading?

Sumisu-san o goshoukai itashimasu.
Omen i kakarete yokatta desu. check with H
Douzo yoroshiku.
Oshougatsu irai ate imasen, ne?

Senjitsu
Senjitsu wa arigatou gozaimashita.
Senjitsu wa doumo.

Please don’t forget.
I’ll certainly do so.

It’s true, isn’t it?
You are coming, aren’t you?

When it comes to food….

Could you ____ for me?
I want to ____.
May I ____?
I have to ____.

EXAMPLES
Who is that person?
Whose bag is this?
Which do you like better, meat or fish?
Where did you meet Mr Yamanote?
How do you read this kanji?
What are you reading?

GREETINGS and INTRODUCTIONS

Table of Contents

How do you do?
Pleased to meet you.
Please come in.

How have you been doing?
I’m glad to meet you.

How’s it going?

What’s up?

What’s up?

What’s up?
What’s new?
What’s happening?
Nothing much.
How are you?
Fine, thanks / Doing fine thank you.
Very well thanks.
Not bad.
No special change.
And you?

I’m fine, thank you.
Long time no see.
You look good. (great)
You look worried.
So so…
I have lots of house work to do.

What shall I do?
What will you do?
What’s the matter?

Responding to praise
Your Japanese is good!
No, I still have a long way to go.
Oh no, not at all / that’s ridiculous.

This is Michael.
You’re kidding.

I am interested in [subject].
I am interested in wine.
I am not interested in wine.

FAREWELLS

See you! (casual)
See you later.
See you again.
See you soon.
See you on Monday.
See you on Friday evening.
See you in a week.
Please come again.
See you tomorrow.
See you tomorrow.
See you later.
I must be going.
Let’s meet again.
(Please) take care – (a farewell expression)
(Please) take care – (said to people who are ill)
Please call me any time.
Please come again tomorrow.

Ja mate ne! / Mata atode!
Ja mata atode!
Mata aimashou.
Dewa mata.
Getsuyoubi ni ome ni kakarimasu.
Kinyoubi no yoru ni ome ni kakarimasu.
Isshukan shitara ni ome ni kakarimasu.
Mata douzo.
Mata ashita / Mata ne!
Soredewa mata ashita.
Soredewa nochi hodo. check with H
Shitsuree shimasu.
Mata aimashou.
Kio tsukete (kudasai) or
Odaiji ni.
Itsu demo denwa shite kudasai.
Ashita mata kite kudasai.
I have something to do so I’ll be late.  
Please say that again. 
Next time 

**OTHER KEY EXPRESSIONS**

**Table of Contents**

What? (expressing surprise)  
What?  
What?  
Let me see….  
What do you think?  

Thank you for your goodness.  
Thank you for the other day.  
Thank you very much for the other day. (more polite)  

**The last occasion**  
When was the last time you came?  

Can I take a photo? 
Please take a photo (of/for me).  

May I come in?  
Please come in.  
Please come this way.  
After you.  
Go ahead / there you are / Help yourself.  
Please go first / After you.  

(Yes) That’s right / It is.  
Yes, isn’t it? / Isn’t it so? so it is (expression of agreement)  
Is that so?  

I understand.  
I understand.  
I see.  
Really? (casual)  
Really? (polite)  
No kidding.  
No way!  
I think so.  
I don’t think so.  
Probably so.  
That must be interesting.  
You’re right.  
Yes, it is.  
No, it isn’t.  
That’s too bad.  
Please.  
Good.  

Chotto youji ga aru node, okuremasu.  
Mou ikkai itte kudasai.  
Jikai  

E? / Are?  
Nan desu ka? (polite)  
Nani? (casual)  
Ee to….  
Donna you ni omoimasu ka? (polite)  

Osewa ni narimashita.  
Koaidai wa doumo.  
Senjitsu wa doumo arigatou gozaimashita.  

Zenkai  
Zenkai wa itsu okoshi ni narimashita ka?  

Shashin o totte, ii desu ka?  
Shashin o totte kudasai.  
Dou omoimasu ka? (more casual)  
Haitte ii desu ka?  
Douzo o hairi kudasai.  
Douzo kochira e.  
Douzo o-saki ni.  
Hai, douzo.  
Saki ni douzo.  

(Hai,) Sou desu.  
Sou desu ne?  
Sou desu ka? (Rising intonation - use in place of ‘Really?’) & Honto?  
Sou desu ka? (No rising intonation).  
Sou da ne (As above but more casual).  
Sou desu ka... (spoken with falling intonation)  
Ne?  
Honto desu ka?  
Masaka. (.backward means ‘surely’)  
Dame desu!  
Sou omoimasu.  
Sou wa omoimasen.  
Tabun sou deshou.  
Sore wa omoishiroi desu ne.  
Honto da.  
Hai, sou desu.  
Iie, chigaimasu.  
Sore wa zannen desu.  
Onegai shimasu.  
Ii desu.
May I help you?
Can I help?
Let me help you.
Let me show you the way.
That's all right / no problem.
Is it all right? / Are you all right?
Are you OK?
Excuse me. Where is the Bank of Tokyo?

You're welcome.
My pleasure, likewise.
With pleasure.

Have a nice weekend.
How was your weekend?
How was your flight?
I made a mistake.
Sorry to disturb you.
Sorry to have disturbed you.
Indeed!
Maybe.

That is fine.
I agree.
I don't agree.
I don't know.
I don't mind.
Never mind.
It cannot be helped.
I am in trouble.
What is the matter with you?
Will you please wait a while.
Sorry I made you wait/ Sorry to have kept you waiting.
Originally, naturally

I can't remember.
I remember.
That's too bad.
Do you have a minute?
Do you have time?
You decide (I'll leave it to you).
Please leave it to me (you can count on me).

Zutto means the whole time/for a long time/[something is] long
For a whole hour
For a whole day
For a whole year
For my whole life

A scene, a sight
Scenery, a scene
I have an appointment at 7.45pm.
I have an appointment with a friend tonight.

Because I fast was asleep last night.
How do you feel?
How are you doing? 
I am not feeling well. 
Don’t mention it.

Take out (ie: of a pocket), mail, submit 

About 
Eg: I read a book about Japanese culture. 
I saw a TV program about animals. 
I watched a DVD about WWII last week.

In, inside, among, while, during 
Eg: In my company, there are 5 foreigners. 
Among them, 3 speak good Japanese. 
Read this book and write a report about its content within 3 days.

Oh, yes (when remembering something). 
Thank goodness! 
Are you sure it’s alright? (confirming permission)
Oops! (used when you have made a mistake)
Lucky you! 
Well done! (when things went successfully)
Thank you (expressing gratitude for help received).

Is [this] all right? (asking whether something is appropriate or not) 
Sounds good. 
[sentence….] ne

Help yourself. 
What’s it for?

Sorry to be late.

Good luck. 
Hello. Do you speak English? 
I only speak a little Japanese.

I can read and write hiragana and katakana. 
Excuse me, may I ask you something? (polite)
Can I ask you a question? 
Pardon me for interrupting. 
What is --- in Japanese? 
What is --- in English? 
For instance / For example…
How do I/you say [WORD]?
How do I/you say [Kanji character]?
Please may I practice my Japanese with you?

Please can you write it down? 
How do you spell that? 
Do you know what [WORD] means in Japanese? 
What does [WORD] mean? 
Please correct my Nihongo and tell me where the corrections need to be made. Please!

Go-kigen ikaga desu ka? 
Kibun ga warui desu. 
Iie, iin desu.

Dasu 
Tsuite 
Nihon no bunka ni tsuite hon o yonda. 
Doubutsu ni tsuite TV bangumi o mita. 
Senshuu WWII ni tsuite no DVD o mita.

Uchi 
Watashi no kaisha ni gaikokujin ga 5-nin. 
Sono uchi, 3-nin wa Nihongo ga totemo jouzu da. 
Kono hon o yonde, sono naïyou (content) o mikka inai (within) ni repooto ni kakimasu.

Sou sou. 
Yokatta! 
Ii’n desu ka? 
Ikenai. 
Ii naa! 
Umaku ikimashita ne! 
Okagesama de.

[Kore] de ii desu ka? 
Sou ne. 
‘ne’ is put at the end of a sentence to add feeling or to seek agreement from the listener.

Douzo meshiagatte kudasai. 
Nan no tame ni mono desu ka?

Osokunate sumimasen.

Koo’un. 
Konnichiwa. Eigo o hanasemasu ka? 
Watashi wa nihongo ga sukoshi shika hanasemasu 
[ I Jap language a little, only, nothing but cannot speak] Nihongo ga sukoshi hanasemasu. 
Hiragana to Katakana no yomikaki ga dekimasu. 
Chotto kagai masuga? 
Shitsumon o shite mo ii desu ka? 
Shitsurei shimasu. 
--- wa Nihongo de nan desu ka? 
--- wa Eigo de nan desu ka? 
Tatoeba…. 
[WORD] wa dou iimasu (say) ka? 
Kono [Kanji character] wa dou iimasu (say) ka? 
Watashi wa anata to Nihongo o renshu shitai no desuga?

Koite kudasai. 
Spelu wa nan desu ka? 
Nihongo de [WORD] wa dou iu iki desu ka? 
[WORD] wa dou iu iki desu ka? Check this w. H Watashi no Nihongo no machigai wo naoshite kudasai. Onegai shimasu!
I don’t know.
Please teach me.
That is correct / That’s right.
I think so.
I don’t think so.

Please say it more slowly?
Please say it again?
No, thank you.
I’ll look forward to it (indicates pleasurable anticipation)
Of course.

I am going out. (short trip)
I am going out now.
I’m home!
Welcome back.

It’s not bad.
It’s not that.
It’s not here.
Not too much.
Not too fast.
Not yet.

Isn’t it? Aren’t you? Etc.

Enough / plenty
I have enough money
Does he have enough money?

I have put sugar on it already.
Application

First of all
Window / counter
Should
All, every
ie: All rights should be gender-equal.

I’m looking for [object].
Found

YO!
Sure.

Japanese is very interesting, I tell you.
This book is interesting, right?
It takes at least 10 hours to get to America, right?
I'll talk, you know.
I talked, you know.
It's expensive, you know.
It was expensive, you know.
It's quiet, you know.
It was quiet, you know.
He's a teacher, you know.
He was a teacher, you know.

Asking the way / Celebrating being lost

I am lost.
Excuse me. Which way to Ginza?
How do I get to Ginza?
Excuse me. I'm looking for the Awesome Hotel.
Do you have any brothers or sisters?
Do you have any brothers or sisters?
That's very hard, isn't it.
That restaurant is always crowded, isn't it?
Let's see a movie?
YES: OK, When and where shall we meet?
NO: Sorry, I can't.

Thanking someone for a meal

If you went to a person's house and they gave you a meal, say:
Thank you for the meal/drinks the other day. Konaida wa doumo gochisou-sama deshita.

The standard reply to the above phrases is:
On the contrary, let me thank you. Kochira koso, arigatou gozaimashita.

If you haven't seen the person for a while, say:
It's been a long time.
It's been a long time.

A common response would be:
Sorry not to have been in touch. Go-busata shite imasu.

If you meet someone important to you, ie: your child's teacher or a client, your follow up words would be:
I am continually in your favour. Itsumo o-sewa ni natte imasu.

Or you could follow up the greeting with an enquiry into their health or business:
Are you well? / No change? (in your health) Genki (O-genki desu ka?) / O-kawari nai desu ka?
Saying goodbye

Goodbye.  
Shitsurei shumasu.  
Goodbye. I'm off.  
Itte kimasu.  
See you! / Bye! (among friends)  
Mata ne / Ja ne!  
Take care of your health.  
O-daiji ni.

Saying thank you

Thank you.  
Sumimasen.  
I'm obliged to you.  
O-sewa ni narimashita.  
You've been a great help.  
Tasukarimashita.  
Thank you for your help.  
Gokurou sama.  
Thank you for your help/work.  
O-tsukare sama.  
I am very grateful.  
Kyoushuku desu / Osoreiremasu.

Apologising

I'm sorry.  
Shitsurei shimasu.  
Oh, I'm sorry. I'll come back later.  
A, shitsurei shimashita. Mata kimasu.  
I'm obliged to you.  
O-sewa ni narimashita.  
Sorry to have kept you waiting.  
O-matese shimashita.  
Oh, pardon. I'm sorry. Are you alright?  
Gomen-nasai. Sumimasen deshita. Daijoubu desu ka?

Asking permission

Could I please have tomorrow off?  
Ashita yasumasete moraemasu ka?  
Could you possibly let me have tomorrow off?  
Ashita yasumasete itadakitai no desu ga? [More polite]

Making requests

Please. (lit. I request)  
Yoroshiku o-negai shimasu / itashimasu.  
Would you mind waiting a moment?  
Chotto matte itadakemasu ka?  
Excuse me. Would you mind moving this?  
Sumimasen. Kore o dokete moraemasen ka?  
Ask H for casual equivalent

Leading to a request

About tomorrow's meeting.  
Ashita no kaigi no koto nan desu ga,  
I phoned because there was something I wanted to ask you.  
Jitsu wa, o-negai ga ate, o-denwa shita wake nan desu ga,  
I'm sorry to disturb you when you are busy.  
O-isogashii tokoro, sumimasen.
Refusing requests

At the first hint of something undesirable:
Well….. Sou desu ne….

When the request comes, it is often enough to say:
Well, it's just that….. Saa, chotto….

When spoken hesitantly, with pauses before and after the *chotto*, either of the phrases below should convey your desire not to partake:
I'm rather busy at work these days. Konogoro, chotto, shigoto ga isogashikute.
I've really not been feeling well recently. Saikin, chotto, taichou (physical condition) o kuzushimashite.

If you cannot think of a specific reason, you could play for time:
I'll discuss it (with someone) and call you back. Chotto soudan shite, mata o-denwa shimasu.
Please let me think it over. Because it is important. Chotto kangaesasate kudasai. Daiji na koto desu kara.

Specific excuses make convincing refusals

I'm sorry, but something urgent has come up. Sumimasen ga, kyuuyou ga dekimashita no de.
I'm afraid I'm not free until the 20th. Zannen desu ga, hatsuka wa tsugou ga warui (inconvenient?) no desu ga.

Or more vaguely….
I'm sorry but I can't help you this time. Moushiwake arimasen ga, konkai wa o-yaku ni tatemasen no de.
I'm sorry but I'll forego this one. Zannen desu ga, kondo wa enryo sasete itadakimasu.

Calling on the neighbours – as a new arrival

Hello, my name is Jon. And I've just moved in next door. Gomen kudasai. Tonari ni hikkoshimashita Jon desu.
Pleased to meet you. Douzo yoroshiku.

Admiring a neighbour's garden

Beautiful day, isn't it? I see you're doing some gardening. Ii tenki desu ne. Niwa-shigoto desu ka?
Those are really splendid flowers! May I take a look? Maa, migoto (impressive) na hana desu ne! Chotto mite ii ka shira?
Please do. Come inside and have a look. Douzo, douzo. Naka ni haitte mite kudasai.

Going on holiday

Actually, I want to ask you a favour. We're leaving for New Zealand tomorrow and the house will be vacant for a month. I've written down the phone number of my wife's office. Would you get in touch (with the office) if anything happens?
Yes, I certainly will. And I hope you have a nice, Jitsu wa, o-negai ga ate mairimashita. Ashita kara, NZ e kaeru no de, ikkagetsu rusu ni suru koto ni narimashita. Tsuma no kaisha no denwa bangou ga koko ni kaite okimashita no de, nanika arimashita, go-renraku itadakemasen ka?
Hai, wakarimashita. Ii desu ne. Yukkuri tanoshinde kite.
CASUAL CONVERSATION / Meeting someone for the first time

Table of Contents

What is your name?

My name is Jon.
Where do you live?
I live in Akatsuka.
Where did you come (commute) from today?
I came from Akatsuka.

Which country are you from?

Are you Japanese?
Are you from Japan?
Where are you from?
Which part of [PLACE] do you come from?
I have come to Japan from New Zealand.
Have you been to [PLACE]?
I have been there.
Have you been there?
Have you been to this park before?
Have you been to this cafe before?
Have you been to this movie before?
Have you been to Tokyo before?
How many times have you been to Japan?
I have been to Japan 5 times.

Q: When did you come to [PLACE]?
A: I came in March this year.
When will you return to your country?
I will return to my country in October next year.

What month did you visit [PLACE]?
I visited [PLACE] in [MONTH]

ie: I visited Japan in March
Which country did you like the most?
Did you like it?
What did you do there?

O-namae wa? (casual)
0r: O-namae wa nan desu ka? (polite)
Watashi no name wa Jon desu.
Anata wa doko ni sunde imasu ka?
Akatsuka ni sunde imasu.
Kyou wa doko kara kimashita ka?
Akatsuka kara kimashita.

O-kuni wa dochira desu ka? (=V. polite)
Doko no kuni kara kimashita (casual)
Anata wa Nihon-jin desu ka?
Anata wa Nihon kara desu ka?
Anata wa doko kara kimashita ka?
[PLACE] no doko kara kimashita ka?
Watashi wa NZ kara Nihon e kimashita.
[PLACE] e itta koto ga arimasu ka?
Itta koto ga arimasu.
Itta koto ga arimasu ka?
Kono kouen ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Kono kissaten ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Kono eiga ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Tokyo ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Nihon ni nan-kai itta koto ga arimasu ka?
Nihon ni go-kai itta koto ga arimasu.

Itsu [PLACE] e kimashita ka?
Katashi no sangatsu ni kimashita.
Itsu kuni e kaerimasu ka?
Rainen no jugatsu ni kuni e kaerimasu.

Nangatsu ni [PLACE] e ikimashita ka?
Watashi wa sangatsu ni Nihon e ikimashita.
Anata wa dono kuni ga ichiban suki desu ka?
Kini irimashita ka?
Soko de nani o shimasita ka?
About how many years have you lived in Japan?

How old are you/he/she?

Your English is good. Are you a student?

What is your occupation?

Which company do you work for? I work for a publishing company.

What time does your job start?

What are your hobbies?

When is your birthday?

What have you studied today? What will you do this evening?

What do you do in the evenings?

Are you busy next Sunday? Are you free tomorrow?

Or: Are you free? Where should we meet?

Shall we meet at [PLACE]?

What time is best for you?

What time should we meet?

What do you say we go to [PLACE]?

Are you home tonight?

Where is your house close to?

Let’s go to [place name]

ie: Let’s go to Shinjuku park.

Would you like to come to my house?

Shall we go out?

Shall we go out to [place name]?

What is his name?

What is her name?

I am happy.

Basho/mono/hito

What is your favourite [place/object/person]?

ie: What is your favourite food?

Where is your favourite place?

Who is your favourite singer?

Nan-nen gurai Nihon ni sunde imashita ka?

Oikutsu desu ka? (Nansai desu ka?) / Toshi wa ikutsu? (casual)

Eigo umai-ne (casual)

Gakusei? (casual)

O-shigoto wa nan desu ka? (polite)

Dochira no kaisha desu ka?

Shuppan no kaisha de hataraitte imasu.

Shigoto wa nan-ji kara desu ka?

Shumi wa nan desu ka?

Tanjoubi wa itsu desu ka?

Kyou anata wa nani o benkyo shimashita ka?

Konban wa nani o shimasu ka?

Yoru nani o shimasu ka?

Raishuu no Nichiyoubi wa isogashii desu ka?

Ashita hima desu ka?

Hima desu ka?

Doko ni suru? (casual)

[PLACE] de aimashou ka?

Nanjii ga ii desu ka?

Nanjii ni suru? (casual)

[PLACE] ni ikai.

Anata wa ie ni imaska?

Anata no uchi wa doko no chikaku desu ka?

Watashi no uchi wa [PLACE] no chikaku desu

[place name] e ikimashou.

Shinjuku gyouuen e ikimashou.

Uchi ni kimasen ka?

Dekakemashou ka?

[place name] e dekakemashou ka?

Kare no namae wa nan desu ka?

Kanojo no namae wa nan desu ka?

Watashi wa shiawase desu.

[place name] e ikimashou.

basho/mono/hito

Suki na [ ] (doko/nan/dare) desu ka?

Suki na tabemono wa nan desu ka?

Suki na tokoro wa doko desu ka?

Suki na kashu (singer) wa dare desu ka?

Suki na [    ] (doko/nan/dare) desu ka?

How old are you/he/she?

How about….?

ie: How about coffee?

That sounds nice.

I’d love to.

It’s a shame/pity.

When are you going to [PLACE] tomorrow?

May I call you?

I will call you.

Please call me.

Can I have your address?

Can I have your phone number?

Can I have your e-mail address?

Please write your [Name/Address/Phone Number] on this piece of paper.

Please write your name & address on this piece of paper.

....dou desu ka?

Kohii wa dou desu ka?

Ii desu ne.

Yorokonde.

Zannen desu.

Ashita no itsu (nanji) [PLACE] e (ni) iki masu ka? *nanji means what time?

Denwa shite mo ii?

Denwa shimasu.

Denwa o kudasai.

Juusho o oshiete kudasai.

Denwa bangou o oshiete kudasai.

Meeru adoresu o oshiete kudasai.

Kono kami ni [name/address/tel #] o kaite kudasai.

Kono kami ni juusho to namae o kaite kudasai.

Akihito Kuroda
Shall I call you later?
I'll e-mail you.
Please e-mail me.
This is my address & telephone number.
Please come and see me.
**Could you do this please?**
It's getting late. Go on home now.

Let’s have dinner (or something) tonight.
Sure, that would be great.

See you later (when leaving)
Take care (said to a person leaving)
Say hello to X-san for me.
Long time no see. How’s it going?
See you around.
What’s wrong?
I’m lost
Excuse me.....
Let me see....
No thanks.
I see
No kidding!
That’s too bad.
Sorry to hear that.
Contact information
E-mail address
Is this your first time in Japan?
How long will you be here?
I’m staying for X days.

It’s very hot today, isn’t it?

Do you know **[NAME]**?
Do you know **Chris**?
**YES:** Yes, I do know **[NAME]**.
**NO:** No, I don’t know **[NAME]**.
Do you know **[PLACE]**?
Do you know **Kyoto**?

Do you know where **[PLACE]** is?

Do you want to **come** here **again**?
Do you want to **eat** this **again**?
Do you want to **drink** this **again**?
Do you want to **see** this movie **again**?

The last occasion
When was **the last time** you came?
I’ve met that person **before**.

What do you **want to do** (now)?
**What will you do?**
**What shall I do?**
I don’t fully understand

---

**Atode** denwa shimashou ka?
Meeru shimasu.
Meeru shite kudasai.
Watashi no renraku-saki desu.
Asobi ni kire kudasai.
Kore onegaishimasu.
Osoi node mou kaerinasai.

Konban, shokuji demo?
Hai, zehi.

Itte kimasu
Itte rasshai
X-san ni yoroshiku.
Hisashiburi. Choushi wa dou?
Chikai uchi ni.
Douka shimashita ka?
Michi ni moyoimashita.
Anou…
Eeetou…
Kekkou desu.
Naruhodo
Ussou!
Zannen desu
Okinodoku ni
Renraku saki
Meeru adores
Nihon wa hajimate desu ka?
Dono kurai taizai shimasu ka?
X nichi-kan taizai shimasu.

Kyou wa totemo atsui, desu ne?

**[NAME]-san** o shitte imasu ka?
**Chris-san** o shitte imasu ka?
Hai, shitei imasu.
Iie, shirimasen.

**[PLACE]** o shitte imasu ka?
**Kyoto** o shitte imasu ka?

**[PLACE]** ga dokoka shitte imasu ka?

**Mata** koko e kitai desu ka?
**Mata** kore o tabetai desu ka?
**Mata** kore o nomitai desu ka?
**Mata** kono eiga o mitai desu ka?

**Zenkai**
**Zenkai** wa itsu okoshi ni narimashita ka?
Sono hito to wa **mae ni** atta koto ga aru.

(Ima) nani o shitai desu ka?
**Dou suru no?**
**Dou shiyou ka na?**
**Yoku wakarimasen**
Why?
Look!
Look at that!
Shall we go?
Let’s go
Take care!
I love you
Q: What time do you wake up every morning?
A: I wake up at 8 o’clock
Were you able to sleep well?
How are you feeling this morning?

Cool
Uncool
Awesome / great
Great / Fine
Cute

Like
Eg: Tom likes fish
Q: Which do you like, sushi or tenpura?
A: I like both.
I like sushi more.
Dislike
 ie: He seems to dislike me.

Nande?
Mite! (=te form of mimasu)
Are o mite!
Iku? (Note: Dictionary form) (or Ikimashou?)
Ikou
Ki o tsukete ne!
Aishite imasu / Aishiteru
Maiasa nanji ni okimasu ka?
Hachi-ji ni okimasu.
Yoku nemuremashita ka?
Kesa wa ikaga desu ka?

Kakko ii
Kakko warui
Sugoi!
Suteki
Kawaii

Suki
Tomu-san wa sakana ga suki desu.
Sushi to tenpura to dochira ga suki desu ka?
Dochira mo suki desu.
Sushi ga motto suki desu.
Kirai
Kare wa watashi o kiratte iru mitai desu.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Table of Contents

Person
We
We like New Zealand.
You (plural)
What will you (both) do?
More than one person (plural)
You and I
They arrived at 7.30.

They (male)
They (female)

Hito
Watashi tachi
Watashi tachi wa New Zealand ga suki desu.
Anata tachi
Anata tachi wa dou surun desu ka?
Tachi ie: A-san tachi
Anata to watashi
Ano hitotachi wa shichi-ji han ni tsukimashita (arrived).
Karetachi
Kanojotachi

Otoko no hito
Onna no hito
Kare
Kanojo
Karera
Dareka
Konban dareka ga denwa o shimashita.
Konban dareka (ga) denwa o shimashita ka?
I (an Informal equivalent of ‘watashi’ used by men)
Boku no
Boku no kaban
Boku ni/o
Connecting sentences and improving the flow

Table of Contents

IMPROVING FLOW OF CONVERSATION

What's going to happen?  
Let's wait and see.  
I hope so/ I hope it's true.  
I hope not / I hope it's not true.  
Yes, so I heard.  
Could you repeat it one more time?  
What’s the matter?  
What shall I/we do?  
I think so.  
I see.  
Is that so?  
You see to be pretty busy at work.  
How is everybody in your family?  
I’ll have time in the afternoon.

Then….and  
Sorekara  
Kino eiga o mite sorekara kaimono o shimashita.

Besides, in addition to  
Sore ni  
Kono hana wa iro ga kirei desu.  
Sore ni nioi mo ii desu.

and  
Soshite is used to connect sentences, ie:  
Kimura-san wa kireina hito desu.  
Soshite totemo shinsetsu desu.

And / and so / therefore, (ie: because of S1, result S2 is  
Sorede  
produced or action S2 is taken). It has a similar meaning to
desukara or dakara (so).

**Sô, and so, therefore, that’s why**

*i.e.* Since I am not good at singing, I don’t like karaoke.

**dakara….**

Uta ga heta *dakara*, karaoke wa suki janai.

**Also**

'Mo' is used as follows:

Person A: (I am a student)
Person B: (I am *also* a student)

**Change of topic (‘By the way/incidentally…’)**

*In that case* (used when making a decision after hearing facts)

*Then, in that case*

More or less, generally

In recent years

Recently, lately, these days

*i.e.* Just recently I have become able to read Japanese newspapers.

**Tokorode**

Sore ja ⇐ or: ‘sore dewa’ (formal)

Dewa / Ja

Daitai

Kinnen

Saikin

Saikin nihongo no shinbun ga yomeru you ni narimashita.

Saikin, omoshirō eiga mita?

Sakki

Konogoro

**Sometimes**

Ahead of/beforehand

Occasionally

*i.e.* I meet him only occasionally.

Only, few, a little --

I only speak a little Japanese.

I only have 100 yen.

**Suddenly**

Close, right, immediately, at once

Yet

Eg: Can you write Hiragana?

No, I cannot write it yet.

About (approximate)

**But**

**But**

*i.e.* This juice is delicious *but* expensive.

But/hovever

To tell the truth (talking frankly)

Over, more than

This car seats no more than six.

Except for, besides

**Stuff/things**

Lie

Difference/distinction /wrong / differ

Examples:

Q: Is that person Japanese?

A: No, he isn’t.

This room is *different* from that room in size.

I have *different* tastes than my friend.

You have the *wrong* telephone number.

**Koto/mono**

Uso

Chigaimasu / Chigau

Ano hito wa Nihon-jin desu ka?

Iie, chigaimasu.

Kono heya to ano heya wa ookisa ga chigaimasu.

Watashi wa tomodachi to konomi ga chigau.

Denwa bangou ga chigaimasu yo.
Similar
ie: ‘This’ and ‘that’ are similar.

Example
Well..

All the way/time, the whole time/for a long time/[something is] long
Zutto

Zutto means
For a whole hour
For a whole day
For a whole year
For my whole life
At last, finally
Eg: At last Spring has come.
Always, surely, certainly, without fail
Probably, perhaps, maybe
ie: Maybe she won’t come.
Probable, maybe, quite, some
ie: His English is pretty good.
Not easily (used with a negative)
This lid will not come off easily.

Beginning

End
Clearly
Considerably, very much, really, a lot
(compared with what was expected)
The past; one’s past

How many do you need?
How long will it take?
Time required

I’m studying XX. Watashi wa XX o manande imasu. ❯ check with H
Law Houritsu
Economics Keizai

I work for a XX company.
Financial Kin-yuu
Media Masukomi
Manufacturing Seizougyou
Food products Shokuhin
Editor Henshuusha

Law Literature Bungaku
Art Bijutsu

More conjunctions – connecting words and phrases

Table of Contents

Therefore Dakara, desu kara
Accordingly Shitagatte
In that case Sorenara
Moreover Shikamo, Sonoue
On the other hand Ippou
However Keredomo

More conjunctions – connecting words and phrases

Therefore Dakara, desu kara
Accordingly Shitagatte
In that case Sorenara
Moreover Shikamo, Sonoue
On the other hand Ippou
However Keredomo
On the contrary  Soredokoroka
But  Shikashi
Otherwise  Samomaito
In other words  Iikaereba
Anyway  Tonikaku
In short  Tsumari, yousoruni
After all  Kekkyoku
Or  Soretomo
Well  Sate
By the way  Tokorode
Namely  Sunawachi
Or example  Tatoeba
Because  Nazenara
To tell the truth  Jitsu wa

Examples
Would you like coffee?  Kohii o nomi ni narimasu ka?....
Or would you rather have tea?  Soretomo koucha ni nasaimasu ka?
It's nice weather, isn't it?  Li tenki desu ne……
Well, where shall we go today?  Sate, kyou wa doko e ikimashou ka?
Don't you know him?  Ano hito o shiranai desu ka?
To tell you the truth, I don't either  Jitsuwa watashi mo desu.
She is very beautiful and charming.  Kanojo wa bijin de miryokuteki desu.
Moreover, her father is a millionaire.  Shikamo kanojo no otousan wa okuman chouja desu.

To connect nouns

to – 'and'

Examples:
I like tennis and skiing.  Watashi wa tenisu to sukii ga suki desu.

ya – 'and'

Examples:
When I'm free, I read things such as newspapers & magazines.  Hima na toki wa shinbun ya zasshi o yomimasu.

ka – 'or'

Examples:
I want to drink coffee or green tea.  Kohii ka ocha o nomitai.
You can go to school by either bus or subway.  Gakkou e wa basu ka chikatetsu de ikemasu.
I drink either juice or milk every morning.  Maiasa juusu ka miruku o nomu.
Either write a letter or make a call please.  Tegami o kaku ka denwa o kakeru ka dochira ka shite kudasai.
Coffee or tea  Kohii ka kocha
You or I  Anata ka watashi
A dog or a cat  Inu ka neko

mo – 'and (also)'

Examples:
She speaks Japanese and also Chinese.  Kanojo wa Nihongo mo Chuugoku-go mo hanashimasu.
In order to tame ni ha ため に は
Necessary hitsuyouひつよう
Therefore sorede それで

To connect sentences: - Common conjunctive words

Aida / Aida (ni)  
Between / During the time when…./While…..
Note the clause after ‘while’ in the English sentence always comes 1st in the Japanese sentence.

EXAMPLES:

Noun + no aida / aida ni
I couldn’t eat anything while I was sick.
I will go to Boston during vacation.
I intend to travel a lot while I am a student.
During the summer vacation I worked part time at a restaurant.

i-adjective + no aida / aida ni
Let’s make sushi while the fish is fresh.
I can’t do anything while I am busy with work.
My father lived in Auckland while he was young.

Na-adjective + no aida / aida ni
I cannot watch TV while I am busy at work.
I will write a letter to my teacher while I am free.

Verb + aida / aida ni- when the VERB in the sentence indicates an ACTION, it is always stated in the form of ‘ – te iru’.

I was home while it was raining.
The room is quiet while my child is sleeping.
I bought a newspaper while waiting for the bus.
I always make dinner when my roommate is not around.
I was reading a book while Tony was watching TV.
Carl learned golf while he was in America.

TEST SECTION

Connect the 2 sentences using either ‘aida’ or ‘aida ni’ -

Eg: Jogging o shite ita / ii tenki datta  ⇒  Jogging o shite iru aida ii tenki deshita.

Hikouki ni notte ita / eiga o futatsu ni mita  ⇒  Hikouki ni notte iru aida ni eiga o futatsu mimashita.
Sales ga aru / mise ga konde iru  ⇒  Sale ga aru aida mise ga konde imasu.
Nihon ni iru / Fuji-san ga mitai  ⇒  Nihon ni iru aida ni Fuji-san ga mitai desu.
Gakkou ga yasumi da / Gym wa shimatte iru  ⇒  Gakkou ga yasumi no aida gym wa shimatte imasu.

Translate the following sentences into Japanese -

I want to buy a coat while there is a sale.  ⇒  Sale ga aru aida ni kooto (coat) ga kaitai desu.
This beach is quiet during the winter.  ⇒  Fuyu no aida kono kaigan wa shizuka desu.
Atode

means that the event C1 happens first and then the event C2 occurs.

STRUCTURE:  (C1) _ta form_ + _atode_ (C2)

Noun + no |

NOTE: The ‘de’ of ‘atode’ may be omitted in informal speech leaving just ‘ato’

EXAMPLES:

**Verb (plain past) + ato(de)**

I will go home right after I stop by the bookstore.

I got a stomach-ache after I ate fish.

After work is over, I am going out to eat with my workmates.

After I came to Japan, I study Japanese.

After I jogged, I took a shower.

Let’s see a movie after doing the shopping.

It has become a little cold after it rained.

Stuart fell asleep after he drank beer.

Mason became ill after he came to Japan.

I studied right after I had eaten my meal.

Party (noun) no atode, uchi e kaerimasu.

Shigoto no atode, ocha o nomou.

Kurasu no atode, toshokan ni iku tsumori desu.  
_(note: ‘owatta’ is not used)_

Shokuji no atode, sanpo shimasu.

Shokuji no atode kohii o nomimasu.

Kurasu no atode, toshokan ni (itta/ikimashita)

Gakkou no atode, Hakone ni ikimashita.

**Noun + no atode**

After the party, I will return home.

Let’s have some tea after work.

I intend to go to a library after the class.

I took a walk after the meal.

I drink coffee after meals.

After class I went to the library.

I went to Hakone after school.

**STRUCTURE**:  (te-form) _kara_

Expresses a similar meaning to ‘atode’.

_te kara_ is used when C1 & C2 are continuous. ie: following on from the event described in C1, the event described in C2 happens.

EXAMPLES:

Please use this medicine after reading the instructions carefully.

Please take this medicine after meals.

Shall I call you later?

Kono kusuri wa setsumeisho o yoku yon de kara, 
tsukatte kudasai.

Kono kusuri wa shokuji o shita atode, nonde kudasai.

Atode denwa shimasou ka?

**TEST SECTION**

*Connect the 2 sentences using either ‘mae’ or ‘ato’ -*

_Eg:_  Ame ga furu / Uchi e kaeru  ➔  Ame ga furu _mae ni_ uchi e kaerimasu.

Tegami o kaku / Yuubinkyouku e iku  ➔  Tegami o kaita _atode_ yuubinkyouku e ikimasu.
Nihon e iku / Tokyo no hoteru ni yoyaku (booking) shite oku ➔ Nihon e ita mae ni Tokyo no hoteru ni yoyaku shite okimasu.
Jogging o suru / Shower o abiru ➔ Jogging o shita atode shower o abimashu.
Shokuji o suru / Dessert o taberu ➔ Shokuji o shita atode dessert o tabemasu.

Translate the following sentences into Japanese -
I practiced kanji before the examination. ➔ Shiken no mae ni kanji o renshuu shimasu.
I will go out after I do my homework. ➔ Shukudai o shita atode dekakemasu.
I called my friend before I went to China. ➔ Chuugoku e iku mae ni tomodachi ni denwa shimashita.
I am going to bed after I take a bath. ➔ O-furo ni haitta atode nemasu.

Dakara
EXAMPLES: (da = plain form of Desu)
Since I am not good at singing, I don’t like karaoke. ➔ Uta ga heta dakara, karaoke wa suki janai.
Since I do not like shopping, I won’t go out. ➔ Kaimono ga heta dakara, ikinai.
Since I have just arrived in Japan, I don’t understand anything. ➔ Nihon e tsuita bakari dakara, nani mo wakarimasen.

and so, therefore, that’s why

And
‘de’ links a sentence X wa Y da/desu with another sentence. It is equivalent to ‘and’ in English.

EXAMPLES:
Mr Kimura is a teacher, and his wife is a doctor. ➔ Kimura-san wa sensei de, okusan wa isha desu.
This is a Japanese camera, and that is a German (one). ➔ Kore wa Nihon no kamera de, are wa Doitsu no desu.
The wedding is at 3 o’clock, and the reception is at 5 o’clock. ➔ Sumisu-san wa Iguiru-jin de, kyonen Rondon kara kimashita.
Mr Smith is English and came from London last year. ➔ Tony-san wa Furansujin de, kyonen Rondon kara kimashita.
Tomoko plays tennis very well and has become a professional. ➔ Tony-san wa Furansujin de Auckland daigaku no ryuugakusei desu.
Tony is French and a student of Auckland university. ➔ Nara wa shizuka de kireina machi desu.

Dewa
EXAMPLES:
Well, I must be leaving now. ➔ Dewa kore de shitsurei shimasu.
Then, why did you do it? ➔ Dewa naze sou shita desu ka?
If so, I give up. ➔ Dewa mou akiramemasu.
Well then, we will now start the meeting. ➔ Dewa kore karu, kaigi o hajimemasu.
Then, well, so, if so (informal form is ‘ja’) ➔ Dewa mata ashita.

Dewa
EXAMPLES: (da = plain form of Desu)
Well, I must be leaving now. ➔ Dewa kore de shitsurei shimasu.
Then, why did you do it? ➔ Dewa naze sou shita desu ka?
If so, I give up. ➔ Dewa mou akiramemasu.
Well then, we will now start the meeting. ➔ Dewa kore karu, kaigi o hajimemasu.
Then, well, so, if so (informal form is ‘ja’) ➔ Dewa mata ashita.

Ga – ….. ‘but’…..Contrary reasoning, and – connects two contrasting sentences
Ga is used as a conjunction to connect a sentence with another sentence when what is to be stated in the latter is contrary to what is expected from the former.

EXAMPLES:
Japanese food is delicious but expensive. ➔ Nihon no tabemono wa oishii desu ga, takai desu.
Although it’s cold, I went out. ➔ Samui desu ga, dekakemashita.
I’m sick, but I’m going to work. ➔ Byouki desu ga, shigoto ni ikimasu.
I have free time, but I don’t have money. ➔ Hima wa arimasu ga, okane wa arimasen.
Today the weather is bad, but it’s not so cold. ➔ Kyou no tenki wa warui desu ga, amari samuku arimasen.
I took the medicine, but I haven’t got better yet. 
The meal was delicious, but I could not eat much. 
I am able to speak German, but cannot write it. 

I drink alcohol but don’t smoke cigarettes. 
I want to travel but I don’t have any money. 

Kusuri o nomimashita ga, mada yoku narimasen. 
Ryouri wa oshiikatta desu ga, amari taeraremasen datta. 
Watashi wa Doitsu-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ga, 
kaku koto wa dekimashen. 
O-sake wa nomimasu ga tabako wa suimasen. 
Ryokou o shitai ga okane ga nai.

**gyaku ni**

*Contrary to one's expectation, conversely*

Gyaku ni is an adverb used to introduce an event which takes place contrary to one's expectation/intention, or something stated in the preceding sentence or clause.

I didn’t study for some time; then contrary to expectations, my grades got better. 
Shibaraku benkyō shinakattara gyaku ni gakkō no seiseki ga yoku natta. 
I really like her, but (contrary to my expectations) she hates me. 
Kanojō no koto ga suki na no ni gyaku ni kirawarete shimatta.

**EXAMPLES:**

I went to Hawaii and it was wonderful. 
Hawaii ni ikimashita ga, subarashikatta desu. 
I read that book and it was interesting. 
Sono hon o yomimashita ga, omoshiroikatta desu. 
I saw that movie and went to see it again. 
Ano eiga o mimashita ga mata mitai desu. 
I drank medicine and became well. 
Kusuri o nonda ga yoku ni narimashita. 
I studied Japanese and now have many Japanese friends. 
Nihongo benkyou shita ga takusan Nihonjin no tomodachi ga imasu.

**itashimasu**

I will show you to your room. 
O-heya ni go-an’nai itashimasu. 
We will open at 3 o’clock. 
Tōten wa, 3-ji ni kaiten itashimasu. 
We will deliver it to your house. 
Go-jitaku ni haitatsu o itashimasu.

- **ka**

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb[+ Plain Form] 
Adj[+ Plain Form] + ka 
Na ] Plain Form ) 
Noun ]

**EXAMPLES:**

At what time will the meeting end? + I don’t know. 
= Kaigi wa nanji ni owarimasu ka? + Wakarimasen.

⇒ Kaigi wa nanji ni owaru ka, wakarimasen.

What should you do? + Please think. 
= Dou shitara ii desu ka? + Kangaete kudasai.

⇒ Dou shitara ii ka, kangaete kudasai. (‘desu’ disappears)
Kara - Reason – Result Joining 2 sentences ‘Because’

Kara is attached at the end of a sentence or phrase to state a reason(s).

STRUCTURE: Reason kara Result

The part in front of ‘kara’ states the reason

EXAMPLES:

Kono sweater wa takai. Sorede kaimasen. 
Because this sweater is expensive, I won’t buy it

Ashita wa Nichiyoubi da kara gakkou e ikimasen.
Heya ga kitenai kara souji o shimasu.
Kono bin wa warete imasu kara …. 
Onaka ga itai desu kara, nani mo tabemasen.
Isogashii kara ikemasen.
Ame da kara uchi ni imasu.
Otooto ga byouki da kara, haha wa uchi ni imasu.
Kinou wa hima datta kara eiga o mi ni ikimashita.
Imooto wa ongaku ga suki da kara yoku CD o kikimasu.
Shuumatsu wa ii tenki datta kara dekakemashita.

Atsui kara air con o tsukemashou.
Isogashikatta kara tomodachi to hanasemasen deshita.

Ishiogashikatta kara tomodachi to hanasemasen deshita.

Kara is used more often in casual situations, and node in formal situations such as business meetings and in writing.

KEY: Use kara with friends, node at work.

Kara is used for emotional expressions, ie: it can be used in friendly conversations to explain a personal reason or cause.
Node and de are used for giving logical reasons (de is used with nouns). These expressions are used in public situations and in polite speech.

Examples:
I cancelled because I was busy.

Ishogashikatta node cancel o shimasen.
I cancelled because of my work.
I cancelled because of the typhoon.
Could I go home because I have a headache?
I’m taking a day of tomorrow because a friend coming over from France.
I couldn’t buy it because I didn’t have any money.
The building collapsed because of the earthquake.
I stayed home all day because it was raining.
The movie I wanted to see was crowded, so I went to a different one.
But I do really want to see that one after all, so I’m going to go tomorrow.

Reason

Because Mr. Tanaka speaks English well… you don’t need an interpreter.
Please sit down over there… as I want to take your photograph.

But I do really want to see that one after all, so I’m going to go tomorrow.

TEST SECTION

Connect the 2 sentences using ‘kara’

Eg: Shiranai kotoba ga arimashita / Jisho de shirabemashita
   ➔ Shiranai kotoba ga atta kara jisho de shirabemashita.

Heya ga kitanai desu / souji o shite kudasai ➔ Heya ga kitanai kara souji o shite kudasai.
Jikan ga arimasen/ isoide kudasai ➔ Jikan ga nai kara isoide kudasai.
Minna ga benkyou shite imasu/shizuka ni hanashimashou ➔ Minna ga benkyou shite iru kara shizuka ni hanashimashou.
Shiken ga owarimashita / asobi ni ikitai desu ➔ Shiken ga owatta kara asobi ni ikitai desu.

Translate the following sentences into Japanese -

I cannot go out because my parents are coming.
Let’s have a party because it’s your birthday.
I always take a subway because it’s cheap and fast.
I have no money because I bought a new computer.

‘Kara’ is also used to describe sequential action – it means ‘after’, ‘since’, ‘ever since’

V1 te-form  kara V2  This sentence pattern indicates that upon completion of the action V1, the action V2 is to be conducted.

EXAMPLES:

After eating I’ll do some work.
Ever since he got married, he has been happy.
I will work for my father’s company after going back to my country.
We ate at a restaurant after the concert was over. Konsaato ga owatte kara resutoran de shokuji-shimashita.

‘Kara’ also means ‘from, out of, at, through, since, after, because’

EXAMPLES:
School begins at 8.30. Gakkou wa hachi-ji han kara hajimimasu.
The summer vacation is from July 20th. Natsu yasumi wa shichigatsu hatsuka kara desu.
I’ve had a cold since yesterday. Kinou kaze o hitte imasu.
I came from Tokyo to Kyoto by shinkansen. Tokyo kara Kyoto made shinkansen de kimashita.
I’ll study after watching TV. Terebi o mite kara benkyou shimasu.
How long does it take to go there on foot from the station?

Keredemo/Keredo/desu kedo - ‘and’, ‘although’, ‘but’, ‘however’
(Neutral connector). The first ‘mo’ is often dropped in more informal speech.

EXAMPLES:
I repeatedly asked him to come. But he didn’t. Kare ni kuru you ni nando mo tanonda. ( <-- request) Keredemo konakatta.
I often talk with Taro, and I think he is a very nice person. Taro-san wo yoku hanasu keredemo totemo ii hito desu.
Although I want to go on a trip, I have no time. Ryouou ni ikitai keredemo hima ga (arimasen/nai).
I went to the store but it was closed. Sono mise ni itta keredemo shimatte imashita.
He is earnest but not interesting. Kare wa majime da keredemo omoshiroku arimasen.
Although I didn’t tell him, Tom knew (about it). Watashi wa iwanakatta keredemo Tom-san wa shitte imashita.
Although this book is expensive, it is a good book. Kono hon wa takai keredemo ii hon desu yo.
Although I don’t like German very much, I have to study it. Boku wa Doitsu-go ga amari sukijanai keredemo benkyou shinakereba naranai.
Although Mr Smith is 90, he is very healthy. Sumisu-san wa 90-sai da keredemo totemo genki da.
I went to the department store and it was crowded. Depaato ni itta keredo, konde (crowded) imashita.
Although I can’t write kanji, I can read them. Takushi ni notta (got) keredo, takakatta desu.
Kanji wa kakenai keredo, yomu koto wa dekimasu.

Here, ‘keredo’ means ‘but’, ‘although’, ‘however’ Nb: This is a shorter version of 'deskedo':

EXAMPLES:
I read it but I didn’t understand it. Yonda keredo, wakarimasen deshita.
Although the movie was interesting, I fell asleep. Eiga wa omoshiroku keredo, nete shimaishita (= fell asleep).
I’m a little too busy now (so I can’t help you). Ima chotto isogashii n desu keredo....
He doesn’t study hard but he gets good marks. Kare wa amari benkyou shinai keredo seiseki ga ii.

Made
– a phrase or a sentence followed by ‘made ni’ is equivalent to ‘by the time when’.
The ‘by the time when’ part comes first.

Noun + made/made ni
I intend to finish writing this report by this Saturday. Konshuu no doyoubi made ni repooto o kaite
Verb + made/made ni
I want to finish cleaning by the time the guest comes.
Mr Stallone was working in Japan until he came to

I am going to continue studying Japanese until
I become good at it.

Verb + mae ni
The ‘before’ clause comes first.

EXCEPTIONS:
I studied Japanese before I came to Japan.
I will study Japanese before I have practical training.
I have something to do before I go.
I always have a book before I go to bed.
I finished the homework before the class began.
I will clean the room before my friend comes.
It is better not to eat anything before we go to bed.
I always eat food before I drink beer.
I always read maps before I go travelling.

Noun + no mae ni
I take a walk before breakfast.
I practiced kanji many times before the exam.
I always read a newspaper before work.
I want to wash my hands before the meal.
Before the trip I caught a cold.
Before the exam I went to see a movie.

Nagara – doing 2 things simultaneously
As, while…
STRUCTURE: V-1 nagara V2-te
The main action comes last. The tense is indicated by V2. V1 is formed by dropping the ‘masu’ from the ‘masu’ form.

EXAMPLES:
Smoking and talking on the phone.
Playing the guitar and singing.
Listening to the radio and studying.
Listening to music and drinking coffee.
I drink coffee as I listen to music.
I read a magazine as I eat dinner.
I drink sake as I talk to a friend.
I drink sake as I am talking to a friend.
My father is drinking beer while watching TV.
Mr Yamada worked while going to an English school.

My friend & I often talk about school when we are eating.
Let’s talk over a coffee in a coffee shop.
While in bed, I like to read books.

Node
Indicates causes or reasons. It objectively presents a cause-and-effect relationship as a natural course of events. The ‘cause’ clause comes first.

STRUCTURE:
Verb]+Plain Form]
Adj]+Plain Form] + node
Na ] + da -> na ]
Noun ]

EXAMPLES:
Noun/Na-adjective + node
I’ll see a movie today since it is rainy.
She is unable to come because she is sick.
We stopped playing golf because it was raining.
The park is full of people because of the nice weather.
I like singing, so I often go to a karaoke bar.
I bought some flowers because they were pretty.
I do not ride a bus because it’s not so convenient.
Since it’s cloudy, I’m not going to the beach.

i-adjective + node
As I feel ill, may I go home early?
I recommend this book to you because it is interesting.
I didn’t buy that camera because it was expensive.
I cannot buy a big bed because my room is small.
I’m looking for a part time job because I want money.

Verb + node
Since I have an engagement, I’ll be leaving now.
My mother gave me money so I bought suits. Haha ga okane o kureta **node**, suutsu o kaimashita.

**Noni**

*Noni* is used when what is stated in the second clause runs **contrary** to what is expected from the first clause.

**Expression of Paradox.**

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb [+ Plain Form]  
Adj [+ Plain Form]  + **noni**  
Na ]  + da -> na ]  
Noun ]  plain form ]

**EXAMPLES:**

**Noun/Na-adjective + noni**

He is making a lot of money **though** he is still a student.  
Kare wa mada gakusei na **noni** takusan okane o kaseide imasu.

My father went to work **although** he is sick.  
Chichi wa byouki na **noni**, shigoto ni ikimashita.

The bank is open **although** it is Sunday, you know.  
Nichiyoubi na **noni**, ginkou ga aite imasu yo.

My older brother didn’t help me **even though** he was free.  
Ani wa hima datta **noni**, tetsudatte kuremasen deshita.

**i-adjective + noni**

**Even though** the weather was good, I didn’t go anywhere.  
Tenki ga yokatta **noni** doko ni mo ikimasen deshita.

**Japanese food is delicious but expensive.**  
Nihon no tabemono wa oishii **noni** takai desu.

**Even though** I didn’t want to eat, I ate it.  
Tabetakunai **noni**, tabemashita.

That restaurant is expensive **although** the food is not tasty.  
Ano restaurant no ryouri wa oishikunai **noni**, takai desu.

This car often breaks down **even though** it is still new.  
Kono kuruma wa mada atarashii **noni**, yoku koshoo shimasu. (same as 'kowaremashita/kowareta')

**Verb + noni**

**In spite of** drinking the medicine, my temperature has not gone down.  
Kusuri o nonda **noni**, mada netsu ga sagarimasen.

Are you going out **even though** it is raining?  
Ame ga futte iru **noni**, dekakerun desu ka?

**Although** the others are taking a rest, he is working hard.  
Minna yasunde iru **noni** kare wa isshoukenmei hataraite imasu.

My little brother is playing outside **although** it is still raining.  
Ame ga futte iru **noni**, ototo wo soto de asonde imasu.

My girlfriend bought an expensive dress **although** she as no money.  
Kanojo wa okane ga nai **noni**, takai doresu o kaimashita.

**Shikashi**

**Sorekara**

**EXAMPLES:**

Yesterday I saw a movie and **after that** I went shopping.  
Kinou eiga o mite **sorekara** kaimono o shimashita.

Please give me that camera, film and batteries.  
Ano kamera to film to **sorekara** denchi (battery) o kudasai.

Let’s take a rest at this coffee shop **and then** go home.  
Kono kissaten de yasunde **sorekara** kaeru.

I met Jim yesterday. **And then** we played tennis together.  
Kimou eiga o mite **sorekara** kaimono o shimashita.

Yesterday I drank with my friend for about 2 hours  
Kino wa ni-jikan gurai tomodachi to nonde
and then went home.
I did my homework until 10 o’clock.

Then I went to the movie.
Yesterday morning I went to Ginza,
and then went to see a movie.
At the restaurant I ate steak, salad and cheesecake.

The colour of the lake was blue in the beginning and then turned green.

sorekara uchi ni kaette.
Ju-ji made shukudai o shimashita.
Sorekara eiga ni ikimashita.
Kinou no asa Ginza ni itte,
sorekara eiga o mi ni ikimashita.
Restaurant de wa suteki to sarada to sorekara chizukeeki o tabemashita.
Mizuumi no iro wa hajime wa aoku,
sorekara midori ni narimashita.

Soreni
‘Soreni’ used when another factor or circumstance is added to the one previously mentioned.

EXAMPLES:
This flower has beautiful colour.
In addition it smells nice.
I eat bread. And I drink coffee.
She is kind and, what is more she is pretty.
He is big and, moreover, he is handsome.
I took a trip to Samoa, Tonga, and also to Fiji.
This is too expensive.
Besides, I don’t like the design very much.

Moreover, besides, what is more, and also

EXAMPLES:
Kono hana wa iro ga kirei desu.
Soreni nio i ii desu.
Pan o tabemasu. Soreni kohii o nomimasu.
Kanojo wa yasashikiute sore ni kirei desu.
Kare wa ooki kute soreni handsome desu.
Samoa to Tonga to soreni Fiji ni ryoukou shimashita.
Kore wa takasugiru.
Soreni dezain ga amari suki janai.

Sorede
‘Sorede’ – Has a meaning similar to desukara or dakara (so) and is used in acknowledging that the preceding sentence is the reason for what is to be stated in the next sentence.

EXAMPLES:
This restaurant serves good food and the prices are low as well.
So, there are many people, aren’t there?
I had a business engagement in Osaka.
That’s why I wasn’t here yesterday.
I had a cold yesterday.
That’s why I took a day off school.

And, because of that, that is why, therefore

EXAMPLES:
Kono restauran wa ryouri mo oshii shi,
nedan mo yasui desu.
Sorede hito ga ooin desu ne.
Chotto Osaka de youji ga arimashita.
Sorede kinou inakattan desu.
Kinou kaze o hikimashita.
Sorede gakkou o yasundan desu.

Sore de wa
‘Sore de wa’ is often shortened to ‘sore ja’, ‘dewa’ or ‘ja’ in informal speech.

EXAMPLES:
This orange is not sweet.
How about this one then?
I dislike both fish and meat.
Then, what do you eat?
Well then, let’s take a break for 20 minutes.
Well then, I’ll come again next Friday.

If so, then, well then, if that is the case

EXAMPLES:
Kono orenji wa amakunai desu.
Sore de wa kore wa dou desu ka?
Boku wa sakana mo niku mo kirai desu.
Sore de wa nani o taberun desu ka?
Sore de wa ni-juppun yasumimashou.
Sore de wa mata raishuu no kinyoubi ni kimasu.

Soshite
And, and then, and after that
**Soshite (= and) is used to connect sentences.**

**EXAMPLES:**

Ms Kimura is a beautiful person. 
**And** she is very kind.

I will go to the bookshop, **and then** I will go to the Department store.

I went to Tokyo today. **And I** met my friend there.

Yesterday I played golf in the morning. 
**And I** played tennis in the afternoon.

This movie is not interesting (boring). 
**And it** is too long.

This flower is beautiful. **And it** is inexpensive.

---

**Toki**

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb Plain Form [ ]

Adj + i [ ] + toki

Na + na [ ]

Noun + no [ ]

**EXAMPLES:**

When you go to a foreign country, you need a passport.

When I don’t have any money, I borrow some from a friend.

When I went to Tokyo last week, I took this picture.

When I am busy, I work until around 10 o’clock.

When I am free, I watch TV and read books, among other things.

When it is hot, beer is tasty.

When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.

When you don’t know how to use it, ask me.

---

**Noun + no toki**

When he is not working, my father usually goes golfing.

When I was a child, I often played with my brother in the park.

When I was a student, I studied French.

When I was a student, I often went skiing.

When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.

When I was young, I didn’t study much.

When I was a student, my sister was only 3.

---

**i-adjective + toki**

Please take this medicine when you have a headache.

We can’t sleep well when it is hot, can we?

---

**When, as, while, whenever, at the time when**

Gaikoku e iku toki, passport ga irimasu.

Okane ga nai toki, tomodachi ni karimasu.

Senshuu Tokyo e itta toki, kono shashin o torimashita.

Isogashii toki, 10-ji goro made hatarakimasu.

Hima na toki, terebi o mitari, hon o yondari shimasu.

Atsui toki, biru ga umai.

Toshokan de hon o kari ru toki, kado ga irimasu.

Tsurai-kata ga wakaranai toki watashi ni kitte kudasai.

Yasumi no toki, chichi wa taitei gorufu ni ikimasu.

Kodomo no toki, yoku (often) an to kouen de asobimashita.

Kodomo no toki, yoku (often) kawa de oyogimashita.

Gakusei no toki, Furansu-go o benkyou shimasu.

Gakusei no toki, yoku sukii ni ikimasu.

Tsumai ga byouki no toki, kaisha o yasumimasu.

Wakai toki, amari benkyou shimasu deshita.

Gakusei no toki, imooto wa mada 3-sai datta.
My little brother often got sick when he was young.

When I’m not in good shape, I drink ‘Genki-cha’.

James bought a lot of juice when it was cheap.

**Na-adjective + toki**

What do you do when you are free?
Won’t you come to my place when you are free?
When I am feeling good, I go for a walk.
I only read when it’s quiet.

**Verb + toki**

Yesterday I met Brad when I rode a bus.
I always drink juice when I get home.
I watch TV when I get home.
I talk to people when I go to the park.
We give tips when we eat at a restaurant.

I listen to music while reading books.
Let’s take a camera with us next time we go there.

When I have no money, I could buy neither a book nor sake.
When I couldn’t do my homework, my father often helped me.

I drink herb tea when I cannot sleep.
I learned tea ceremony when I was in Japan.
Carl always watches TV when he eats breakfast.

**TEST SECTION**

**Connect the 2 sentences using ‘toki’** -

Eg: Kodomo datta / Yoku ani to asonda ➔ Kodomo no toki yoku ani to asobimashita.

Hon o karita / ID o miseta ➔ Hon o kariru toki ID o misemashita.

Kuruma ni noru / Sake o nomanai ➔ Kuruma ni noru toki wa sake o nomimasen.

Sensei ni au / Shitsumon suru ➔ Sensei ni atta toki shitsumon shimasu.

Nihon e iku / Kabuki ga mitai ➔ Nihon e itta toki kabuki ga mitai desu.

**Translate the following sentences into Japanese** -

I will borrow a book when I go to the library ➔ Toshokan e itta toki hon o karimasu.

I cannot come home early when I am busy. ➔ Isogashii toki wa hayaku uchi ni kaeremasen.

I will call you when I leave home. ➔ Uchi o deru toki denwa shimasu.

I used my credit card when I bought a bag & shoes. ➔ Kaban to kutsu o katta toki kredit card o tsukaimashita.
GRAMMAR and PARTICLES

Table of Contents

Particles – grammatical relations between words or phrases.
Follow words, rather than precede them. They are post-positions, always coming after nouns.

ie: I am Jon. Watashi wa Jon desu.

wa (は)-
Follows the first noun and marks the ‘topic’ of a sentence.

ha - (pronounced ‘wa’) is used for questions.

Watashi-wa I –
is hardly ever used, especially in conversational Japanese. ‘Anata’ (=you) is similarly avoided, especially when addressing superiors, in which case the person’s surname, title or occupation is used when necessary.

Watashi means ‘I’
Watashi wa = I
Watashi wa = I am ....
Watashi no = My ....
Watashi ga/o/ne = Me.

dake （だけ）– limitation – Only, just, no more
The particle dake indicates that the preceding noun or sentence shows restriction or limitation. Dake follows a noun and comes before the verb or ‘desu’.

EXAMPLES:

Is that all? Sore dake desu ka?
I memorized just easy kanji. Yasashii kanji dake oboemashita.
I only watched TV yesterday. Kinou wa terebi o mita dake desu.
On TV I only watch the News. Terebi wa news dake mimasu.
I just came here to see this. Kore o mi ni kita dake desu.
Only a little. Sukoshi dake.
I am the only person who knows that. Sore o shitte iru no wa watashi dake desu.
Only Mr Smith came. Sumisu-san dake (ga) (kita/kimashita)
I went to Japan only once. Nihon e ichido dake itta.
I just dated Yukiko, that’s all. Yukiko-san wa deeto shita dake desu.
I met that professor only once. Ano sensei ni wa ichido dake aimashita.
In the morning I just drink 1 cup of coffee, that’s all. Asa wa kohii o ippai nomu dake desu.
I only have Sunday’s off.

Yasumi wa nichiyoubi dake desu.

de (で) –

means ‘at’ or ‘in’ a place.
Indicates the Place Of Action (or the place where an action occurs).
de follows the MEANS that you 1) go to PLACE (ie: on a bicycle)
2) do something (ie: with a pen) – see examples below

EXAMPLES:

Yesterday I had dinner at a restaurant in Ginza.
I will buy a shirt at the department store.
I bought it at the bakery.
Yuki is working at a department store.
In Australia it is summer in December.

Kyoto e kuruma de ikimasu  （means that you go to a place) by car

How long does it take to go to school by bus?
I will go to Tokyo by train.
I went by taxi.
I came from Tokyo to Kyoto by shinkansen.
He goes to work by train.
I’ll go by train.
I came by taxi.

Kino Ginza no resutoran de bangohan o tabemashita.
Depaato de shatsu o kaimasu.
Panya de kaimashita.
Yuki-san wa depaato de hataraito imasu.
Australia de wa Juni-gatsu wa natsu desu.

The particle ‘de’ also indicates a method or a means used for an action.

Kono kami ni pen de namae ni kaite kudasai  （means that you do something) with a pen
I eat with chopsticks.
I write a report in Japanese.

Dore (どれ)-
is used when the object being sought is among 3 or more objects before the speaker.

Which one is your baggage?
Dore ga anata no nimotsu desu ka?

Doko e mo (どこも)-
is a negative statement, never a question.

e (へ) - means to – ie: I am going there but not there yet.)
Indicates a direction or goal and is placed after a destination (name of the place you are going to) towards which one is moving or at which one has arrived.
‘e’ always comes with kimasu, ikimasu and kaerimasu and is used for directions.

EXAMPLES:

When are you going to Kyoto?
Itsu Kyoto e ikimasu ka?
Jon is going to school.
Jon-san wa gakkou e (= ’to’) ikimasu.
Are you going to Canada?
Canada e ikimasu ka?

ga (が) –
is used in more specific statements, when you highlight the subject.
ex. Watashi ga Jack desu. (When someone was looking for Jack and he replies).
It is used when you are looking for someone or something among many people or things.
EXAMPLES:
Is my ballpoint pen over there?  Asoko ni watashi no boorupen ga arimasu ka?
There’s a post office over there.  Asoko ni yuubinkyoku ga arimasu.

To express preference or a wish:
I like apples.  Ringo ga suki desu.
I want a camera.  Kamera ga hoshii desu.

To express possession or denote one’s ability:
I have 2 children.  Kodomo ga futari imasu.
I can understand Japanese.  Nihongo ga wakarimasu.

When a scene or the existence of someone or something is being described with ‘arimasu’ or ‘imasu’, the subject is marked with ‘ga’:
There is a man over there.  Asoko ni otoko no hito ga imasu.
There is a bank over there.  Asoko ni ginkou ga arimasu.

‘Ga’ often comes with ‘arimasu’.

hodo （ほど）– ‘not as…. as –’ –  extent or degree
The particle ‘- hodo + negative expression’ indicates that the preceding noun or verb shows the ‘standard’ of negative comparison. Put the ‘not as’ object 1st.
Hodo follows a noun

EXAMPLES:
Nara is not as famous as Kyoto.  Nara wa Kyoto hodo yuumei ja arimasen.
This winter is not as cold as the last one.  Oyogu no wa kyonen hodo samuku arimasen.
Swimming is not as easy as I thought.  Oyogu no wa kangaete ita hodo yasashiku nai.
I’m not as busy as you are.  Watashi no anata hodo isogashiku arimasu.
There’s nothing as delicious as this.  Kore hodo oishii mono wa arimasen.
This summer is not as hot as last years.  Kotoshi no natsu wa kyounen hodo atsukunai.

With things that can be counted, hodo means about or approximately.

It’s about 1,000 yen.  Sen-en hodo desu.
It can be done in about 1 week.  Isshukan hodo de dekimasu.
The sooner, the better.  Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu.
The higher we climbed, the colder it became.  Takaku noboreba noboru hodo samukunatte kimashita.
The more I study Japanese, … the more interesting I find it.  Nihongo o benkyou suru ba suru hodo omoshiroku natte kimashita.

kara （から）– ‘from’
- indicates a starting point.

EXAMPLES:
This train came from Kyoto.  Kono densha wa Kyoto kara kimashita.
This bus came from Tokyo.  Kono basu wa Tokyo kara (kimashita/kita).

The lecture starts (is from) 1 o’clock.  Lecture wa ichi-ji kara desu.
The game begins at 2 o’clock.  Geemu wa ni-ji kara hajimarimasu.
‘Kara’ also means from in the sense of ORIGIN
I heard it from Mrs Tanaka.
I borrowed this book from the library.
Tanaka-san kara kikimashita.
Kono hon wa toshokan kara karimashita. (borrowed)

You can see Mt Fuji from here.
Who did you borrow the typewriter from?
Sake is made from rice.
Koko kara Fuji-san ga mieru yo.
Sono typewriter wa dare kara kitaran desu ka?
Sake wa kome (rice) kara tsukuru.

‘Kara’ also means after, having done, since (time)
After eating her dinner, Yuko went to a movie.
I left home after making a call to a friend.
Micheline always goes to bed after taking a shower
Yuko-san wa bangohan o tabete kara eiga ni itta.
Watashi wa tomodachi ni denwa shite kara uchi o deta.
Michelle-san wa itsumo shawaa o abite kara nemasu.

made （まで）-
corresponds to up to, to, until or as far as
EXAMPLES:
I walk to my office from home.
I am free from Monday to Friday next week.
Recently I have been working until around 9pm every day.
Let’s stay here until Mr Okada comes.
I studied until evening.
Let’s walk as far as the next corner.
Uchi kara kaisha made aruite ikimasu.
Raishuu wa Getsuyoubi kara Kinyoubi made hima desu.
Konogoro (Nowadays, these days) mainichi ku-ji goro made shigoto o shite imasu.
Okada-san ga kuru made koko ni imashou.
Yuugata made benkyou-shimashita.
Tsugi no kado made arukimashou.

Made ni （まで に）-
Means ‘by (the time given)’ or ‘not later than’.
EXAMPLES:
Can you do it by 5 o’clock?
I need it by Tuesday.
I’ll come home by 10 o’clock.
Please read this book (in advance) by the time school starts.
By what time should I go to the airport?
Please come one hour before departure.
Go-ji made ni dekimasu ka?
Kayoubi made ni hitsuyou desu (need).
Watashi wa ju-ji made ni kaeru.
Gakkou ga hajimaru made ni kono hon o yonde oite kudasai.
Nanj ni made ni kuukou ni ikeba ka?
Shuppatsu no ichi-jikan mae made ni kite kudasai.

mo （も）-
indicates that 2 words are equal in weight: also, too
EXAMPLES:
This is a cherry tree.
This is a cherry tree also.
Paul is studying Japanese.
Jan is studying Japanese also.
Jim’s father and mother are both teachers.
I met both Harumi and Keiko in Tokyo.
Jason eats neither meat nor fish.
I also like rice.
I want to go too.
I don’t like hamburgers.
Neither do I.
I can’t read kanji either.
I learned both Hiragana and Katakana.
Kore wa sakura desu.
Kore mo sakura desu.
Paul-san wa Nihongo o benkyou o shite imasu.
Jan-san mo Nihongo o benkyou o shite imasu.
Jim-san no otoosan mo okaasan mo sensei desu.
Tokyo de Harumi-san ni mo Keiko-san ni mo aimashita.
Jason-san wa niku mo sakana mo tabemasen.
Gohan mo suki desu.
Watashi mo ikitai desu.
Hamburgers wa suki dewa arimasen.
Watashi mo desu.
Watashi mo kanji wa yomemasen.
Hiragana mo Katakana mo oboemashita.
nado （など）-
Indicates that a series of nouns is non-exhaustive and is often used with ya.

EXAMPLES:
There are restaurants, department stores, theatres & so forth in that area.
Among Japanese foods I like things like sushi & tempura.
Sono hen ni wa resutoran ya depaato ya eigakan movie nado ga arimasu.
Nihon no tabemono no naka de wa sushi ya tempura nado ga suki desu.

nani （なに）-
is used to ask what the listener did when the speaker does not know the nature of the action taken by the listener.
Note: Nani ka & doko ka are YES/NO questions.

ne （ね）-
Is a final sentence particle indicating that the speaker seeks an agreement or confirmation from the listener about the statement. It is a colloquial particle used for requesting agreement or confirmation from the listener, or for softening the tone of a statement.

EXAMPLES:
This department store is large, isn’t it? Kono depaato wa ookii, desu ne?
Mayumi sings well, doesn’t she? Mayumi-san wa uta ga jōzu, desu ne?
The weather is very nice today, isn’t it? Kyou wa tenki ga totemo ii desu ne?
Yes, it is. Sou desu ne.
By all means please come to our party, OK? Zehi party ni kite kudasai ne.
That’s why, you know, I want you to study harder. Dakara ne, motto ne ganbatte hoshii desu yo.

ni （に）- indicates LOCATION & is placed after a noun denoting a PLACE.
It indicates the place of (anything’s) CURRENT EXISTANCE.
Indicates where a person or thing is to / on / in or at and comes after the place you are going to.
Ni is used with the time of action and comes after days/times, etc, ie: Nichiyooobi ni
Ni comes AFTER the REASON you are going to PLACE.

EXAMPLES:
Jim is in the café. Jim-san wa kissaten ni imasu.
Mr Tanaka is in the office. Tanaka-san wa jimusho ni imasu.
I gave my friend a book. Tomodachi ni hon o agemashita.
I am going to go skiing. Sukii ni’ikimasu.
Mrs Vader goes to Tokyo every day. Vader-san wa mainichi Toyko ni ikimasu.
I will be at home tomorrow. Ashita wa watashi wa uchi ni imasu.

Notion of ‘per’
Ni is used with expressons such as per hour, per day, per person, etc.
The ‘per – ‘ is stated first.
Three dollars per hour. Ichi-jikan ni san-doru.
I work 48 hours per week. Isshukan ni yonjuhachi (48) jikan hatarakimasu.
I’ll make 2 sandwiches per person. Sandoitchi o hitori ni futatsu tsukurimasu.
I go to the movies twice a month.  
He smokes 2 packs of cigarettes a day.  
I go to school every day.

Ikkagetsu ni-ki eiga o mimasu.  
Kare wa ichi-nichi ni tobako o futa-hako suimasu.  
Watashi wa mainichi gakkou ni ikimasu.

**no （の）—**

means ‘of’ & indicates possession or ownership (my/your) and comes after the noun it modifies.

Ex:  
*my* sushi = Watashi no sushi desu  
*my* watch = Watashi no tokei  
*your* watch = Anata no tokei

**NOTE:** ‘No’ inserted between 2 words is like ‘s’ in English

Jon’s coat = Jon-san no koto.

Tokyo is the capital of Japan.  
These are Yuki’s bag and umbrella.  
**Anata wa** means ‘you’.  
**Anata no** means ‘your’.

A Toyota car  
A police car  
Carl’s Japanese car  
My friend’s car  
A new Japanese camera  
Her letter

Toyota no kuruma  
Keisatsu no kuruma  
Carl-san no Nihon no kuruma  
Tomodachi no kuruma  
Atarashii Nihon no kamera  
Kanojo no tegami

**o （を）—** indicates the OBJECT of an Action.

**EXAMPLES:**

I saw a movie yesterday evening.  
Kumiko is writing a letter.  
I eat a meal.  
I leave the room.  
I take a walk in the park.

Yuube wa eiga o mita.  
Kumiko-san wa tegami o kaite (imasu/iru.)  
Gohan o tabemasu.  
Heya o demasu.  
Kouen o sanpo shimasu.

**Shidai—**

Means depending on; as soon as

**Shidai is a noun meaning order, prerequisite or (historical) circumstances.**

It is often used to form a conjunction in one of the two following ways:

1) Shidai may suffix nouns, creating a conjunction that expresses conditionality based on the condition/inclination of the root noun. This pattern is often used in the form A wa B shidai da or A wa B shidai de ~~.

2) Shidai may suffix the -masu stem of a verb, or to a noun capable of acting as a suru verb, creating a compound meaning as soon as this action takes place.

**Whether you pass the exam or not depends on your effort and your luck.**  
**Shiken ni ukaru ka dō ka wa anata no dotryoku to un shidai desuyo.**

**As soon as I get home, I will call you.**  
**Le ni modori shidai sugi ni oderwa o sashiage masu.**
to (と) -

follows nouns and means ‘and’ or ‘with’.
‘to’ is used only to connect nouns. It cannot be used to connect verbs.
To comes after the **person** you do something with.
If ‘to’ follows a person’s name it means ‘together with’ or ‘accompanied by’ –

**EXAMPLES:** complete listing of things
Allan **and** Paul are French.
Allan **and** Paul are going to the movies together.
I went to Canada **and** Fiji during the summer.
Jim **and** Dave will come to my house next week.
John **and** Mary came.

Allan-san **to** Paul-san wa Furansu-jin desu.
Allan-san **to** Paul-san **to** issho ni eiga o mimasu.
Natsu ni Kanada **to** Fiji e ikimashita.
Raishuu uchi ni Jim-san **to** Dave-san ga kimasu.
John-san **to** Mary-san ga kimashita.

**EXAMPLES:** reciprocal relationship
The particle ‘to’ marks the person(s) with whom one does things. It is equivalent to ‘with’.

I live in an apartment **with** a friend.
My older brother went to Canada last month **with** Naomi.
My father takes a walk **with** my mother every morning.
I went to a bookstore **with** Tom.
I wrote a book **with** Atsushi.

Watashi wa tomodachi **to** apaato ni sunde imasu.
Sengetsu ani wa Naomi-san **to** Kanada e ikimashita.
Maiasa chichi wa haha **to** sanpo shimasu.
Tom-san **to** honya e ikimashita.
Atsushi-san **to** issho ni hon o kakimashita.

**EXAMPLES:** Similarity and Difference
The particle ‘to’ indicates that the preceding noun is same as – or different from –.

Tomoko’s suits are the **same** as mine.
Do you have another one just like this?
James is completely different from his older brother.

Tomoko-san no suutsu wa watashi no **to** onaji desu.
Kore **to** onaji mono ga mou hitotsu arimasu ka?
James-san wa oniisan **to** zenzen chigaimasu.

**EXAMPLES:** - ‘to’ follows both direct and indirect QUOTATIONS
I’ll do it **said** Tom.
that he will do it.

Tom-san **wa** Watashi ga shimasu. **to** iiimashita (said). Tom said
Tom-san **wa** kare (he) ga suru **to** iiimashita (said).

**ya (や) -
Joins nouns to indicate a non-exhaustive list of items.**

**EXAMPLES:**
Toast **and** eggs **and** juice.
In my room there is a computer, stereo, **and** such.
Reiko, Takeshi and others came to the party.
I want to go to the mountain, the sea, and so forth during the holidays.
I bought a pencil, notebook and a ruler.
There are letters, photos, and so on in the box.

Tosuto **ya** tamago **ya** juusu.
Watashi no heya ni wa PC **ya** suterego ga oite arimasu
Reiko-san **ya** Takeshi-san mo party ni kimashita.
Yasumi ni wa yama **ya** umi ni ikitai desu ne.
Enpitsu **ya** nooto **ya** jougi (ruler) o kaimashita.
Hako no naka ni tegami **ya** shashin ga arimasu.
toka (とか) (similar to ‘ya’)
And, some kind of (things/persons/action/states), like, mainly.
– ‘toka’ is more colloquial than ‘ya’. Verbs before ‘toka’ are in Jisho form.
Unlike ‘ya’, toka comes after the last noun to be enumerated.

EXAMPLES:
On Saturday and Sunday I often go to see movies.
Doyoubi toka nichiyoubi toka wa yoku eiga o mi ni ikimasu.
I usually listen to (music like) rock and jazz.
Watashi wa rock toka jazz o yoku kikimasu.
When I am alone I watch TV or eat sushi.
Hitori no toki wa terebi o miru toka sushi o taberu toka shimasu.

She said something like she would quit her job.
Kanojo wa shigoto o yameru toka itte imashita.
I saw ‘Star Wars’, ‘Jaws’ and ‘ET’.
‘Star Wars’ toka ‘Jaws’ toka ‘ET’ o mimashita.
I do things like listening to music and reading books. Ongaku o kiku toka hon o yomu toka shite imasu.

I sent my resume to Toyota, Dentsu, and Lotte, among others (companies).
Watashi wa Toyota toka Dentsu toka Lotte toka ni rirekisho o dashimashita.

How about tomorrow or the day after?
Ashita toka asatte wa dō desuka

yo （よ）-
Is a sentence final particle of emphasis showing the speaker’s emphasis.

EXAMPLES OF USAGE –
This store is expensive, you know.
Kono mise wa takai, desu yo.
An electronic dictionary is convenient, you know.
Denshi-jisho wa benri, desu yo.

PARTICLE REVIEW
Table of Contents

Heya o kirei ni shite kudasai
Shinjuku へ いきます
Go to Shinjuku
Basu で いきます (means you go to a place by bus)
Tomodachi と いきます
Kaimono に いきます
Go shopping.
Hikouki で Nihon へ kimashita (Hikouki = plane)
I came to Japan by plane
Enpitsu で kikimasu
Write with a pencil.
Noto に kikimasu
Write a note.
Kanji を kikimasu
Listen to music.
Ongaku を kikimasu
Eiga を mimasu
Watch a movie.
### To Ask

**Table of Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ko words</th>
<th>So words</th>
<th>a words</th>
<th>do words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Kore</em></td>
<td><em>Sore</em></td>
<td><em>Are</em></td>
<td><em>Dore</em> (desu ka?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This</td>
<td>That</td>
<td>That over there</td>
<td>Which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Kore</em> desu ka? = This one?</td>
<td><em>Sore</em> desu ka? = That one?</td>
<td><em>Are</em> desu ka? = That one over there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Konna** – *This* kind of –

**Sonna** – *That* kind of –

**Anna** – *That* kind of –

**Donna** – *What* kind of - ?

It’s *over there*  
**Asoko** desu

*Here / this place, there / that place and over there / that place over there* use a similar pattern to *kono*, *sono* & *ano*.  
The words are: *koko, soko* and *asoko*

The postcards are *over there*.  
Hagaki wa *asoko* desu.

This     | *Kono*     | This one     | *Kore*
That     | *Sono*     | That one     | *Sore*
That over there | *Ano*     | That one over there | *Are*
Which one | *Dore*     | Which one over there | *Dore*
Which   | *Dono*     |

Please may I see *that [Name of Object]*?  
Sonno [Name of Object] o misete kudasai?

I’ll have *that (one) over there*.  
Are kudasai.

I’ll have *that [Name of Object] over there*.  
*Ano [Name of Object] kudasai.*

I’ll have *that book over there*.  
*Ano book o kudasai.*

I’ll take *this*.  
*Kore o kudasai.*

Whose flower  
Dare no hana
What flower  
Nan no hana
Which flower (of two)  
Dorochi no hana
Which flower (of three or more)  
Do no hana
Whose photograph is this?  
Kore wa dare no shashin desu ka?
What book is this?  
Kore wa nan no hon desu ka?
Which (of two) is yours?  
Anata no wa dorochi desu ka?

Looking around the room, using *Kore, Sore, Are* (= this one, that one, that one over there)
What is **this** in Japanese?
Ex. *This is an English book.*

What is **that** in Japanese?
Ex. *That is a pencil.*

What is **that over there** in Japanese?
Ex. *That over there is a watch.*

---

**Kore** wa Nihongo de nan desuka?
Kore wa Eigo no hon desu.

**Sore** wa Nihongo de nan desuka?
Sore wa empitsu desu.

**Are** wa Nihongo de nan desuka?
Are wa tokei desu
VERBS
Table of Contents

Form types, descriptions and conversion rules.

**JISHO FORM** (otherwise known as ‘Plain’ form or ‘Dictionary’ Form)
**DESCRIPTION:** are more commonly used forms of Verbs, usually used between close friends, family...

**CONVERSION RULES:**
**GROUP 1:** – RULE: Replace the ‘i’ sound with the neighbouring sound in the ‘u’ column

**GROUP 2:** - RULE: Replace ‘masu’ with ‘ru’.

**GROUP 3:**

**Te (て) form**

- USE OF Te-form 1) To connect sentences (sequence of actions)

**Listing Multiple Actions - te (て)**
**STRUCTURE:** V-1 te V2 te V3 masu - this expression is used to list several actions IN THE ORDER IN WHICH THEY OCCURRED.
The actions are linked by the –te form.
The tense of the final verb indicates the tense of the entire expression.
**COMPARE** this to ‘tari-form’ where activities are listed without regard to order.

This form is also used for ‘ordering’ (Kaite! = Write!)

**EXAMPLES:**

Q: What did you do yesterday?
A: V1 mashita soshite V2 mashita soshite V3 mashita.
I watched TV, had a bath then went to bed.

I went to Ginza, did some shopping and returned home.

Q: What will you do today?
A: I will watch TV, read the paper, eat dinner then go to bed.

I got up at 7 o’clock this morning and ate breakfast.
I met my friend and we saw a movie together.
I went to the supermarket, bought some meat and returned home.
I will eat breakfast, go to work then return home.

I went to Kyoto, ate ice-cream and drank coffee.

In the morning, I jog, take a shower & go to the office.
I went to Kobe, saw a movie and drank tea.

Jim went to Japan and studied there.

I’ve drunk too much wine and have a headache.

Kobe e itte, eiga o mite, ocha o nomimashita.

Jim-san wa Nihon e itte, benkyou shita.

Wain o nomisugite atama ga itai desu.

Other Te-form notes: describing actions being done NOW

Q: What are you doing now?

What are you drinking?
What are you eating?
What are you thinking?
What do you know?

My younger brother is taking a bath now.
It has been raining since yesterday, you know.
I am making dinner now.
I walk in the park every morning.
I ride a bicycle to go to the station every day.
I am eating dinner now.
I am studying English.
I am writing a letter.
Bob is making a phonecall now.
Excuse me, please pass me the salt.

Ima nani o shite imasu ka?
Nani o nonde imasu ka?
Nani o tabete imasu ka?
Nani o kangaette imasu ka?
Nani o shite imasu ka?
Ootoo wa ima ofuro ni haitte imasu.
Kinou kara ame ga futte imasu yo.
Ima bangohan o tsukutte imasu.
Maia kouen o aruite imasu.
Mainichi jirensa ni notte eki made ikimasu.
Ima bangohan o tabete imasu.
Eigo o benkou shite imasu.
Tegami o kaite imasu.
Bob-san wa ima denwa o kake te imasu.
Sumimasen ga, shio o totte kudasai.

➢ USE OF Te-form 2) is used to encourage the listener to do something

Polite instructions.
Please write.
Please wait a moment.
Please lend me the dictionary.
Please speak slowly.
Please come here at 9 o’clock tomorrow.
Please write your name and address here.
Please practice by listening to the tapes carefully.

Kaitte kudasai.
Chotto matte kudasai.
Jisho o kashite kudasai.
Yukkuri hanashite kudasai.
Ashita ku-ji ni kite kudasai.
Koko ni namee to juusho o kaite kudasai.
Yoku teepu o kite renshuu shite kudasai.

USE OF Te-form 3) V-te imasu

This form is used to describe a certain state or habit.

I am married.
Mrs Suzuki is already married.
I work for an automobile company.
I always walk to school.
I memorise kanji by writing them many times.
The window is open.
In case the store is closed.
I live in Akatsuka.
Microsoft makes computer software.
My friend is studying at university.

Watashi wa kekkon shite imasu.
Suzuki-san wa mou kekkon shite imasu.
Watashi wa jidoosha no kaisha de hataraitte imasu.
Itsumo aruitte gakkou e ikimasu.
Nando mo kaite kanji o oboemasu.
Mado ga aite imasu.
Mise ga shimate imasu.
Akatsuka ni sunde imasu.
Microsoft wa konpyuta-sofuto o tsukutte imasu.
Tomodachi wa daigaku de benkyou-shite imasu.
CONVERSION RULES:
They are converted from Jisho form

GROUP 1
1) かう Katte (かって)
2) まっ って (=te) Matte (まって)
3) かえる Kaette (かえって)
4) はなす して (=shite) Hanashite (はなして)
5) かく いて (=ite) Kaite (かいて)
6) およぐ いで (=ide) Oyoide (よいで)
7) のむ Nonde (のんで)
8) あそぶ んで (=nde) Asonde (あそんで)
9) しぬ (Die) Shinde (しんで)

GROUP 2
る → て
たべる (eat) → Tabete (たべて)
みる (watch/see) → Mite (みて)
かける (call) → Kakete (かけて) (used only for Denwa o kakeru)
きこえる (hear) → Kikoete (きこえて)
みえる (see) → Miete (みえて)

GROUP 3
くる (come) → Kite (きて)
する (do) → Shite (して)

Tari (た り) form (compare to te-form above)
DESCRIPTION: Lists activities that are worthy of note out of a longer list of choices without regard to the order in which they occurred.
With regard to the final verb, TARI is followed by shimasu/shimashita.

STRUCTURE:  V た り V た り V た り (Shimasu/shimashita/shite kudasai)
MEANING: (I) do …. and.., among other things.

CONVERSION RULES:
They are converted from て form
The て of the て form is replaced with ‘tari’.
EXAMPLES:
I danced, ate food and played a game.
Dansu o shitari tabemono o tabetari game o shitari shimashita.

On Sundays I go shopping and go to see movies and other things.
Nichiyoubi ni kaimono o shitari, eiga o mitari shimasu.

Yesterday I went shopping and went to see a concert and other things.
Kinou kaimono o shitari, konsaato o mitari shimasita.

I had a good time eating food & going shopping.
Tabemono o tabetari kaimono o shitari de tanoshikatta.

Today I intend to read a book, watch TV, and so on, at home.
Kyou wa uchi de hon o yondari, terebi o suru tsuromi desu.

Yesterday I went to the bank, did some shopping, and so on.
Kinou wa ginkou ni ittari, kaimono o shitari shimashita.

I am studying Japanese by reading the textbook, listening to the tape, and so on.
Tekisuto o yondari, teepu o kittari shite Nihongo o benyou shite imasu.

I had a good time seeing a movie and playing golf.
Eiga o mitari, gorufu o shitari de tanoshikatta.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS - Require no subject/object
ie: the verb ‘walk’ in the sentence ‘I walk’ is an intransitive verb

It rained yesterday.
Kinou ame ga furimashita.
The class will end soon.
Kurasu wa sugu owarimasu.
I did not sleep well last night.
Yuube wa amari nemasen deshita.
I will work.
Watashi wa hatarakimasu.
The dog runs.
Tori wa hashirimasu.
The bird sings.
Watashi-tachi wa kekkon shimasu.
We will get married.

TRANSITIVE VERBS - Have a subject/object
ie: the verb ‘strike’ in the sentence ‘The hammer strikes the bell’ is a transitive verb, and ‘bell’ is the object

Subject + Object + Transitive Action Verb

Do you listen to CD’s frequently?
Yoku CD o kikimasu ka?
Did you do your homework last night?
Yuube shukudai o shimashita ka?
I do not know this kanji.
Kono kanji wa shiremasen.
I will open the window.
Watashi wa mado o akemasu.
He plays the piano.
Kare wa piano o hikimasu.

MOTION VERBS
Subject + Direction + Motion Verb

I am going to go to Europe this year.
Kotoshi wa Europpa e ikimasu.
My friend did not come here.
Tomodachi wa koko ni kimasen deshita.
I went to a coffee shop with my friend.
Tomodachi to kissaten ni ikimashita.

POTENTIAL FORM - The ‘ability’ or ‘potential’ to do an act

Conversion rules:
GROUP 1: The final ‘u’ of the dictionary form is replaced by ‘eru’.
ie: yomu -> yomeru  kaku -> kakeru
GROUP 2: The final ‘ru’ of the dictionary form is replaced by ‘rareru’.

ie: taberu -> taberareru
miru -> mirareru

GROUP 3: Suru -> Dekiru
Kuru -> Korareru

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>Masu Form</th>
<th>Potential Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Ikimasu</td>
<td>Ikemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nomimasu</td>
<td>Nomemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yobimasu</td>
<td>Yobemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Torimasu</td>
<td>Toremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mochimasu</td>
<td>Motemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suimasu</td>
<td>Suemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaerimasu</td>
<td>Kaeremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Omoimasu</td>
<td>Omoemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tabemasu</td>
<td>Taberaremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Karimasu</td>
<td>Kariraremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Agemasu</td>
<td>Ageraremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nemasu</td>
<td>Neraremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demasu</td>
<td>Deraremasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mimasu</td>
<td>Miararemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Shimasu</td>
<td>Dekimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kimasu</td>
<td>Korareramisu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXAMPLES:
Can you eat delicious sushi in New York?  New York de oishii sushi ga taberaremasu ka?
I cannot go home early today.    Kyou wa hayaku uchi ni kaeremasen.
I could not call my friend yesterday.   Kinou tomodachi ni denwa ga kakareremasen deshita.
Mr Sato can play tennis, you know.   Sato-san wa tenisu ga dekimasu yo.

DEKIMASU  (Potential)  I can do....
DESCRIPTION: This form indicates whether N has the ability to do something or whether it is possible for N to do something.

STRUCTURE 1:  N + ga dekimasu
Q: NAME-san wa N ga dekimasu ka?
A: Hai,  N ga dekimasu. or
A: Iie,  N wa dekimasen.

EXAMPLES:
Q: Karen, can you dance?  Karen-san wa dansu ga dekimasu ka?
A: Yes, I can dance.  Hai, dansu ga dekimasu.  Or
A: No, I cannot dance.  Iie, dansu wa dekimasen.
Q: Steve, can you read Spanish?  Steve-san wa Espanol ga dekimasu ka?
A: Yes, I can read Spanish.  Hai, Espanol ga dekimasu.
I can drive a car.
I can speak Japanese.
I cannot cook.
It snowed a lot so we can ski this year.
STRUCTURE 2:  

[POSITIVE] Dictionary form + koto ga dekimasu  

[NEGATIVE] Dictionary form + koto wa dekimasen

Q: NAME-san wa V(Dictionary form) koto ga dekimasu ka?  
koto = thing/act/matter

Can Steve write kanji? 
I cannot write many kanji. 
Mr Lee is able to read Kanji 
I cannot eat nattou. 
Craig can speak Russian. 
Can Peter drink sake? 
Yes, Peter can drink sake. 
No, Peter cannot drink sake. 
I can swim. 
Are you able to come by 3 o’clock? 
I did not have much money last summer, so I was not able to go on a trip. 
I am able to speak French, but cannot write it.

Since there was no water, I was not able to cook yesterday. 
I have a lot of things to do today. 
If you take a bullet train, you can get to Osaka in 3 hours. 

Mr Johnson can write letters in Japanese.

DEKIMASU has 2 meanings

- Ability

Mr Lee is able to read kanji. 
I can drive. 
Can you drive?

- Possibility

You can call a taxi at the information desk. 

Sentences with a potential VERB:

A potential verb does not describe an act, but the ability to do an act, ie:

Potential Verb – has 2 different functions, 1) to describe a person’s ability, 2) to describe the possibility of doing an act under certain circumstances.

I speak Japanese. 
I can speak Japanese. 
I can swim. 
Jim can read kanji. 
I can ride a bicycle. 
Can you write kanji? 
Can you eat natto?
DEKIMASU Is possible, something is generated, completed, finished or made. The subject is indicated by ‘ga’.

EXAMPLES:
A big supermarket has been **completed** near the station.  Eki no chikaku ni ookii suu pa ga dekimashita.  
The camera repairs have been **completed**.  Kamera no shuuri ga dekimashita.  
The work is **finished**.  Shigoto ga dekimashita.

PASSIVE FORM

Conversion rules:
**GROUP 1:** The final ‘u’ of the dictionary form is replaced by ‘areru’.
ie: tsukau -> tsukawareru 
yomu -> yomareru

**GROUP 2:** The final ‘ru’ of the dictionary form is replaced by ‘rareru’.
ie: miru -> mirareru 
taberu -> taberareru

**GROUP 3:**  Suru -> Sareru  
Kuru -> Korareru

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>Masu Form</th>
<th>PASSIVE Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Ikimasu</td>
<td>Ikareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kakimasu</td>
<td>Kakareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hanashimasu</td>
<td>Hanasareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaerimashu</td>
<td>Kaerareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nomimasu</td>
<td>Nomareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yobimasu</td>
<td>Yobareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Torimasu (take, reach)</td>
<td>Torareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mochimasu (hold, have)</td>
<td>Motsareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tabemasu</td>
<td>Taberareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mimasu</td>
<td>Mirareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kakemasu</td>
<td>Kakerareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Karimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Shimasu</td>
<td>Sareru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kimasu</td>
<td>Korareru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Japanese passive sentences are divided mainly into **2 groups – direct and indirect**

**DIRECT PASSIVE Examples:**
I was wakened by mother early this morning.  Kesa hayaku haha ni okosaremashita.  
I forgot the homework and was scolded by the teacher.  Shukudai o wasurete sensei ni shikararemashita.

**INDIRECT PASSIVE Examples:**
Mr Yamada had his money stolen by someone.  Yamada-san wa dareka ni okane o nusumaremashita. 
It rained in the park yesterday & I was troubled by it.  Kinou kouen de ame ni furarete komarimashita.

**EXAMPLES:**
My car was stolen.  Kuruma ga nusumaremashita.  
Karate is well known in the United States.  Karate wa Amerika de yoku (well) shirarete imasu. 
The book was written last year.  Sono hon wa kyounen kakaremashita.
Nai FORM - Please do not…., without doing

DESCRIPTION: Instructs someone NOT to do something, ie: do NOT smoke.
STRUCTURE: V-nai de kudasai
Is the negative form of V-te kudasai (please..)

Conversion rules:
They are converted from Jisho form

GROUP 1: Take the last sound of the Jisho form back to the 1st sound in the column,
ie: ku -> ka, su -> sa, ne -> na  THEN ADD ‘NAI’ ie: hanasu -> hanasana
              ikimasu -> ikanai

GROUP 2: Just change the ‘ru’ to ‘nai’

GROUP 3:  Suru -> Shinai
           Kuru -> Konai

NOTE - Nai is used for VERBS
       Kunai is used for ADJECTIVES

EXAMPLES:
Please do not talk on the phone.
        Please do not read the newspaper.
I am fine so please do not worry about me.
        Please do not talk.
Do not touch.
        Please do not touch.
        Please do not take photos.
        Please do not take photos here.
        Please don’t use English.
You must not enter this room.
Hanako (must/can) not drink alcohol yet.
        Don’t eat chocolate.
        Don’t eat too much chocolate.
        Don’t drink too much wine.
        Don’t watch too much TV.
        Don’t work too much.

Denwa o kakenai de kudasai.
        Shinbun o yomanai de kudasai.
Watashi wa genki desu kara shinpai shinai de kudasai.
        Hanasanai de kudasai.
Sawaranai!
        Sawaranai de kudasai.
        Shashin o toranai de kudasai.
Kono heya ni haitte wa (ikenai/ikemasen)
        Koko de shashin o toranai de kudasai.
        Eigo o tsukawanai de kudasai.
        Kono heya ni haitte wa (ikenai/ikemasen)
        Hanako-san wa mada sake o nonde wa ikenai.
        Chokoreeto o tabenai de kudasai.
        Chokoreeto o tabesuginai de kudasai.
        Wine o nomisuginai de kudasai.
        Terebi o misuginai de kudasai.
        Hatarakisuginai de kudasai.

I heard that one must not smoke here.
        You must not be late for class, you know.
        Koko de tabako o sutte wa ikanai sou desu.
        Kurasu ni okurete wa ikemasen yo.
Nancy went to school yesterday without eating her breakfast.
        Nancy-san wa kinou asagohan o tabe nai de gakkou e ikimashita.
Mr Scott didn’t go to Kyoto; he went to Tokyo.
        Scott-san wa Kyoto ni ikanai de Tokyo ni itta.
Please read it without using the dictionary.
        Jisho o tsukawanai de yonde kudasai.
        Mada kaeranai de kudasai.

た (ta) form – for VERBS
Do this conversion:
Jisho -> Te -> Ta form
Kaku -> Kaite -> Kaita
The ‘te’ in the te-form simply changes to a ‘ta’
STRUCTURE: V-ta koto ga arimasu  
(I) have (done) …. 
This sentence refers to something one has done in the past.

EXAMPLES:
I have had Japanese food.  
Nihon ryoori o tabeta koto ga arimasu.
Have you been to this park before?  
Kono kouen ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Have you been to this beach before?  
Kono kaigan ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
Have you been to this beach before?  
Kono mise ni kita koto ga arimasu ka?
I have done the cleaning.  
Souji o shita koto ga arimasu.
I have watched TV.  
Terebi o mita koto ga arimasu.
I have been drinking.  
O-sake o nonda koto ga arimasu.
I have ridden a horse.  
Uma ni notta koto ga arimasu.

CAUSATIVE VERBS - make or causes someone to do something.

2 meanings:
1) Compulsion – (‘MAKE’ causative) used for commands, demands & making other people do certain acts regardless of their will.
   there are 2 types of causative sentences: those which indicate the subject of an action with o, and those which indicate it with ni.
2) Permission – (‘LET’ causative) used to allow or let the other person do a certain act.

Conversion rules:

Group 1: Change the final ‘u’ of the dictionary form to a ‘aseru’.
   ie: Nomu → Nomasu  &  kaku → kakeru  yomu → yomaseru

Group 2: Change the final ‘ru’ of the dictionary form to a ‘saseru’.
   ie: Taberu → tabsaseru  Miru → misasaseru

Group 3: Kuru → Kosaseru  
   Suru → Saseru

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>Masu Form</th>
<th>CAUSATIVE Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Nomimasu</td>
<td>Nomasemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaku</td>
<td>Kakeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yomu</td>
<td>Yomaseru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iku</td>
<td>Ikasemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Taberu</td>
<td>Tabsaseru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Suru</td>
<td>Saseru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td>Kosaseru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compulsion – (‘MAKE’ causative) - Examples:

The general manager made Mr Kato go to Osaka on business.  
Buchou wa Kato-san o Osaka e shutchou-sasemashita.
I’m having my daughter learn the piano.  
Watashi wa musume ni piano o narawasemasu.
I was made to buy a textbook.  
Kyoukasho (textbook) o kawasieremashita.
The teacher made the child go home early.  
Sensei wa kodomo o hayaku uchi ni kakasemasu.
My mother made my little sister tidy the room. I made Jim go to the store. The mother made the child go to bed. I made my younger brother study.


**Permission** – (‘LET’ causative) - Examples:
The general manager let Lee go home early. Please let me wait here. I let my friend use my computer. I asked my roommate to let me read his newspaper.

Buchou wa Lee-san o hayaku kaerasemashita. Koko de matasete kudasai. Tomodachi ni konpyuutaa o tsukawasete ageta. Ruumumeeto ni shinbun o yomasete moraimashita.

**IMPERATIVE form** – Used to command a person to do something

**Conversion rules:**

**Group 1:** Change the ‘u’ sound to corresponding ‘e’ sound.

ie: Kaku ➔ Kake

**Group 2:** Change the ‘u’ sound in the dictionary form to the corresponding ‘o’ sound.

ie: Taberu ➔ Tabero

**Group 3:** FINISH OFF HERE AND CHECK THE RULES THEN FILL IN THE TABLE

Add Conversion rules and examples – FILL these in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Iku (go)</td>
<td>Ike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kiku (listen)</td>
<td>Kike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaku</td>
<td>Kake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yomu</td>
<td>Yome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hanasu</td>
<td>Hanase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hataraku</td>
<td>Hatarake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Taberu (eat)</td>
<td>Tabero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Miru (look)</td>
<td>Miro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kakeru (call)</td>
<td>Kakero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ageru (give)</td>
<td>Agero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Okiru (wake up)</td>
<td>Okiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command verb form**

A slightly less harsh form is made by adding – nasai to the verb. This is not used with negatives.

Speak slowly.        Yukkuri hanashinasai.
Come here.           Koko ni kinasai.
Go!                  Iki-nasai!
Come here!           Koko e ki-nasai!
The form of the imperative commonly used for polite requests or commands is the -te form followed by ‘kudasai’.

**EXAMPLES:**

Please tell us about your trip.   Ryokou ni tsuite (about) hanashite kudasai.
Please mail the letter.    Tegami o dashite kudasai.
Please call a taxi.    Takushi o yonde kudasai.

**PROHIBITIVE form – Used to command a person not to do something**

**Conversion rules:** Just add ‘na’ to all Dict. forms

- ie: Suru → Suru na
- ie: Sawaru → Sawaru na

**Group 1:**

**Group 2:**

**Group 3:**

**VOLITIONAL ‘Probable’ form – Used to indicate the speakers will or plan, making suggestions or when agreeing with them.** I will, let’s

= the plain form of mashou

**Conversion rules:**

**Group 1:** Change the ‘u’ sound of the Dictionary form to ‘ou’ sound.
- ie: Kaku → Kakou
- Yomu → Yomou
- Nomu → Nomou
- Tanomu → Tanomou

**Group 2:** Change the ‘ru’ sound in the Dictionary form to ‘you’ sound.
- ie: Taberu → Tabeyou
- neru → neyou

**Group 3:**

Kuru → Koyou

Suru → Shiyou
EXAMPLES:
That's a good idea, let’s do so.
I think I will take some medicine and go to bed early tonight.
I am thinking of having my friend help me.
Carl suggested (said) we drink coffee.
Chris suggested (said) we go to Paris.
I think I will go to Japan next year.

CONDITIONAL form – ‘BA’ = ‘if…’

Conversion rules:
VERB: Change the ‘u’ sound of the Dictionary form to ‘eba’.
   ie: Ikun → Ikubea
   Taberu → Tabebeba

i-Adjectives: Change the final ‘i’ sound in the Dictionary form to ‘kereba’.
   ie: Atsu → Atsukereba
   Oishii → Oishikereba

Na-Adjectives: Change the final ‘da’ sound in the Dictionary form to ‘nara(ba)’.
   Heta da → Heta nara(ba)

Nouns: Noun + ‘nara(ba)’.
   Sensei → Sensein nara(ba)

This form is used in the following instances:
1) When describing the requirements needed for a certain event to manifest itself:

If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
If you study hard, you will learn Japanese. Isshoukenmei benkyou sureba, Nihongo o oboemasu.
If you take this medicine, you will get well. Kono kusuri o nomeba, yoku narimasu.
If you read this manual, you will understand how to use it. Kono setsumeisho o yomeba, tsukai-kata ga wakarimasu.
If I meet him, I’ll be happy. Ano hito ni aereba, shiwase desu.
### Condition:

**General condition**

---ba ---nara(ba)

### Examples:

**[Group 1]**

- If it is cheap I will buy it.  
  Yasukereba kaimasu.
- If the light is off, he is not back yet.  
  Moshi denki ga kiete ireba, kare wa mada kaette inain desu.
- If he is not here, I will leave a message.  
  Moshi kare ga inakereba messeji o oite kimasu.

**[Group 2]**

- If you are hot, take off your coat.  
  Atsuin nara, kooto o nuginasai.
- If you are going, I am going too.  
  Kimi ga iku-n nara, boku mo ikimasu.
- If you know, please tell me.  
  Shitte iru-n nara oshite kudasai.
- If you lost it, loj for it yourself.  
  Nakushita-n nara, jibun de sagashinasai.

You’ll understand it **if** you ask Prof. Bob.  
Kore wa Bob-sensei ni kikeba, wakarimasu.
You can get to that town in 30 minutes, **if** you go by car.  
Sono machi wa kuruma de ikeba, san-juppun de ikeru.
**Yasukereba**, kaimasu.
I’ll buy it **if** it is cheap.  
Jikan ga a reba, Kyoto e mo ikitai.

**If** you turn to the right, you will see a bank.  
Migi e magareba, ginkou ga arimasu.
**If** you don’t understand, please read this manual.  
Wakaranakeraba, kono setsumeisho o yonde kudasai.
**Yasukereba**, kaimasu.
**If** you do not take this medicine, you will not get well, you know.  
Kono kusuri o nomanakereba, yoku narimasen yo.
Atsukereba, airkon o tsukete kudasai.
**If** you like computers, this job will probably be interesting.  
Konpyuutaa ga suki nara(ba), kono shigoto wa omoshiroi deshou.
When it comes to movies, Mr Yamada kows everything.  
Yamada-san wa eiga no koto nara(ba), nan demo shitte imasu.

### Dict. form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kaku</th>
<th>Kakeba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oyogu</td>
<td>Oyogeba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yomu</td>
<td>Yomeba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yobu</td>
<td>Yobeba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toru</td>
<td>Toreba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kau</td>
<td>Kaeba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motsu</td>
<td>Moteba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanasu</td>
<td>Hanaseba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberu</td>
<td>Tabereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suru</td>
<td>Sureba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td>Kureba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conditional

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>i-adjective</th>
<th>na-adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii Good</td>
<td>Byouki Sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yasui Cheap</td>
<td>Kantan Easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takai Expensive</td>
<td>Suteki Great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oishii Delicious</td>
<td>Shizuka Quiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warui Bad</td>
<td>Benri Convenient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yasukereba</td>
<td>Byouki nara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takakereba</td>
<td>Suteki nara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oishikereba</td>
<td>Shizuka nara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warukereba</td>
<td>Benri nara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The negative form is made as follows: Just replace the ‘i’ with ‘kereba’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nai- form</th>
<th>Conditional form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I Kakanai</td>
<td>Kakanakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Tabenai</td>
<td>Tabenakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minai</td>
<td>Minakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Konai</td>
<td>Konakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinai</td>
<td>Shinakereba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borrowing</th>
<th>Borrowing kereba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yasukunai</td>
<td>Yasukunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yokunai</td>
<td>Yokunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takakunai</td>
<td>Takakunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitakunai</td>
<td>Kitakunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yasahikunai</td>
<td>Yasahikunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semakunai</td>
<td>Semakunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atsakunai</td>
<td>Atsakunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakakunai</td>
<td>Wakakunakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omoshirokunai</td>
<td>Omoshirokunakereba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borrowing</th>
<th>Borrowing nakereba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kantanjanai</td>
<td>Kantanja nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byoukijanai</td>
<td>Byoukija nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kireijanai</td>
<td>Kireija nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genkijanai</td>
<td>Genki ja nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sutekijanai</td>
<td>Suteki ja nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinsetsujanai</td>
<td>Shinsetsuja nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benrijanai</td>
<td>Benri ja nakereba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hima janai</td>
<td>Hima ja nakereba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also see → tara

Another CONDITIONAL CLAUSE is
- to Whenever - / when - / If

STRUCTURE: (Dict. form form) + to

Whenever spring comes, it gets warm and flowers start to bloom. Haru ni naru to atatakaku natte hana ga saki-hajimeru.

If you go straight along this street, you will get to the station. Kono michi o massugu iku to eki ni tsukimasu yo.

Whenever the room is quiet, we can sleep well. Gakkou ga eki ni chikai to kayou noni benri da.

When/if the weather is good, I go to the park. Heya ga shizuka da to yoku neneru.

When I drink sake, I become sleepy. Sake o nomu to nemuku narimasu.

When/if the weather is good, I go to the park. Tenki ga ii to kouen ni ikimasu.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dict. Form</th>
<th>Te- form</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
<th>Volitional</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Causative</th>
<th>Potential</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaku</td>
<td>Kaite</td>
<td>Kakeba</td>
<td>Kakou</td>
<td>Kakareru</td>
<td>Kakaseru</td>
<td>Kakeru</td>
<td>Kake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oyoigu</td>
<td>Oyoide</td>
<td>Oyogeba</td>
<td>Oyogou</td>
<td>Oyagareru</td>
<td>Ovagaseru</td>
<td>Oyogeru</td>
<td>Oyoge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yomu</td>
<td>Yonde</td>
<td>Yomeba</td>
<td>Yomou</td>
<td>Yomareru</td>
<td>Yomaseru</td>
<td>Yomeru</td>
<td>Yome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yobu</td>
<td>Yonde</td>
<td>Yobeba</td>
<td>Yobou</td>
<td>Yobareru</td>
<td>Yobaseru</td>
<td>Yoberu</td>
<td>Yobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toru</td>
<td>Totte</td>
<td>Toreba</td>
<td>Torou</td>
<td>Tore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kau</td>
<td>Katte</td>
<td>Kaeba</td>
<td>Kaou</td>
<td>Kowareru</td>
<td>Kawaseru</td>
<td>Kaeru</td>
<td>Kae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motte</td>
<td>Motte</td>
<td>Moteba</td>
<td>Motou</td>
<td>Moteru</td>
<td>Mote</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hansu</td>
<td>Hanashite</td>
<td>Hanaseba</td>
<td>Hansou</td>
<td>Hanasareru</td>
<td>Hanasaseru</td>
<td>Hanaseru</td>
<td>Hanase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberu</td>
<td>Tabete</td>
<td>Tabereba</td>
<td>Tabeyou</td>
<td>Taberareru</td>
<td>Tabero</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suru</td>
<td>Shite</td>
<td>Sureba</td>
<td>Shiyou</td>
<td>Sareru</td>
<td>Saseru</td>
<td>Dekiru</td>
<td>Shiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kite</td>
<td>Kiteba</td>
<td>Koyou</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Koro</td>
<td>Koi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples of Verb forms

**Shimasu** is a useful word meaning **do, make** or **play**. Here are some examples of its use:

- I play tennis. **Tenisu o shimasu.**
- I play football. **Sakkaa o shimasu.**
- I do the shopping. **Kaimono o shimasu.**
- What do (you) do on Sunday’s? **Nichiyobi ni nani o shimasu ka?**
- I play golf on **Monday’s.** **Getsuyobi ni gorufu o shimasu.**
- Study **Benkyo o (shimasu/suru)**

**Wash face** **Kao o araimasu**
**Clean teeth** **Hau o migakimasu**
**Drink coffee** **Kohi o nomimasu**
**Go jogging** **Jogging o shimasu**
**Take a shower** **Shower o abimasu**
**Take a bath** **O-furoba ni haerimasu**
**Eat rice** **Gohan o tabemasu**
**Read the newspaper** **Shinbun o yomimasu**
**Leave home** **Uchi o demasu**
**Go to the office** **Kaisha e ikimasu**
**Attend a meeting** **Kaigi ni demasu**
**Make a call on the telephone** **Denwa o kakemasu**
**Talk to the Buchou** **Buchou to hanashimasu**
**Strike a keyboard** **Waapuro o uchimasu**
**Use a PC** **Pasukon o tsukaimasu**
**Return home** **Uchi e kaerimasu**
**Watch TV** **Terebi o mimasu**
**Watch a movie** **Eiga o mimasu**
**Write a letter** **Tegami o kakimasu**
**Listen to a CD** **Shiidii o kikimasu**
**Dance** **Dansu o shimasu**
**Sing a song** **Utai o utaimasu**
**Play (=hiku) the piano** **Piano o hikimasu**
**Play a game** **Gamu o shimasu**
**Smoke tobacco** **Tabako o suimasu**
**Clean a room** **Heya o kirei ni shite imasu**
**Take a bus** **Basu o norimasu**
**Come to Japan by plane** **Hikouki (plane) de Nihon e kimashita**
**Listen to music** **Ongaku o kimasu**
**I walk to my office from home.** **Uchi kara kaisha made aruite ikimasu.**

---

Page - 60 -  Jon's Japanese V2012.doc
Go into the house.   
Go out of the house.  
He was born in April.  

NOTE: You can replace ni with goro (=about) if you want to give an approximate time, eg:  
I get up at about 8 o’clock.  
Hachi-ji goro okimasu.  
You do not need to use the words you/I/he, etc, unless it is not clear who is being spoken about.

EXAMPLES OF THE OTHER VERBS: 
What do you eat for dinner?  
I eat rice.  
I drink black tea.  
I want to watch TV.  
I watch TV on Sunday’s  
If you want to include what you drink, use one of the and words (sore ni, soshite, sorekara).  
I eat eggs. And I drink coffee. 

Note the order which you say these sentences:  
a) say the person who does the action, followed by wa.  
b) say the item (or person) which has the action done to it, followed by o.  
c) say the action (masu) word.  
Eg: Jon watches TV from 8 o’clock.  
Jon-san wa hachi-ji kara terebi o mimasu.  

To ask when somebody does something use nanji ni (= at what time):  
(At) what time do you get up?  
What time do you eat breakfast?  
What time did you eat dinner?  
Or: nanyoubi ni (= what day):  
(On) what day(s) do you play golf?  
Or: nannichi ni (= on what date / days of the month):  
(On) what date are you going to play football?  
Or the more general question: itsu (when)  
When do you do the shopping?  
When do you play golf?  

QUESTIONS  
Nan means What  
Nansai means What age?  
Nansai desu ka? Means How old are you/he/she?  
Nangatsu means What month is it?  
Nannin desu ka? means How many people?  
Nanji desu ka? means What time is it?  
Nanyoobi desu ka? means What day is it?
Verb Page 1
Verb Page 2
Verb Page 3
Verb Page 4
Verb Page 5
Verb Page 6
Verb Examples: i-desu

It is long
It is not long
It was long
It was not long

Sore wa nagai desu
Sore wa nagakunai desu
Sore wa nagakatta desu
Sore wa nagakunakatta desu

NOTES ABOUT VERBS

PAST PROGRESSIVE is used for past continuous action or state of being.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was walking</td>
<td>Wasn’t walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aruite imashita</td>
<td>Aruite imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was listening</td>
<td>Wasn’t listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiite imashita</td>
<td>kiite imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was eating</td>
<td>Wasn’t eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabete imashita</td>
<td>Tabete imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was speaking</td>
<td>Wasn’t speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanashite imashita</td>
<td>Hanashite imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was reading</td>
<td>Wasn’t reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yonde imashita</td>
<td>Yonde imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was drinking</td>
<td>Wasn’t drinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonde imashita</td>
<td>Nonde imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXAMPLES of Past Continuous Action: -
Mother was preparing dinner.
Father wasn’t working.
Last year I was studying Japanese.
The cat was sleeping on top of the chair.

Haha wa bangohan o tsukutte imashita.
Chichi wa hataraitte imasen deshita.
Kyonen Nihongo o benkyou shite imashita.
Neko ga isu no ue de nete imashita.

EXAMPLES of Past States of Being: -
The light was on.
The door was open.

Denki ga tsuite imashita.
Doa ga aite imashita.
There are 2 types of Japanese adjectives, i-adjectives and na-adjectives. Japanese adjectives have tense, while English ones do not.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT form</th>
<th>Present negative KUNAI (It is not -)</th>
<th>Past KATTA (It was -)</th>
<th>Past negative KUNAKATTA (It wasn’t -)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Big, large, loud, tall</td>
<td>Ookii</td>
<td>Ookikunai</td>
<td>Ookikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Chisai</td>
<td>Chiisakunai</td>
<td>Chiisakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>Atsui</td>
<td>Atsukunai</td>
<td>Atsukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm</td>
<td>Atatakai</td>
<td>Atatakakunai</td>
<td>Atatakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool</td>
<td>Suzushi</td>
<td>Suzushikunai</td>
<td>Suzushikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Tsumetai/Samui</td>
<td>Samukunai</td>
<td>Samukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleasant</td>
<td>Tanoshii</td>
<td>Tanoshikunai</td>
<td>Tanoshikatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Takai</td>
<td>Takakunai</td>
<td>Takakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheap</td>
<td>Yasui</td>
<td>Yasukunai</td>
<td>Yasukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delicious</td>
<td>Oishii</td>
<td>Oishikunai</td>
<td>Oishikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not tasty/not delicious</td>
<td>Mazui</td>
<td>Mazukunai</td>
<td>Mazukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet</td>
<td>Amai</td>
<td>Amakunai</td>
<td>Amakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasty, good at</td>
<td>Umi</td>
<td>Umakunai</td>
<td>Umakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigour, spirit, vitality</td>
<td>Genki</td>
<td>Genki (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Genki datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wonderful, lovely, fine</td>
<td>Suteki</td>
<td>Suteki (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Suteki datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wonderful, excellent, Marvelous, splendid</td>
<td>Subarashii</td>
<td>Subarashii (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Subarashii datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splendid, magnificent</td>
<td>Rippa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, nice</td>
<td>Ii</td>
<td>Yokunai</td>
<td>Yokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, skillful, clever</td>
<td>Jouzu</td>
<td>Jouzu (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Jouzu datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, all right, allowable</td>
<td>Yoroshii</td>
<td>Yoroshikunai</td>
<td>Yoroshikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad (something you do)</td>
<td>Heta</td>
<td>Heta (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Heta datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad (situation)</td>
<td>Warui</td>
<td>Warukunai</td>
<td>Warukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cute, pretty</td>
<td>Kawaii</td>
<td>Kawaiikunai</td>
<td>Kawaiikatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early, quick, fast</td>
<td>Hayai</td>
<td>Hayakunai</td>
<td>Hayakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow, late</td>
<td>Osoi</td>
<td>Osokunai</td>
<td>Osokatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late</td>
<td>Okureta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young</td>
<td>Wakai</td>
<td>Wakanai</td>
<td>Wakakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old (not 4 humans)</td>
<td>Furui</td>
<td>Furukunai</td>
<td>Furukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old (humans)</td>
<td>Toshii</td>
<td>Toshikunai</td>
<td>Toshikatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New, up-to-date</td>
<td>Atarashii</td>
<td>Atarashikunai</td>
<td>Atarashikatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heaps/lots</td>
<td>Takusan, oozei (refers to people)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremely</td>
<td>Sugoku</td>
<td>Sugokunai</td>
<td>Sugokatka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very</td>
<td>Totemo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various/several</td>
<td>Iroiro</td>
<td>Interesting/funny</td>
<td>Omoshiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trifling/Worthless</td>
<td>Tsumaranai</td>
<td>Tsumaranakunai</td>
<td>Tsumaranakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thick, fat, bold</td>
<td>Futoi / Atsui</td>
<td>Futokunai</td>
<td>Futokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thin</td>
<td>Hosoi / Usui</td>
<td>Hosokunai</td>
<td>Hosokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tall</td>
<td>Takai</td>
<td>Takakunai</td>
<td>Takakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short/low (height)</td>
<td>Hikui</td>
<td>Hikukunai</td>
<td>Hikukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>Nagai</td>
<td>Nagakunai</td>
<td>Nagakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short (length, distance)</td>
<td>Mijikai</td>
<td>Mijikakunai</td>
<td>Mijikakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crowded/Busy/Lively</td>
<td>Nigiyaka</td>
<td>Nigiyakunai</td>
<td>Nigiyakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noisy</td>
<td>Urusai</td>
<td>Urusakunai</td>
<td>Urusakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiet, peaceful, still</td>
<td>Shizuka</td>
<td>Shizuka (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Shizuka datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrow/small</td>
<td>Semai</td>
<td>Semakunai</td>
<td>Semakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wide/spacious</td>
<td>Hiroi</td>
<td>Hirokunai</td>
<td>Hirokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leisure/spare time</td>
<td>Hima</td>
<td>Hima (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Hima datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busy/occupied</td>
<td>Isogashii</td>
<td>Isogashikunai</td>
<td>Isogashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark</td>
<td>Kurai</td>
<td>Kurakunai</td>
<td>Kurakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>Akarui</td>
<td>Akarukunai</td>
<td>Akarakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright, cheerful</td>
<td>Akarui</td>
<td>Akarukunai</td>
<td>Akarakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kindness, gladness</td>
<td>Shinsetsu</td>
<td>Shinsetsu (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Shinsetsu datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good head intelligent</td>
<td>Atama ga ii</td>
<td>Atama ga yokunai</td>
<td>Atama ga yokkatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy, kind hearted</td>
<td>Yasashii</td>
<td>Yasashikunai</td>
<td>Yasashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult</td>
<td>Muzukashii</td>
<td>Muzukashikunai</td>
<td>Muzukashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far, distant</td>
<td>Tooti</td>
<td>Toookunai</td>
<td>Tookkatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near, close</td>
<td>Chikai</td>
<td>Chikakunai</td>
<td>Chikakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Tsuyoi</td>
<td>Tsuyokunai</td>
<td>Tsuyokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak/feeble</td>
<td>Yowai</td>
<td>Yowakunai</td>
<td>Yowakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenient</td>
<td>Benri</td>
<td>Benri (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Benri datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard, solid</td>
<td>Katai</td>
<td>Katakunai</td>
<td>Katakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft, tender</td>
<td>Yawarakai</td>
<td>Yawarakakunai</td>
<td>Yawarakakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirty</td>
<td>Kitani</td>
<td>Kitanakunai</td>
<td>Kitanakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean, beautiful, pretty</td>
<td>Kirei</td>
<td>Kirei (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Kirei datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very beautiful</td>
<td>Totemo kirei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Famous</td>
<td>Yuumei</td>
<td>Yuumei (ja/dewa) nai</td>
<td>Yuumei datta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy</td>
<td>Omoi</td>
<td>Omokunai</td>
<td>Omokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Add</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenient to one's schedule</td>
<td>Tsugou ga ii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not convenient to one's schedule</td>
<td>Tsugou ga warui</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strange (people &amp; objects), funny, crazy</td>
<td>Okashii</td>
<td>Okashikunai</td>
<td>Okashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dangerous</td>
<td>Abunai</td>
<td>Abunakunai</td>
<td>Abunakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embarrassing,</td>
<td>Hazukashii</td>
<td>Hazukashikunai</td>
<td>Hazukashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shy, bashful</td>
<td>Kowai</td>
<td>Kowakunai</td>
<td>Kowakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleasent, agreeable</td>
<td>Kimochi ga ii</td>
<td>Kimochi ga yokunai</td>
<td>Kimochi ga yokatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unpleasant, disgusting</td>
<td>Kimochi ga warui</td>
<td>Kimochi ga warukunai</td>
<td>Kimochi ga warukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Happy, glad</td>
<td>Ureshii</td>
<td>Ureshikunai</td>
<td>Ureshikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sad, sorrowful</td>
<td>Kanashii</td>
<td>Kanashikunai</td>
<td>Kanashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short, brief</td>
<td>Mijikai</td>
<td>Mijikakunai</td>
<td>Mijikakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is not, does not exist</td>
<td>Nai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleepy, drowsy</td>
<td>Nemui</td>
<td>Nemukunai</td>
<td>Nemukatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correct, accurate, right</td>
<td>Tadashii</td>
<td>Tadashikunai</td>
<td>Tadashikatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honest</td>
<td>Shoujiki</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Teinei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salty</td>
<td>Shiokarai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NA-adjetives**

| Important | Daiji na | No good | Dame na |
| Inconvenient | Fuben na | Unkind | Fushinsetsu na |
| Rude | Shitsurei na | Polite | Teinei na |

**SOME EXAMPLES**

- **Complicated**
  
  This problem is **complicated**.

- **Easy/comfortable**
  
  Easy job

**Fukuzatsu ➔ add to adjectives?**

Kono mondai wa **fukuzatsu** desu.

**Raku ➔ add to adjectives?**

Raku no shigoto

**Note: Oozei = hito ga takusan  (lots of people)**

**OPPOSITES**

| Empty | Kara | Full | Iipai |
| Round | Maru | Square | Shikakui |
| Dirty | Kitanai | Clean | Kirei |
| Wet | Mereteiru | Dry | Kawaiteiru |
| Neat | Kichintoshiteiru | Messy | Chirakatteiru |
| Sweet | Amai | Sour | Suppai |
| Dark | Kurai | Light | Akarui |
| High | Takai | Low | Hikui |
| Heavy | Omoi | Light | Karui |
| Wide | Hiroi | Narrow | Semai |
| Many | Ooi | Few | Sukunai |
| Thick | Futoi/Atsui | Thin | Usui |
| Fast | Hayai | Slow | Osoi |
| Near | Chikai | Far | Tooi |
NOTES ABOUT ADJECTIVES

I-ADJECTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Negative</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>Is big</td>
<td>Is not big</td>
<td>Was big</td>
<td>Was not big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Ookii</td>
<td>Ookikunai</td>
<td>Ookikatta</td>
<td>Ookikunakatta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Negative</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>Is hot</td>
<td>Is not hot</td>
<td>Was hot</td>
<td>Was not hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Atsui</td>
<td>Atsukunai</td>
<td>Atsukatta</td>
<td>Atsukunakatta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Negative</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>Is Heavy</td>
<td>Is not Heavy</td>
<td>Was Heavy</td>
<td>Was not Heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Omoi</td>
<td>Omokunai</td>
<td>Omokatta</td>
<td>Omokunakatta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
This book is interesting and enjoyable.
Spring is late this year.
These shoes are small.
That book was cheap.
Lunch was delicious.
The exam was easy.
This car isn't new.
He is good at driving.
Is it cold in Beijing?
Beijing is very cold.
This is a very famous movie.

NA-ADJECTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Negative</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>Shizuka da</td>
<td>Shizuka ja/dewa nai</td>
<td>Shizuka datta</td>
<td>Shizuka ja/dewa nakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Shizuka desu</td>
<td>Shizuka ja arimasen</td>
<td>Shizuka deshita</td>
<td>Shizuka ja arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
I want a quiet room.
This room is quiet.
Sushi is my favourite food.
That's an inconvenient time.
I have been to various countries.
It's not quiet there.
The park wasn't pretty.
My father is healthy.
She isn't good at sports.
That baseball player is famous.

Shizuka na heya ga hoshii desu.
Kono heya wa shizuka desu.
Sushi wa watashi no suki na tabemono desu.
Sore wa fuben na (inconvenient) jikan (time) desu.
Iroiro na kuni ni ikimashita.
Asoko wa shizuka (dewa arimasen/janai)
Kouen wa kirei dewa arimasen deshita.
Chichi wa genki desu.
Ano hito wa supootsu ga heta desu.
Ano yakyuu no senshu wa yumei desu.
She walks quietly.
The patient became healthy.
Joe became good at English.
Mr Aoki speaks English well.

Kanojo wa shizuka ni arimasu.
Kanja (patient) wa genki ni narimashita.
Joe-san wa Eigo ga jouzu ni narimashita.
Aoki-san wa Eigo o jouzu ni hanashimasu.

くない (kunai) form – Present Negative

Examples I-adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Big</td>
<td>Not big</td>
<td>Not big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ookii</td>
<td>Ookikunai</td>
<td>Ookiku arimasen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Not good</td>
<td>Not good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Irregular): ii</td>
<td>Yokunai</td>
<td>Yoku arimasen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is not cold today.
Q: Is Carl’s car red?
A: No, it is not red. (polite)

This room is not very spacious, it is?
My father is not young any more.

Examples NA-adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heta</td>
<td>desu (bad)</td>
<td>Heta ja/dewa nai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

That restaurant is not famous. (polite)
Mr Smith is not kind. (plain)
This town is not clean, is it? (polite)
Since I am not good at singing, I don’t like karaoke.

なかった (nakatta) form – NEGATIVE PAST form

Convert from NAI form. Easy, just replace the い in the NAI form with KATTA.

ie:

NAI FORM      NAKATTA FORM
あわない       あわなかった
よまない       よまなかった
のらない       のらなかった

Examples I-adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ookiku( not big)</td>
<td>Kunakatta</td>
<td>Ooki ku arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coffee I drank this morning was not good.
It was not hot yesterday, was it?
Q: Was last week’s concert good?
A: No, it wasn’t very good.
The match was not exciting (not interesting).

Examples NA-adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heta</td>
<td>janai (not bad)</td>
<td>Heta janakatta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Q: How was Mr Brown’s apartment?
A: It was not quiet.  
This neighbourhood was not convenient a long time ago.  
In my childhood, I didn’t like vegetables.

Brown-san no apaato wa dou deshita ka?  
Shizuka ja arimasen deshita.  
Mukashi kono hen wa benri ja arimasen deshita.  
Kodomo no koro watashi wa yasui ga suki janakatta.

**ADJECTIVE USAGE**
When an i-adjective or na-adjective modifies a **noun**, it always **precedes** the noun.

**Examples**  
**NA-adjectives:**
When a **NA-adjective** modifies a **noun**, the final ‘da’ of its dict. form is replaced by ‘na’.

ie: heta da  ➔ heta na

Please write neatly. (*Lit. ‘with neat letters’)*
This is a valuable book.
Let’s go to a quiet place.

Kirei na ji de kaite kudasai.
Kore wa daiji na hon desu.
Shizuka na tokoro e ikimashou.

**ADVERBIAL USAGE**
I-adjectives and NA-adjectives can **modify verbs**, (as opposed to modifying **nouns** above)

**Examples**  
**I-adjectives:**
When an I-adjective modifies a **VERB**, the final ‘i’ of its dict. form is replaced by ‘ku’.

ie: Ookii ➔ ookiku  
Takai ➔ takaku  
Chiisai ➔ Chiisaku  
Atsu ➔ Atsuku

Please come to school early tomorrow.  
Shall I write it bigger?  
It has become cool since yesterday, hasn’t it?

Ashita gakkou ni hayaku kite kudasai.  
Motto ookiku kakimashou ka?  
Kinou kara suzushiku narimashita ne?

**Examples**  
**NA-adjectives**
When an NA-adjective modifies a **VERB**, the final ‘da’ of its dict. form is replaced by ‘ni’.

ie: heta da ➔ heta ni

A child is sleeping, so please speak quietly.  
I will draw a simple map (**Lit. ‘I will draw a map simply’**)  
I think I will play golf when I have time.

Kodomo ga nete iru kara, shizuka ni hanashite kudasai.  
Chizu o kantan ni kakimashou.  
Hima ni nattara, gorufu o shiyou to omoimasu.
ADVERBS and other words

Table of Contents

Adverbs are words that modify or describe verbs, adjectives or other adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sorted by English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(not) at all; absolutely not (with negative verbs)</td>
<td>Zenzen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A little (short) while ago.</td>
<td>Saki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A little, few</td>
<td>Sukoshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A little, for a moment</td>
<td>Chotto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A lot</td>
<td>Takusan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accurate, exact</td>
<td>Seikaku na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After all</td>
<td>Yahari, kekkyoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Again</td>
<td>Mata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All the way, much, far</td>
<td>Zutto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All, every</td>
<td>Minna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almost</td>
<td>Daitai, hotondo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almost, all but, hardly</td>
<td>Hotondo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Already, anymore</td>
<td>Mou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Itsumo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And (then)</td>
<td>Soreni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And, and so</td>
<td>Sorede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anyhow</td>
<td>Tonikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anyway, at any rate, might as well</td>
<td>Douse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As expected</td>
<td>Yappari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As might be expected; after all; naturally</td>
<td>Sasuga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At (long) last, finally</td>
<td>Yatto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At once; soon; right away; immediately</td>
<td>Sugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the very least</td>
<td>Semete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beginning</td>
<td>Hajime ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By all means</td>
<td>Zehi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearly, vividly</td>
<td>Hakkiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection, contact</td>
<td>Renraku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Considerably</td>
<td>Daibu, kanari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrary to one’s expectation, conversely</td>
<td>Gyaku ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenience</td>
<td>Tsukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decide</td>
<td>Kimemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Especially, in particular</td>
<td>Tokuni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every time</td>
<td>Maito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exactly</td>
<td>Choudo, pittari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairly, rather</td>
<td>Kanari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmly</td>
<td>Shikkari to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First, first time</td>
<td>Hajime te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full, many, a lot</td>
<td>Ippai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goods, articles</td>
<td>Shinamono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradually, increasingly</td>
<td>Dandan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help</td>
<td>Tetsudatte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t know why but; I tried but; for some reason</td>
<td>Doumo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maybe, perhaps, probably</td>
<td>Tabun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>Mannaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most, just about</td>
<td>Taitei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Kesshite, zettai nai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No matter how you slice it, indeed, quite</td>
<td>Ikanimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not a bit</td>
<td>Chitto mo, sukoshi mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not much, not often</td>
<td>Amari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occasionally</td>
<td>Tamani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Often (see Yoku)</td>
<td>Tabitabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the contrary, rather, surprisingly</td>
<td>Kaette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only</td>
<td>Bakkari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only; just; simply; that's all</td>
<td>Tada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ought, should</td>
<td>Hazu (shimasu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation</td>
<td>Jyunbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properly</td>
<td>Chanto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quite</td>
<td>Mattaku, nakanaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quite, as if, practically</td>
<td>Maru de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quite, rather, completely, at all</td>
<td>Nakanaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly</td>
<td>Dondon, sumiyaka ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rather</td>
<td>Mushiro, kaette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rather, quite</td>
<td>Zuibun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly, gradually, soon</td>
<td>Sorosoro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly, without hurry</td>
<td>Yukkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somehow</td>
<td>Nantoka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sometimes</td>
<td>Tokidoki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soon, before long</td>
<td>Mou sugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound, noise</td>
<td>Oto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special</td>
<td>Tokubetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suddenly</td>
<td>Kyuu ni, totsuzen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surely</td>
<td>Kitto, kanarazu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take part, attend</td>
<td>Sankashimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tentatively</td>
<td>Ichou, toriaezu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That is to say; namely; in other words; what I mean is</td>
<td>Tsumari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truly</td>
<td>Hontou ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexpectedly</td>
<td>Angai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usually, generally</td>
<td>Futsuu, taitei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utterly</td>
<td>Marude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very much, greatly, extremely</td>
<td>Taihen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very much, greatly, extremely</td>
<td>Totemo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well, often, much</td>
<td>Yoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well, right, nicely, successfully</td>
<td>Umaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With effort, take the trouble to do</td>
<td>Sakkaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese Phrase</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amari</td>
<td>Not much, not often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angai</td>
<td>Unexpectedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakkari</td>
<td>Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chanto</td>
<td>Properly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitto mo, suki mo</td>
<td>Not a bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chotto</td>
<td>A little, for a moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choudo, pittari</td>
<td>Exactly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daibu, kanari</td>
<td>Considerably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daitai, hotondo</td>
<td>Almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandan</td>
<td>Gradually, increasingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dondon, sumiyaka ni</td>
<td>Rapidly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doumo</td>
<td>I don't know why but; I tried but; for some reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douse</td>
<td>Anyway, at any rate, might as well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Futsuu, taitei</td>
<td>Usually, generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gyaku ni</td>
<td>Contrary to one's expectation, conversely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hajime ni</td>
<td>Beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hajimete</td>
<td>First, first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hakkiri</td>
<td>Clearly, vividly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazu (shimasu)</td>
<td>Ought, should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hontou ni</td>
<td>Truly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotondo</td>
<td>Almost, all but, hardly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ichou, toriaezu</td>
<td>Tentatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikanimo</td>
<td>No matter how you slice it, indeed, quite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ippai</td>
<td>Full, many, a lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itsumo</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jyunbi</td>
<td>Preparation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaette</td>
<td>On the contrary, rather, surprisingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanari</td>
<td>Fairly, rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kesshite, zettai nai</td>
<td>Never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimemasu</td>
<td>Decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitto, kanarazu</td>
<td>Surely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koto nashi ni</td>
<td>Without doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyuu ni, totsuzen</td>
<td>Suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maido</td>
<td>Every time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannaka</td>
<td>Middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maru de</td>
<td>Quite, as if, practically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marude</td>
<td>Utterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mata</td>
<td>Again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattaku, nakanaka</td>
<td>Quite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minna</td>
<td>All, every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mou</td>
<td>Already, anymore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mou sugu</td>
<td>Soon, before long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mushiro, kaette</td>
<td>Rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nakanaka</td>
<td>Quite, rather, completely, at all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nantoka</td>
<td>Somehow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omoni, shutoshite</td>
<td>Mainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oto</td>
<td>Sound, noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renraku</td>
<td>Connection, contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saki</td>
<td>A little (short) while ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sankashimasu</td>
<td>Take part, attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasuga</td>
<td>As might be expected; after all; naturally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seikaku na</td>
<td>Accurate, exact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekkaku</td>
<td>With effort, take the trouble to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semete</td>
<td>At the very least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shikkari to</td>
<td>Firmly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinamono</td>
<td>Goods, articles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorede</td>
<td>And, and so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soreni</td>
<td>And (then)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorosoro</td>
<td>Slowly, gradually, soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugu</td>
<td>At once; soon; right away; immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukoshi</td>
<td>A little, few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabitabi</td>
<td>Often (see Yoku)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabun</td>
<td>Maybe, perhaps, probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tada</td>
<td>Only; just; simply; that's all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taihen</td>
<td>Very much, greatly, extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiiei</td>
<td>Most, just about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takusan</td>
<td>A lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamani</td>
<td>Occasionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetsudatte</td>
<td>Help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokidoki</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokubetsu</td>
<td>Special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokuni</td>
<td>Especially, in particular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonikaku</td>
<td>Anyhow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totemo</td>
<td>Very much, greatly, extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toutou</td>
<td>In the end, never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsukou</td>
<td>Convenience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsumari</td>
<td>That is to say; namely; in other words; what I mean is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umaku</td>
<td>Well, right, nicely, successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahari, kekkyoku</td>
<td>After all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yappari</td>
<td>As expected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yatto</td>
<td>At (long) last, finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoku</td>
<td>Well, often, much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yukkuri</td>
<td>Slowly, without hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zehi</td>
<td>By all means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zenzen</td>
<td>(not) at all; absolutely not (with negative verbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuibun</td>
<td>Rather, quite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zutto</td>
<td>All the way, much, far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A frequent occurrence
More or less
Knowing very well, detailed
Preferably, as possible

Examples

I don’t like bread much.
George is always working.
I want to go to London again.
I want to go to Shinjuku again.
Let’s walk some more.
It was very interesting.
He talks a lot.
It often rains in June.
I sometimes go to Tokyo.
Most children like chocolate.
Most men do not like shopping.
I understand English well.
I understand English a little.
I don’t understand English (so well/much).
I have a lot of money.
I don’t have any money (at all).
It’s a little cold here.
He is much younger than I am.
The work is almost finished.
I am very tired.
She will surely keep her promise.
He suddenly stood up.
Never (with a negative predicate)
She never comes.
Each time; always
Every time
This program is always interesting.
After every meal
Please take this medication after every meal.

Pan wa amari suki dewa arimasen.
George-san wa itsumo hatairai imasu.
Mata London e ikaitai desu.
Mata Shinjuku e ikitai desu.
Motto arukimashou.
Taihen omoshirokatta desu.
Ano hito wa takusan hanashimasu.
Rokkugatsu wa ame ga yoku furimasu.
Tokidoki Tokyo ni ikimasu.
Taitee no kodomo wa chokoeeto ga suki desu.
Taitee no kare wa kaimono ga sukijanai desu.
Eigo ga yoku wakarimasu.
Eigo ga sukoshi wakarimasu.
Eigo ga amari wakarimasen.
Okane ga takusan arimasu.
Okane ga zenzen arimasen.
Koko wa sukoshi samui desu.
Kare wa watashi yori zutto wakai.
Shigoto wa hotondo owarimashita.
Watashi wa taihen tsukaremashtia.
Kanojo wa kitto yakusoku o mamarimasu.
Kare wa totsuzen tachigaramashita
Kesshite
Kesshite kimasen.
Maido
Maikai
Kono bangumi wa maikai omoshiroi, ne.
Maishokugo
Kono kusuri wa maishokugo ni nonde kudasai.
At the airport

**Table of Contents**

Airport Kuukou
Airport shuttle (Limo) Rimujin basu
Bureau de Change Ryougaejo
Airline company Koukuugaisha

At passport control

What is the purpose of your visit? Houmon no mokuteki wan an desu ka?
Passport control Nyuukoku shinsa Customs Zeikan
Flight number Binmei
Quarantine Ken 'eki
Embarkation card Shukkoku kaado Embarkation Shukkoku
Disembarkation card Nyuukoku kaado

(Non-smoking/smoking) please. (Kinenseki/kitsuenseki) onegaishimasu.
Do you have an (aisle/window) seat? (Tsuurogawa/Madogawa) no seki wa arimasu ka?
What is the boarding time? Toujou kaisha wa nanji desu ka?
How long will it be delayed? Dore gurai okuremasu ka?

**COUNTRIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chugoku</td>
<td>Chugoku-jin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Kankoku</td>
<td>Kankoku-jin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South East</td>
<td>Toonan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chuuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lived in the Middle East for a long time.</td>
<td>Chuuto ni nagaku suru ende imashita.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Orient, the East</td>
<td>Touyou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-east</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hokutou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Burajiru</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### JAPAN PLACE NAMES

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Kanji</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Kanji</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aichi</td>
<td>愛知</td>
<td>Kyoto</td>
<td>京都</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aomori</td>
<td>青森</td>
<td>Nagano</td>
<td>長野</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akita</td>
<td>秋田</td>
<td>Nagasaki</td>
<td>長崎</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiba</td>
<td>千葉</td>
<td>Nagoya</td>
<td>名古屋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chugoku</td>
<td>中国</td>
<td>Nara</td>
<td>奈良</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukuoka</td>
<td>福岡</td>
<td>Niigata</td>
<td>新潟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukushima</td>
<td>福島</td>
<td>Nikko</td>
<td>日光</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunma</td>
<td>群馬</td>
<td>Okinawa</td>
<td>沖縄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanagawa</td>
<td>神奈川</td>
<td>Osaka</td>
<td>大阪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanto (island)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Saitama</td>
<td>埼玉/さいたま</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyuushuu</td>
<td>九州</td>
<td>Sapporo</td>
<td>札幌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hakone</td>
<td>箱根</td>
<td>Shikoku (island)</td>
<td>四国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiroshima</td>
<td>広島</td>
<td>Shizuoka</td>
<td>静岡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hokkaido (island)</td>
<td>北海道</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honshuu (island)</td>
<td>本州</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibaraki</td>
<td>茨城</td>
<td>Tochigi</td>
<td>栃木</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iwate</td>
<td>岩手</td>
<td>Toyama</td>
<td>富山</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Izu</td>
<td>伊豆</td>
<td>Yamagata</td>
<td>山形</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamakura</td>
<td>鎌倉</td>
<td>Yokohama</td>
<td>横浜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kansai</td>
<td>関西</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kobe</td>
<td>神戸</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narita</td>
<td>成田</td>
<td>Haneda</td>
<td>羽田</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pacific Ocean (Taiheiyo)</td>
<td>太平洋</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea of Japan (Nihonkai)</td>
<td>日本海</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SEASONS and WEATHER

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Season</th>
<th>Kisetsu</th>
<th>Weather forecast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Haru</td>
<td>Spring break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer</td>
<td>Natsu</td>
<td>Summer break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autumn</td>
<td>Aki</td>
<td>Autumn break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter</td>
<td>Fuyu</td>
<td>Winter break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's not fine weather</td>
<td>Ii tenki (ja arimasen/janaï)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather forecast</td>
<td>Tenki yo hou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>Atsui</td>
<td>Nice/mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool</td>
<td>Suzushii</td>
<td>Warm (nice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Samui</td>
<td>Sunny/fine/good weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy, mist</td>
<td>Kumori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rainy season</td>
<td>Tsuyu</td>
<td>Windy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Page - 81 -

Jon's Japanese V2012.doc
Describing the weather

いま [TYPE OF WEATHER] が ふって います
Ima [TYPE OF WEATHER] ga futeimasu (furu = Jisho form)

ie: Ima ame ga fute imasu (rain is falling now)
Ima, kaze ga fute imasu (slightly different to the above) – It is windy now.

Q: How was the weather in PLACE?
A: The weather in PLACE was [ ]

Commenting on the weather

It's started to rain, hasn't it?
Futterkimashita ne.
It's cleared up, hasn't it?
Haremashita ne.
It's dreary weather, isn't it?
Uttoushii tenki desu ne.
It's really warming up, isn't it?
Atatakenu narimashita, ne?
It's awefully hot, isn't it?
Atsukute, taihen desu ne.
Heavy rain
Ooame
Light rain; drizzle
Kosame
I don't need an umbrella if it's just drizzling.
Kosame nara kasa wa iranai.
It's muggy during the rainy season.
Tsuyu no koro wa mushiatsui.

Ie: How was the weather in Osaka?
The weather in Osaka was cloudy.
It is getting colder.
Samuku natte kimashita.
It is getting hotter.
Atsuku natte kimashita.
It is very cold.
Totemo samui desu.
It is snowing.
Yuki ga futte imasu.
Rainy weather
Uten
It is warm.
Atatakui desu.
It is hot and humid.
Mushi atsui desu.
It is foggy.
Kiri desu.
It is cloudy today.
Kyou wa kumotte imasu/iru.

Shall we got to Mt Fuji tomorrow?
Ashita issho ni Fuji-san e ikimasen ka?
That sounds good. But how is the weather?
Ii desu ne. Demo (but, however) tenki wa dou deshou ka?
Probably good. ??? (check with H)
Tabun ii tenki deshou. Zutto (all the way, clear) ii tenki desu kara.
NATURE – Key words

Table of Contents

Nature
Desert
Mountain range
Sunshine
Wind
Upriver
Glacier
Lightning
Ocean
Atlantic ocean
Nature; natural
Earth; soil

Forest
Plant
Jungle
River
Lake
Mountain
Rainbow
Cloud
Snow

Shizen
Sabaku
Sabaku
Sanmyaku
Niikou
Kaze
Kawakami
Hyouga
Inazuma
Umi

Peninsula
Lake
Clouds
Downriver
Plains
Gulf
Thunderstorm
Pacific ocean
Waterfall

Tennnen
Tsuchi

Tennen
Tsuchi

North Pole
Antarctic / South Pole
Northern Hemisphere
Southern Hemisphere
A north wind
Facing north
Facing south
I’m looking for an apartment facing south.
Southwest
Southeast
North and south
South Pacific
Southern Cross

Global warming
Self-sufficiency
A full moon
ie: There is a full moon tonight.
A starry sky
Timber; wood
They import lots of timber.
(Made of) wood
Garden/potted plant
Don’t forget to water the plants!
Leaves of a tree

Land; property
ie: I’d like to buy some land in Tokyo some day.

North Pole
Antarctic / South Pole
Northern Hemisphere
Southern Hemisphere
A north wind
Facing north
Facing south
I’m looking for an apartment facing south.
Southwest
Southeast
North and south
South Pacific
Southern Cross

Global warming
Self-sufficiency
A full moon
ie: There is a full moon tonight.
A starry sky
Timber; wood
They import lots of timber.
(Made of) wood
Garden/potted plant
Don’t forget to water the plants!
Leaves of a tree

Land; property
ie: I’d like to buy some land in Tokyo some day.

Hokkyoku
Nankyoku
Kita-hankyuu
Minami-hankyuu
Kitakaze
Kitamuki
Minami muki
Minami muki no heya o sagashite imasu.
Nansei
Tounan
Nanboku
Minimi taiheiyou
Minimi juujisei
Ondanka no eikyou

Jikyuu jisoku
Mangetsu
Konya wa mangetsu desu.
Hoshizora
Mokuzai
Takusan no mokuzai o yunyuu o shite iru.
Mokuzai
Ueki
Ueki ni mizu o yaru no o wasurenai de!
Konoha

Tochi
Sono uchi, Tokyo ni rochi o kaitai.
### CLIMBING MOUNTAINS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mountain trail</th>
<th>Tozandou</th>
<th>Walking stick</th>
<th>Kongouzue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crest/summit</td>
<td>Sanchou</td>
<td>Crater</td>
<td>Ohachi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLANTS & TREES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flower petals</th>
<th>Hanabira</th>
<th>(Tree) trunk</th>
<th>Miki</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Eda</td>
<td>A lawn</td>
<td>Shibafu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### I wonder what the temperature is.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sparrow</th>
<th>Suzume</th>
<th>Ladybug</th>
<th>Tentoumushi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cicada</td>
<td>Semi</td>
<td>(Sea)shell</td>
<td>Kaigara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seagull</td>
<td>Kamome</td>
<td>Clouds</td>
<td>Kumo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crow (bird)</td>
<td>Karasu</td>
<td>Ginko (tree)</td>
<td>Ichou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colourful fall leaves</td>
<td>Kouyou</td>
<td>Maple</td>
<td>Momoji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dragonfly</td>
<td>Tombo</td>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td>Shuukaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Tanbo</td>
<td>Rice</td>
<td>Ine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AT THE BEACH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coast/beach</th>
<th>Kaigan</th>
<th>Stones</th>
<th>Ishi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rocks</td>
<td>Iwa ('ga takusan aru, ne?')</td>
<td>Shell, seashell</td>
<td>Kaigara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crabs</td>
<td>Kani</td>
<td>Seaweed</td>
<td>Kaisou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coral reef</td>
<td>Sangoshou</td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>Suna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wave</td>
<td>Nami (tsunami)</td>
<td>Sunburn</td>
<td>Hiyake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunblock</td>
<td>Hiyakedome</td>
<td>Kite</td>
<td>Tako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dive</td>
<td>Tobikomu, moguru</td>
<td>Float</td>
<td>Ukabu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiral shell, conch</td>
<td>Makigai</td>
<td>Shell mound, midden</td>
<td>Kaizuka</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SNOWY DAYS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Snowflakes</th>
<th>Yukinokeshou</th>
<th>Snowman</th>
<th>Yukidaruma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Snowball</td>
<td>Yukinotama</td>
<td>Icicles</td>
<td>Tsurara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarf</td>
<td>Mafura</td>
<td>Sleeping bag</td>
<td>Nebukuro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HARBOUR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sunrise</th>
<th>Hinode</th>
<th>Sunset</th>
<th>Higure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dock</td>
<td>Sanbashiki</td>
<td>Warehouse</td>
<td>Souko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANIMALS

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Doubutsu</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Doubutsu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baboon</td>
<td>Hihi</td>
<td>Gorilla</td>
<td>Gorira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bear</td>
<td>Kuma</td>
<td>Hippopotamus</td>
<td>Kaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bird</td>
<td>Tori</td>
<td>Horse</td>
<td>Uma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camel</td>
<td>Rakuda</td>
<td>Insect</td>
<td>Mushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat</td>
<td>Neko</td>
<td>Jellyfish</td>
<td>Kurage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken</td>
<td>Niwatori</td>
<td>Leopard</td>
<td>Hyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken/Rooster</td>
<td>Niwatori / ondori</td>
<td>Lion</td>
<td>Shishi (raion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chimpanzee</td>
<td>Chinpanjii</td>
<td>Monkey</td>
<td>Saru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cow</td>
<td>Ushi</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Nezumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crocodile</td>
<td>Wani</td>
<td>Opossum</td>
<td>Fukuronezumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deer</td>
<td>Shika</td>
<td>Parrot</td>
<td>Oumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dog</td>
<td>Inu</td>
<td>Peacock</td>
<td>Kuyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolphin</td>
<td>Iruka</td>
<td>Pig</td>
<td>Buta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duck</td>
<td>Ahiru</td>
<td>Rhinoceros</td>
<td>Sai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eagle</td>
<td>Washi</td>
<td>Shark</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elephant</td>
<td>Zou</td>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>Hitsuji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish</td>
<td>Sakana</td>
<td>Skunk</td>
<td>Itachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fox</td>
<td>Kitsune</td>
<td>Snake</td>
<td>Hebi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giraffe</td>
<td>Kirin</td>
<td>Sparrow</td>
<td>Suzume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goat</td>
<td>Koushakuno</td>
<td>Squirrel</td>
<td>Risu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldfish</td>
<td>Kingyou</td>
<td>Tiger</td>
<td>Tora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goose/geese</td>
<td>Gachou</td>
<td>Whale</td>
<td>Kujira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zebra</td>
<td>Shimauma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTS OF ANIMALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feathers</th>
<th>Hane</th>
<th>Tail</th>
<th>Shipo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trunk (elephant)</td>
<td>Hana (nose)</td>
<td>Scales</td>
<td>Uroko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fur</td>
<td>Kegawa</td>
<td>Jaws</td>
<td>Ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spots</td>
<td>Hanten</td>
<td>Stripes</td>
<td>Shima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>Tsuno</td>
<td>Beak</td>
<td>Kuchibashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fangs</td>
<td>Kiba</td>
<td>Claws</td>
<td>Kagitsume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wings</td>
<td>Tsubasu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I visited a Shinto shrine. I went to the Shrine of the Gods (Jinja) to offer prayer.
**TELLING THE TIME**

**Table of Contents**

What time is it? (ima) Nanji desu ka?
To answer this question, replace ‘nan’ with a number, eg: go-ji desu (5 o’clock).
Long time. Chou jikan.
For 4 o’clock you say ‘yoji’ (not yon or shi)
Use ‘shichi’ not ‘nana’
For 9 o’clock use ‘ku’ (not ‘kyuu’)

It’s a quarter to ten. Ju-ji jugofun mae desu. (= 15 minutes before 10)
Now Ima
Before long Mou sugu
Soon, immediately Sugu
At any moment Imanimo (for describing a situation that is just about to change)
Occasionally/once in a while Tamani
O’clock
about (used when telling the time) ji
Just right, exactly Choodo
O'clock about used when telling the time
Just right, exactly Choodo

It took me exactly 3 weeks to write this paper.

Early, soon, at once Hayaku (はやく) / Hayai
Late Osoku (おそく)

Time, hour Toki
Public holiday Saijitsu
Weekday Heijitsu

Saying half-past is straightforward – just add han (half past) after ji

Examples:
The Japanese exam is 3 hours long, you know. Nihongo no shiken wa san-jikan desu yo.
How long does it take to go to school by bus? Koko kara gakkou made basu de dono gurai kakarimasu ka?

**MINUTES = pun = fun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minute (ji)</th>
<th>Fun (pun)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ippun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ni-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>San-pun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Yon-pun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Go-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Roppun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Shichi-fun (or nana-fun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hachi-fun (or happun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Kyuu-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Juppun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>juu-ippun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>juu-ni-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>juu-san-pun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>juu-yon-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>juu-go-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>juu-roppun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>juu-shichi-fun (or juu-nana-fun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>juu-hachi-fun (or juu-happun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>juu-kyuu-fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>ni juppun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Sanju pun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>yonju pun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>goju pun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-pun

It takes Kakarimasu Jikan
10 minutes Pun, fun Jikan
About Jikan
Travel Gurai
How many minutes? Gofun
At what time Nanji-ni
On what day Nanyoubi-ni

Morning: Asa → Breakfast Asagohan
Midday: Hiru → Lunch Hirugohan
Afternoon: Gogo

Evening: Yuugata Afternoon Gogo
Noon: Shougo Morning and evening Asayuu あさゆう
Day: Hiru / hiruma Night Yoru
Last night usually means Yuube

Evening/night Ban¥ Yoru ¥ Yuube (Yuugata) →
Dinner Yorugohan/ Bangohan
Late Afternoon Yuugata
Monday evening Getsuyobi no yoru

Weekend
How many hours (time) difference is there between Auckland to Tokyo no jisa wa nanjikan desu ka?
Auckland and Tokyo?

Every morning Maiasa Morning before last Ototoi no asa
Every night Maiban Morning after next Asatte no asa
Every day / Daily Mainichi Night before last Ototoi no ban
Every week / Weekly Maishuu Night after next Asatte no ban
Every month / Monthly Maitsuki
Maitsuki
Every year / Yearly Maitoshi, mainen

In one week Ishuukan de Week before last Ni-shuukan mae
In two weeks Nishuukan de Week after next Saraishuu

By Tuesday Kayoubi made ni
By Friday Kinyoubi made ni

Five days ago Itsuka mae
Immediately before Chokuzen

Yesterday Kinou
Today Kyou
Tomorrow Ashita
Day after tomorrow Asatte Day before yesterday Ototoi
This month Kongetsu This morning Kesa
Next month Raigetsu Afternoon Gogo
Last month Sengetsu Noon Shoogo

This evening Konban Last night Kono no ban
Month before last Nikagetsu mae
Month after next Saraigetsu

Last year Kyonen Year before last Ototoshi
This year
Kotoshi

Next year
Rainen

Year
tsuki, gekkan

Decade
ichijun

Century
seiki

Once a week
Shu ni i-kai

ie: Once a week I play golf
Shu ni i-kai gorufu o shimasu.

Twice a week
Shu ni ni-kai

ie: Twice a week I go to Tokyo.
Shu ni ni-kai Tokyo ni ikimasu.

Once a month
tsuki ni i-kai

3 times a month
tsuki ni san-kai

x - years ago
[x]-nen mae  
(mae – past/before/ago)

5 years ago
Go-nen mae

2 years ago
Ni-nen mae

I came to Japan 2 years ago.
Ni-nen mae ni Nihon e kimashita.

How many hours do you study Japanese every night?
Maiban nan-jikan Nihongo o benkyou-shimasu ka?

This coming [Sunday]
Kondo no [Nichiyoubi]

This coming weekend.
Kondo no shuumatsu.

QUESTIONS

Year
Nen
Nannen desu ka? - How many years?

Month
Kagetsu
Nankagetsu desu ka? - How many months?

Week
Shu
Nanshuukan desu ka? - How many weeks?

Day
Nichi
Nannichi desu ka? - How many days?

Hour
Jikan
Nanjikan desu ka? - How many hours?

Minute
Pun, fun
Nanpun desu ka? - How many minutes?

What day of the month is today?
Kyou wa nan nichi desu ka?

Did you go to [PLACE] yesterday?
Kinion [PLACE] e ikimashita ka?

Did you go to Harajuku yesterday?
Kinion Harajuku e ikimashita ka?

Yes, I did.
Hai, ikimashita.

What time did you go?
Nanji ni ikimashita ka?

Where did you go yesterday?
I went to Shinjuku-gyoen.
Kinion doko e ikimashita ka?

Q: What time did you go?
A: I went at 2pm.

Q: What time did you return?
A: I returned at 8pm.

From and to/until
Kara means ‘from’       Made means ‘until / to’

NOTE: Kara and made are placed after the time.

Eg:
The Japanese class is from 2 o’clock until 5 o’clock.
Nihongo no kurasu wa niji kara goji made desu.

Jon's Japanese V2012.doc
The department store opens at 9 & closes at 6.  
2 hours (= jikan) 
5 hours.  

Depaarto wa kuji kara rokuji made desu.  
Ni jikan  
Go jikan

**Last and next**  
**Kono mae no** means ‘Last’  
**Kondo no** means ‘Next’

Eg:  
Last Sunday  
Next Sunday

**AM / PM**

These are spoken before the time, ie:
It’s now 8am.
My work finishes at 5.30pm.
6 pm  
4.30 am  
7.30am

**Opening and closing times**

What times does [PLACE NAME] open & close?  
What times does supermarket open & close?  
What times does bank open & close?  
We close on Wednesdays.  
Bank, 9-3pm  
School, 9-6pm  
Office, 9.30-8pm  
Park, 10-4.30pm  
Department store, 8-6pm

Closing a shop; shutting up shop  
The store closes at 7pm.  
The main store.  
What time is this store open until?

[PLACE NAME] nanji kara nanji made desu ka?  
Supaa nanji kara nanji made desu ka?  
Ginko nanji kara nanji made desu ka?  
Teikyuubi wa Suiyoubi de gozaimasu.  
Ginko wa ku-ji kara san-ji made desu.  
Gakkou wa ku-ji kara hachi-ji made desu.  
Depaato wa hachi-ji kara roku-ji made desu.  
Heiten  
Heiten wa shichiji desu.  
Honten  
Kono mise wa nanji made aite imasu ka?

**Expressing relative time…**

**A long time ago**  
Mukashi

This time last year  
Kyonen no ima goro

The other day  
Kono aida, kono mae, senjitsu

A little while ago  
Sakki, chotto mae ni, sakihodo

After a long while  
Hisashiburi ni

Now  
Ima, genzai

Still/Not yet  
Mada

Later  
Atode

No longer  
Mou, mohaya

As [ ] as possible  
Narabeku (ie: narabeku hayaku = as soon as possible.

First of all  
Mazu

The recent; next time; sometime  
About now; nowadays

Kondo  
Imagoro
Expressing frequency….

Always  Itsumo, tsune ni  
Often  Yoku, tabitabi  
Every other day  Ichinichi oki ni  
Three times a month  Tsuki ni san do  
Again  Mata, futatabi  
For the first time  Hajimete  
Seldom  Mettani  
Last  Kono mae no (suiyoubi)  
Month  Tsuki (dono tsuki = which month)

Usually  Futsuu, Fudan, Taitei  
Many times  Nandomo  
Sometimes  Tokidoki  
Once in a while  Tamani  
Once more  Mou ichido  
Suddenly  Kyuu-ni, totsuen  
Never  Zenzen, ichidomo, kesshite  
Next  Kondo no (suiyoubi)  
A little while/Quite a while  Shibaraku

DAYS OF THE WEEK

INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-youbi  What day?

Daily: every day  Nichijou  
All day (long)  Ichinichi-juu  
During the morning  Gozenchuu  
Noon  Shougou  
This evening; tonight  Konya  
The weekend; Saturday(s) and Sunday(s)  Donichi

I have an examination next Monday.  
There is no Japanese class on Tuesday or Thursday.  

DATES OF THE MONTH - nichi

INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-nichi  What day?

There are seven days in a week.

Tips to remember these
Dates 2 -> 10 all end in ‘ka’
3 & 6 are very similar.
4 & 8 are very similar.

**DAYS – nichi (kan)**

(for) 1 day  ichi-nichi
(for) 2 days  futsuka (kan)
(for) 3 days  mikka (kan)
(for) 4 days  yokka (kan)
(for) 5 days  itsuka (kan)
(for) 6 days  muika (kan)
(for) 7 days  nanoka (kan)
(for) 8 days  youka (kan)
(for) 9 days  kokonoka (kan)
(for) 10 days  tooka (kan)
(for) 11 days  juuichi-nichi (kan)
(for) 12 days  juuni-nichi (kan)

**MONTHS – kagetsu (kan)**

(for) 1 month  ikkagetsu (kan)
(for) 2 months  ni-kagetsu (kan)
(for) 3 months  san-kagetsu (kan)
(for) 4 months  yon-kagetsu (kan)
(for) 5 months  go-kagetsu (kan)
(for) 6 months  rokkagetsu (kan)
(for) 7 months  nana-kagetsu (kan)
(for) 8 months  hakkagetsu (kan)
(for) 9 months  kyuukagetsu (kan)
(for) 10 months  jukkagetsu (kan)
(for) 11 months  juuikkagetsu (kan)
(for) 12 months  juuni-kagetsu (kan)

**YEARS – nen (kan)**

(for) 1 year  ichi-nen (kan)
(for) 2 years  ni-nen (kan)
(for) 3 years  san-nen (kan)
(for) 4 years  yo-nen (kan)
(for) 5 years  go-nen (kan)
(for) 6 years  roku-nen (kan)
(for) 7 years  nana (or shichi) nen (kan)
(for) 8 years  hachi-nen (kan)
(for) 9 years  kyuu-nen (kan)
(for) 10 years  juu-nen (kan)
(for) 11 years  juuichi-nen (kan)
(for) 12 years  juuni-nen (kan)

**MONTHS OF THE YEAR:** [Month Number]-gatsu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>Ichi-gatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>Ni-gatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>San-gatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>Shi-gatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>Go-gatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>Roku-gatsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-gatsu? What month?

Kagetsu = month
- 9 months kyuu kagetsu
- 2 months ni kagetsu
- 6 months roku kagetsu
- 2-3 months ago Ni san kagetsu mae

To say dates, STRUCTURE: Year → Month → Day, where nen = year and nichi = day.
Eg: 2 November 1979 sen kyuuhyaku nana-ju kyu nen ju-ichigatsu futsuka = (1979, November, 2)

February 14th 2002.
My birthday is April 9th
School starts on September 3rd.

When you say a date in Japanese, always put the month before the day.

Dates 10 -> 20 are: じゅう。。。。。。
February 1st Ni-gatsu tsuitachi
March 10th San-gatsu too ka.
September 9th Ku-gatsu kokonoka.
October 15th Ju-gatsu juuigonichi.
July 8th Shichi-gatsu youka.
December 5th Juni-gatsu itsuka.
March 3th San-gatsu mikka.
Feb 12th Ni-gatsu juuininichi.
November 23rd Ju-ichi-gatsu nijuuisannichi.

Week = shuu
3 weeks = san shuu

INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-shuukan How many weeks?

I want to travel for about 2 weeks.
It took me exactly 3 weeks to write this paper.

YEARS = nen
2000 = Nisen nen
2 years = Ni nen

INTERROGATIVE WORD: nan-nen

I was born in Auckland in April 1980.

How many years have you lived in Japan?
For 3 years. I was in Japan from 1995 to 1998.  

I played golf with Mr Tanaka five days ago.  
The summer vacation of Uni is about 3 months.  
*Itsuka mae ni Tanaka-san to issho ni gorufu o shimashita.*  
Daigaku no natsu yasumi wa *san-kagetsu* gurai desu.

---

**JAPANESE PUBLIC HOLIDAYS**

*Table of Contents*

Public holiday  
Saijitsu

**January**

1st - New Year's *(o-shogatsu)*  
2nd Monday - Coming of Age day *(siejin no hi)* - for 20 year olds

**February**

11th - National Foundation Day *(kenkoku kenenbi)* - celebrates first crowning of the first emperor.  
14th - Valentine's Day - but women give chocolate to men.

**March**

3rd - Doll's Festival *(hina matsuri)* - day to celebrate daughters.  
14th - White Day - *the Valentine's day* where men give chocolate to women.  
21st - Spring Equinox *(shunbun no hi)* - *Memorial day.*

**April**

29th - Showa Day *(showa no hi)* - birthday of former Emperor Showa.

**May**

3rd - Constitution Day *(kenpo kinenbi)*  
4th - Greenery Day *(midori no hi)* - celebrates love for plants and nature.  
5th - Children's Day *(kodomo no hi)*

**July**

3rd Monday - Ocean Day *(umi no hi)* - new holiday celebrating the ocean.

**September**

3rd Monday - Respect for the Aged Day *(keiro no hi)*  
23rd - Autumn Equinox *(shubun no hi)* - another Memorial day.

**October**

2nd Monday - Health and Sports Day *(taiiku no hi)*

**November**

3rd - Culture Day *(bunka no hi)* - celebrate culture, freedom, peace.  
15th - Shichigosan *(Seven-Five-Three)* - festival for children  
23rd - Labour Thanksgiving Day *(kinro kansha no hi).*

**December**

23rd - Emperor's Birthday *(tenno no tanjobi)*  
25th - Christmas *(not a national holiday, but it is celebrated)*  
31st - New Year's Eve *(omisoka)*
OCCUPATIONS

Table of Contents

Work
Work
What is your occupation?
Which company do you work for?
I work for a publishing company.
Actor
Hataraku (verb)
Shigoto (noun)
O-shigoto wa nan desu ka?
Dochira no kaisha desu ka?
Shuppan no kaisha de hataraite imasu.

Actor
Haiyuu/ Danyuu ❄️
check with H
Advertising
Kookoku
Author
Sakka
Bank Clerk
Ginkouin
Company
Kaisha-in
worker/employee
Cook
Chourishi
Dentist
Haisha
Doctor (/physician)
Isha
Doctor
Ishi
(/medical/physician)

Driver
Untenshu
Engineer
Enjinia
Finance
Kin’yuu
High school student
Koukousei
Housewife
Shufu
Information Technology
Ai tii kankee
Journalist
Jaaristo

Non-working/unemployed
Mushoku

I attend a private junior high school.
Senior high school
Prep school
I attended a prep school for one year.

Junior high student
Chuugakusei

Junior high student
Musician
Ongakuka
Nurse
Kangofu
Photographer
Shashinka / kamaraman
Politician
Seijika

Junior high student
Publishing
Shuuupan
Salesman
Seerusu-man
Secretary
Hisho

Junior high student
Singer
Kashu
Station Clerk
Ekiin
Student
Gakusei
Teacher, professor
Sensei
Technical college
Senmon gakkou
University student
Daigakusei
Writer
Raitaa
University worker
Daigaku shokuin
Retired
Taisholusha

Shiritsu no chuugakkou ni kayotte iru.
Koutou gakkou
Yobikou
Ichinenkan yobikou ni kayotta.
### INTERESTS and HOBBIES

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hobby</th>
<th>Shumi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTERESTS</strong></td>
<td><strong>HOBBIES</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hobby</strong></td>
<td><strong>What are your hobbies?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shumi</strong></td>
<td><strong>Shumi wa nan desu ka?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animated film</td>
<td>Anime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseball</td>
<td>Yakyuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basketball</td>
<td>Basukettobooru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowling</td>
<td>Booringu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camping</td>
<td>Kyanpu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical music</td>
<td>Kurashiku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concert</td>
<td>Konsaato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooking</td>
<td>Ryoori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling</td>
<td>Saikuringu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dancing</td>
<td>Dansu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentary</td>
<td>Dokyumentarid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>Doraibu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eating out</td>
<td>Tabe aruki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishing</td>
<td>Sakana-tsuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flower Arranging</td>
<td>Ikebana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Football</td>
<td>Sakka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game</td>
<td>Shiai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardening</td>
<td>Engei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golf</td>
<td>Gorufu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz</td>
<td>Jazu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soccer Game</td>
<td>Soccer no shiai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What do you do in your free time?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Shumi wa nan desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like watching tennis.</td>
<td>Anata no shumi wan an desu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening to music.</td>
<td>Watashi wa ongaku kanshou no ga suki desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watching movies</td>
<td>Eiga kanshou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td>Dokusho</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Eg:** (His/her) hobby is dancing

- My hobby is photography
- My hobby is **not** gardening

**To say:** **My hobbies are x, y and z,** you say: *(Watashi no) shumi wa x to y to z desu.*

We don't usually say watashi no when it is apparent that you are talking about yourself.

**Writing = Bunshoo o kaku koto**

**Traveling = Ryokou o suru koto**

Kaku is the verb for Write, suru is the verb for Do.

So, to say: **My hobbies are writing, travelling and photography,** you say:

*(Watashi no) shumi wa bunshoo o kaku koto to, ryokou o suru koto to, shashin o toru koto desu.*

You can say, *Watashi no shumi wa ryokoo desu.* Instead of *Watashi no shumi wa ryokoo o suru koto desu,*

---

**Writing = Bunshoo o kaku koto**

**Traveling = Ryokou o suru koto**

Kaku is the verb for Write, suru is the verb for Do.

So, to say: **My hobbies are writing, travelling and photography,** you say:

*(Watashi no) shumi wa bunshoo o kaku koto to, ryokou o suru koto to, shashin o toru koto desu.*

You can say, *Watashi no shumi wa ryokoo desu.* Instead of *Watashi no shumi wa ryokoo o suru koto desu,*
### MUSIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blow</th>
<th>Fuku</th>
<th>Clap</th>
<th>(te o) tataku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing</td>
<td>Utan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CONSTRUCTION materials & jobs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cement truck</th>
<th>Konkuriito mikusa</th>
<th>Crane</th>
<th>Kuren</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulldozer</td>
<td>Burudoozaa</td>
<td>Forklift</td>
<td>Fookulifuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpenter</td>
<td>Daikusan</td>
<td>Plumber</td>
<td>Haikankou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrician</td>
<td>Denkikou</td>
<td>Pipe</td>
<td>Paipu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire</td>
<td>Densen</td>
<td>Railroad</td>
<td>Tetsudou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highway</td>
<td>Kousokudouro</td>
<td>Smokestack</td>
<td>Entotsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garbage truck</td>
<td>Seisousha</td>
<td>Skyscrapers</td>
<td>Kousoubiru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gardening words and phrases

**Table of Contents**

**Gardening tool names + vocab**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seeds</th>
<th>Tane</th>
<th>種</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soil</td>
<td>Tsuchi</td>
<td>土</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seedling soil</td>
<td>Tane maki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>ね</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bud</td>
<td>Tsubomi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprout</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>め</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seedling (what I usually buy)</td>
<td>Nae</td>
<td>苗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Kuki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot</td>
<td>Hachi</td>
<td>鉢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compost</td>
<td>Komposto / Taihi</td>
<td>堆肥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fertiliser</td>
<td>Hiryou</td>
<td>肥料</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermiculite</td>
<td>Baamikyuraito</td>
<td>バーミキュライト</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wave-like mounds for planting</td>
<td>Une</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotten leaves (used for soil prep.)</td>
<td>Fuyoudo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood chips</td>
<td>Baaku chiipu</td>
<td>バークチップ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot bottom net</td>
<td>Mizu o kakemasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pour water on</td>
<td>Mizu o irimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed sowing period</td>
<td>Maki doki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvesting period</td>
<td>Shuukaku jiki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When (is best time) to plant these seeds</td>
<td>Tane o maku no wa itsu ga ii desu ka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bud/sprout sowing time</td>
<td>Ue doki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature that buds come out</td>
<td>Hatsuga ondo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When to plant these buds/sprouts</td>
<td>Nae (&lt;-- little plant/seedling) o ueru no wa itsu ga ii desu ka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Put fertilizer on soil before</td>
<td>Motohi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lime (calcium carbonate)</td>
<td>Sekkai</td>
<td>石灰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grass</td>
<td>Kusa</td>
<td>草</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Haru</td>
<td>春</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer</td>
<td>Natsu</td>
<td>秋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autumn</td>
<td>Aki</td>
<td>夏</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter</td>
<td>Fuyu</td>
<td>冬</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable</td>
<td>Yasai</td>
<td>野菜</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

want to grow’ – [Name] を そだてたい? (sodatetai)

### TOOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spade</th>
<th>Shaberu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hoe</td>
<td>Kuwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trowel</td>
<td>Sukopu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitchfork</td>
<td>Suki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rake</td>
<td>Kumade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hand fork <-- get name! 
| Hand fork | Kumode? |
| Bucket    | Baketto |
| Hose      | Hoosu   |
| Hanging basket | Hangingu potto |
| Watering container | Jouro |
| Insect net | Bouchuu |

### IN THE GARDEN

Would you like some help? Tetsudai mashouka? / Tasuke ga hitsuyou desu ka?

Dig up Hori okusu

Dug up Hori okushita

Dig up ground (surface) Jimin o hori okosu

What are you growing? Nani o sodatete imasu ka?

What are you planting? Nani o ueite imasu ka?

How many did you plant? Nae o ikutsu uemashita?

When will these flowers bloom? <-- ask H.

Do these grow best in the sun or shade? Kono shokubutsu wa hiatari ga ii tokoro (- sunny place) ni ueta (- plant) hou ga ii desu ka?

Which plants grow in the sun? Hiatari de sodatsu (grow) shokubutsu wa dore desu ka? / ga hoshii desu.

Which plants grow in the shade? Hikage de sodatsu (grow) shokubutsu wa dore desu ka? / ga hoshii desu.

I picked this lettuce this morning.

Kono lettuce wa kyou no asa torimashita.

What seeds are you sowing? Nan no tane o maite imasu ka?

How long does this flower last? Hana no saku no wa itsu kara itsu made desu ka? / Hana no jiki (- time+term) wa itsu desu ka?

Chemical Kagakutekina

Chemical fertilizers Kase hiryou
### INSECTS / BUGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ant</th>
<th>Ari</th>
<th>Spider</th>
<th>Kumo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spider's web</td>
<td>Kemonosu</td>
<td>Caterpillar</td>
<td>Kemushi/Imomushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butterfly</td>
<td>Chou</td>
<td>Bee</td>
<td>Hachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firefly</td>
<td>Houtaru</td>
<td>Mosquito</td>
<td>Ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bug spray</td>
<td>Mushiyake supuree</td>
<td>Magnifying glass</td>
<td>Mushimegane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ON THE FARM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Farmer</th>
<th>Noufu</th>
<th>Barn</th>
<th>Kachikugoya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cow</td>
<td>Meushi</td>
<td>Hill</td>
<td>Oka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hen</td>
<td>Mendori</td>
<td>Pick (crops)</td>
<td>Tsumitoru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corn</td>
<td>Tumorokoshi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GARDEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leaf</th>
<th>Ha</th>
<th>Leaves</th>
<th>Konoha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pile (of leaves, etc.)</td>
<td>Tsumikasane, yama</td>
<td>Bamboo</td>
<td>Take</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COUNTING PEOPLE and OBJECTS

**Table of Contents**

- How many people are there? Nan-nin desu ka?
- There are four people Yo-nin desu
- One person/alone Hitori
- Two people Futari
- Three people San-nin
- Four people Yo-nin (shortened from yon (=4))

### NUMBERS = bangou:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Ichi</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>Shichi (Nana)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>San</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Shi (yon)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Go</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Ju-ichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Rokku</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Ju-ni….</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What number?** Nan ban?

**The multiples of 100 -**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100</th>
<th>Hyaku</th>
<th>600</th>
<th>Rop-Pyaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Ni-Hyaku</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>Nana-Hyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Sam-Byaku</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>Hap-Pyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Yon-hyaku</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>Kyuu-hyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Go-hyaku</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Sen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2000</th>
<th>Ni-sen</th>
<th>6000</th>
<th>Roku-sen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10,000 Ichiman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add 1 billion (ichi-oku?)

INTERROGATIVE WORDS: nan-juu, nan-byaku, nan-zen, nan-man

NUMBERS (mainly big ones)

Ten thousand Man
Hundred thousand Juu-man
Million Hyaku-man
Hundred million Oku
0.1 one-tenth Rei ten ichi
One fourth Yombun no ichi
0.5, 1/2 or half Rei ten go, nibun no ichi or hanbun
Six times Roku-bai
Divided into 7 equal parts Nanatoubun
Divided into 3 equal parts Santoubun

ORDINAL NUMBERS

First Ichibanme Sixth Rokubanme
Second Nibanme Seventh Nanabanme
Third Sanbanme Eighth Hachibanme
Fourth Yonbanme Ninth Kyuubanme
Fifth Gobanme Tenth Juubanme

Last, Final Sango Left Saigo? Check

There are 2 different ways of counting from 1 to 10:

SYSTEM A:
When you talk about numbers of items you need to attach a special word – called a Counter – after the number.

These (below) are two of the many counters used.
Mai is a counter for flat objects – stamps, tickets, paper, cards, etc
1 Ichi-mai 6 Roku-mai
2 Ni-mai 7 Nana/shichi-mai
3 San-mai 8 Hachi-mai
4 Yon-mai 9 Kyuu-mai
5 Go-mai 10 Juu-mai

Hon (pon, bon) is a counter for long or cylindrical objects – bottles, pens, etc
1 Ippon 6 Roppon
2 Nihon 7 Nana/shichi hon
3 Sanbon 8 Happon
4 Yonhon 9 Kyuuhon
5 Gohon 10 Juupon
SYSTEM B:
The second set of numbers 1 to 10 is used for the many items which don’t have a special counter.
You could use this system for counting any object, in which case you don’t need to add a special counter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hitotsu</th>
<th>ひとつ</th>
<th></th>
<th>Muttsu</th>
<th>ひとつ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Hitotsu</td>
<td>ひとつ</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Muttsu</td>
<td>ひとつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Futatsu</td>
<td>ふたつ</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Nanatsu</td>
<td>ななつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mittsu</td>
<td>みーつ</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Yattsu</td>
<td>やーつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Yottsu</td>
<td>よーつ</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Kokonotsu</td>
<td>ここのつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Itsutsu</td>
<td>いつつ</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Too (too00)</td>
<td>とお</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question word: Ikutsu

Tips to remember these:
1 – 9 end in tsu
Counting 1 person (hitori) and 2 people (futari) are similar to hitotsu and futatsu above, except that tsu is substituted for ri at the end.
The word for 4 (yottsu) begins with yo (similar to yon) and 7 (nanatsu) is nana plus tsu.
INSERT COUNTERS PAGE
Get from pile of masters from previous version!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animals (large)</td>
<td>頭 ~Tô</td>
<td>ittô, nitô, santô, yontô, gotô,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>..........(small/medium)</td>
<td>匹 ~Hiki</td>
<td>ippiki, nihiki, sambiki, yonhiki, gohiki, roppiki, nanahiki, happiki, kyûhiki, juppiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>..........(birds &amp; rabbits)</td>
<td>羽 ~Wa</td>
<td>ichiwa, niwa, samba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books &amp; bound objects</td>
<td>冊 ~Satsu</td>
<td>issatsu, nisatsu, sansatsu, yonsatsu, gosatsu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copies</td>
<td>部 ~Bu</td>
<td>ichibu, nibu, sambu, yombu, gobu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupfuls/glassfuls</td>
<td>杯 ~Hai</td>
<td>ippai, nihai, sambai, yonhai, gohai, roppai, nanahai, happai, kyûhai, juppai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floors of houses or buildings</td>
<td>階 ~Kai</td>
<td>ikkai, nikai, sangai, yonkai, gokai, rokkai, nanakai, hachikai, kyûkai, jukkai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups</td>
<td>班 ~Han</td>
<td>ippan, nihan, sanpan, yonhan, gohan, roppan, nanahan, happan, kyûhan, juppan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long objects (cylindrical)</td>
<td>本 ~Hon</td>
<td>ippon, nihon, sambon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>人 ~Nin</td>
<td>hitori, futari, sannin, yonin, gonin, rokunin, shichinin, hachinin, kyûnin (kunin), jûnin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoes, socks</td>
<td>足 ~Soku</td>
<td>issoku, nisoku, sanzoku,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small things</td>
<td>個 ~Ko</td>
<td>ikko, niko, sanko, yonko, goko, rokko, nanako, hakko, kyuuko, jukko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoonful</td>
<td>匙 ~Saji</td>
<td>hitosaji, futasaji, misaji, yosaji,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time (seconds)</td>
<td>秒</td>
<td>ichibyô, nibyô, sambyô,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples: **SENTENCE STRUCTURE:** OBJECT $\rightarrow$ HOW MANY + COUNTER $\rightarrow$ PLEASE

- **Mai** – Used to count: flat objects, like paper & CDs  
  I bought 2 floppy disks. 
  Please give me 4 sheets of paper. 
  May I have 5 stamps please? 
  Two x 1000 yen tickets 
  There are 2 pens and 5 sheets of paper here. 
  How many postcards do you have?  
  Furoppii disuku o ni-mai kaimashita.  
  Sono kami o yon-mai kudasai.  
  Kitte o go-mai kudasai  
  Sen-en o kippu o ni-mai kudasai  
  Koko ni pen ga ni-hon to kami ga go-mai arimasu.  
  Hagaki o nan-mai motte imasu ka?

- **Hon (Pon/Bon)** – Used to count: long, cylindrical objects such as pencils, bottles, trees  
  I drank 3 bottles of beer yesterday. 
  I need 2 pencils. 
  May I have a (bottle of) beer please? 
  Six pens please  
  Kinou biiru o san-bon nomimashita.  
  Empitsu ga ni-hon irimasu.  
  Biiru o ip-pon kudasai  
  Pen o rop-pon kudasai.

- **Hai (Pai/Bai)** – Used to count: Cups, glasses & bowls of drinks or food  
  Please bring 2 glasses of water. 
  I drink about 3 cups of coffee every day. 
  How many cups of sake can you drink? 
  Please give me another bowl of rice. 
  I drank 2 cups of coffee.  
  Mizu o ni-hai motte kite kudasai.  
  Mainichi kohii o san-bai gurai nomimasu.  
  Sake wa nan-bai gurai nomemasu ka?  
  Gohan o mou ip-pai kudasai.  
  Kohii o ni-hai nomimashita.

- **Nin** – Used to count: human beings  
  3 of my friends came to my house. 
  Q: How many brothers and sisters have you got? 
  A: I have 2 older sisters. 
  I have 3 brothers.  
  Tomodachi ga san-nin uchi ni kimashita.  
  Kyoudai wa nan-nin imasu ka?  
  Watashi wa ane ga futari imasu.  
  Kyoudai ga 3-nin imasu.

- **Satsu** – Used to count: bound books, magazines, etc  
  About how many books do you read in a week? 
  I read 3 books last week. 
  I want 1 Japanese dictionary.  
  Isshuukan ni hon o nan-satsu gurai yomimasu ka?  
  Senshuu hon o san-satsu yomimashita.  
  Nihongo no jisho ga iisatsu hoshii desu.

- **Hiki (Piki/Biki)** – Used to count: animals (not birds)  
  There are 2 cats and 1 dog in my house.  
  Uchi ni wa neko ga ni-hiki to inu ga iipiki imasu.

- **Tsu** – Used to count: many objects that do not belong to the above categories.
INTERROGATIVE WORD: ikutsu

I have a question.
Q: How many kanji did you study today?
A: I studied 4 kanji.
May I have two coffees please?
May I have a (glass of) beer please?
I ate one apple.

- Miscellaneous
Two cars are parked in front of the house.
It takes 20 minutes to the station by taxi.

WEIGHTS & MEASUREMENTS

Table of Contents

Feet
Gram
Kilometre
Metre
Litre

Gallon
Inch
Mile
Pound
Yard

Garon
Inchi
Mairu
Pondo
Yaado

SHAPES

Table of Contents

Circle
Triangle
Oval, ellipse
Heart
Hexagonal

Square
Rectangle
Diamond
Star

Maru
Sankaku
Daenkei / Tamagogata
Haato (gata)
Rokkakukei

Shikaku (shi = 4)/ Seihoukei
Nagashikaku
Hishigata
Hoshi (gata)

EATING

Table of Contents

In Japan, you start eating after saying Itadakimasu (I will receive) and finish with Gochiso sama deshita (Thank you for the feast).

I'm hungry.
Are you hungry?
Do you want to eat?
I like it (very much)!
It is delicious!
It was delicious!
Delicious, isn’t it?
That was delicious, thank you.
I had a delicious dinner!
I’d like some fruit for dessert.
I’m fine, I’ve had enough thank you.
Q: What is that food?

Onaka ga suite imasu.
Onaka suita? (or: Anata wa onaka ga suite imasu ka?)
Anata wa tabetai desu ka?
(Totemo) suki desu!
Oishii desu.
Oishii katta desu!
Oishii desu ne?
Gochisosama deshita.
Watashi no bangohan wa oishi katta desu!
Dezaato ni kudamono o kudasai.
Mou kekko desu.
Nani o tabemasu ka?
A: [Food] o tabemasu.
Q: What is that drink?
A: [Drink] o nomimasu.

I really enjoyed myself.
Thank you very much for your hospitality.
Q: What will you eat for lunch?
A: I will have pizza, rice and toast for lunch.
Was your dinner delicious?
What did you have for dinner?
What did you have for lunch?
Ramen noodles and gyoza.
I had pasta, salad and tuna.

..and so forth.

Use to if you have to state everything you ate.
If you had a lot of food, and don’t want to or can’t state all the food you had, use ya between the different food items.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE: Food1 ya Food2 ya Food3…nado o VERB
Eg: Watashi wa pasta ya sarada ya tuna ya gohan nado tabemashita.
(You had pasta, salad, tuna and even though you don't mention about them, you can tell there were some more foods.)

FOOD

Food | Tabemono | A drink | Nomimono
---|---|---|---
Alfalfa | Aru farufa | Lettuce | Retasu
Apple | Ringo | Loaf of Bread | Shoku-pan
Avocado | Abokado | Meat | Niku
Banana | Banana | Mikan | Mikan
Beef | Gyuu niku | Milk | Miruku/Gyuunyuu
Black tea | Kocha | Onion | Tamanegi
Bread | Pan | Peach | Momo
Butter | Bataa | Pear | Nashi
Cabbage | Kyabetsu | Peas, beans | Mame
Carrot | Ninjin | Pizza | Piza
Cheese | Chiizu | Pork | Buta niku
Chicken | Tori niku | Potato | Jagaimo
Cod | Tara | Rice | Gohan
Crab | Kani | Salad | Sarada
Cucumber | Kyuuri | Salmon | Sake
Curry on rice | Karee raisu | Salt | Shio
Dessert | Dezaato | Sardine | Iwashi
Eggs | Tamago | Sausage | Souseiji
Fruits | Kudamono | Strawberry | Ichigo
Grape | Budoo | Sugar | Sato
Green tea | Ocha | Toast | Tosuto
Ham | Hamu | Tuna | Maguro
Health food | Kenkoo shokuhin | | |
Is that organic?
Do you have any organic food?

Sore wa organiku (or: munouyaku) desu ka?
Organiku shoku hin wa arimasu ka?

FOOD DESCRIPTIONS

Table of Contents

Best / fantastic!  Saikoo
Not bad  Naka-naka
Sweet  Amai
Bitter  Nigai
Sour  Suppai
Weak, thin  Usui
Ryouri  Cooking/dish
Meal  Shokuji
Taste  Aji
Colour  Iro
Design  Dezain

Tasty / Delicious  Oishii / Umai
Different  Mezurashii
Hot, spicy  Karai
Salty  Shiokarai
Strong, thick  Koi
Ryouri nin  Cook
Smell  Nioi
Shape  Katachi

COOKING

Table of Contents

SEASONING & COOKING
Sweet  Amai  Spicy  Karai
Sour  Suppai  Salty  Shiokarai
Bitter  Nigai

COOKING
Stew  Niru  Cut  Kiru  Mash  Suritsubusu
Tenderise  Tataku  Stir-fry  Itameru  Bake/grill  Yaku
Steam  Musu  Boil/cook  Taku  Fry  Ageru
Pots  Nabe  Pour  Sosogu  Flour (cooking)  Komugiko
NOTE: 'sosogu' - always liquid. 'ireru' - can be liquid or solid.
Stir  Kakimawasu  Chop  Kizamu

Vinegar  Su  Cooking oil  Shokuyou abura
Cooking alcohol  Ryouri shu

FISH
Salmon  Sake
Sea bream (snapper?)  Tai
Shellfish  Kai
Sea bass  Suzuki
Scallop  Hotate

BEEF / PARTS OF A COW
Sirloin  Saaroin
Rump  Rampu
Tongue  Shita
Liver  Rebaa
Tail  Teeru
Brisket  Katabara
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tenderloin</th>
<th>Hire</th>
<th>Liver</th>
<th>Rebaa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PORK/ PARTS OF A PIG**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loin</th>
<th>Rousu</th>
<th>Ham</th>
<th>Momo</th>
<th>Belly</th>
<th>Bara</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tenderloin</td>
<td>Hire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTS OF A CHICKEN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wing</th>
<th>Teba</th>
<th>Leg</th>
<th>Momo</th>
<th>Breast</th>
<th>Mune niku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>White meat</td>
<td>Sasami</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having friends to dinner**

Dinner's ready. Please (come to the table). O-shokuji no youi (← provided) ga dekimashita node, douzo.
Please go ahead and start. Douzo o-meshigari kudasai.
Please help yourself. O-tori kudasai.
Home-made dish Teryouri
ENTERTAINMENT

Key words

Table of Contents

When does it open?     Itsu akimasu ka?
Do we need tickets?     (Chiketto/Nyuujouken) wa hitsuyou (necessary) desu ka?
There's no entrance fee.     Nyuujou muryou desu.
Two tickets for today, please.     Kyou no chiketto o ni-mai kudasai.
It's valid for (today only/the date specified.)     (Honjitsu/Toujitsu) nomi yuukou desu.
Sorry, it's sold out.     Sumimasen, urikire (sold out) desu.
Is this seat available?     Kono seki wa aite imasu ka?
What is there to do in Okinawa?     Okinawa dewa donna koto ga dekimasu ka?

In a Theatre / Movies

Table of Contents

Information desk     Annaijo
Row                 Retsu
Seat                Seki/Zaseki
Shop                Baiten

Charges and cancellations

Table of Contents

Admission fee (general)     Nyuujouryou
Free admission                Nyuujou (admission) muryou
Cancellation                  Kyanseru / torikeshi
Charged                       Yuuryou
Postponement                  Enki
Sold out                      Urikire
Surcharge                     Tsuika ryoukin

At the movies

Table of Contents

How much is admission?     Nyuujouryou wa ikura desu ka?
Two tickets for adults, please.     Otona ni-mai o kudasai.
Opening time                  Kaikan jikan.
Actor/actress                 Haiyuu
Director                      Kantoku
Historical drama              Jidaigeki
BAD MANNERS WITH CHOPSTICKS
Do not lick the tips of chopsticks.
Do not spear food with chopsticks.

Q: Where shall we eat?
A: Any place is fine.
Good atmosphere.
What are you eating?
I made a reservation for eight people.
We have a reservation for three.
So you would like to make a reservation? Could you please give me your name, address and telephone no?
Do I need a reservation?
Will you take us without a reservation?
I’d like to sit at the counter.
I do not smoke.

Bob, what are you going to eat?
Have you decided what you would like to eat?

Japanese food definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Udon</td>
<td>White wheat noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soumen</td>
<td>Thin noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanuki udon</td>
<td>Wheat noodles from Sanuki area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yakisoba</td>
<td>Stir-friend noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nabe</td>
<td>Stew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shabu shabu</td>
<td>Boiled beef with dipping sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unaju</td>
<td>Eel on rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yakitori</td>
<td>Skewered grilled chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gyuudon</td>
<td>Beef rice bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katsudon</td>
<td>Pork cutlet rice bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soba</td>
<td>Buckwheat noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tempura soba</td>
<td>Buckwheat noodles with tempura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yakiudon</td>
<td>Stir-friend udon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukiyaki</td>
<td>Beef stew in tabletop pot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oden</td>
<td>Winter dish of oden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tempura</td>
<td>Deep-fried fish and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nikujaga</td>
<td>Meat and potato stew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochazuke</td>
<td>Rice and toppings in green tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaisendon</td>
<td>Sashimi rice bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarudon</td>
<td>The white noodles on the mat thing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TEAS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tea</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nihoncha</td>
<td>Japanese tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryokucha</td>
<td>Green tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roasted</td>
<td>Roasted green tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genmaicha</td>
<td>Brown rice tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koucha</td>
<td>Black tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matcca</td>
<td>Powdered green tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mugicha</td>
<td>Barley tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonyuu</td>
<td>Soy milk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ONIGIRI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grilled rice balls</td>
<td>yakionigiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonito flakes</td>
<td>Okura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spicy cod roe</td>
<td>Mentaiko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cold sake
Hospitality
Invitation, to invite
Enkai
Zashiki
Buffet / help yourself
Bill in sushi bars and Japanese restaurants
Bill in other restaurants
Set contribution to a party
To treat someone to a meal
Person who comes home after midnight
Vegetarian
Could I have two bowls of ramen delivered please?

ALCOHOLS

Domestic beer
Kokusan biiru
Nihonshu
Sake, Japanese rice wine
Reishu
Chilled
Well warmed sake
Atsukan
Unheated sake
Reishu/hiyazake
Champagne
Shanpen
Whiskey and water
Mizuwaru

Imported beer
Yunyuu biiru
Shouchuu
Rice, barley or potato spirit
Slightly warmed sake
Atsukan
Brandy
Burandee
Whiskey
Usukii
Wooden sake cup
Sakazuki

WINES

Dry
Karakuchi
Bottle
Furu botoru
Glass
Gurasu
Imported wine
Yunyuu wain

Sweet
Amakuchi
Half bottle
Haafu botoru
Domestic wine
Kokusan wain

ORDERING

What would you recommend?
What's the local speciality?
For now, we’ll have some beers.
A menu, please
A beer, please
For now, we’ll have some beers.

Please may I see the menu?
[STAFF] May I take your order?
Are you ready to order?
Today we have…..
Meal
I'll have…..
I'll have.....as the starter.
This one
Set course meal
Eat as much as one likes
For now, we’ll have some beers.
May I have it right away, please?

O-susume wa nan desu ka?
Kono tochi no meibutsu wa nan desu
Toriaezu, beer onegaishimasu.
Menyu o kudasai
Biru o kudasai
Toriaezu, beer onegaishimasu.

Menyu o misete kudasai?
Go-chuumon wa?
O-kimari deshou ka?
Honjitsu wa……..de gozaimasu.
Shokuji
(Watashi wa) ……..ni shimasu.
(Zensai/Sutaataa) wa……..ni shimasu.
Kore
Teishoku
Tabehoudai
Toriaezu, beer onegaishimasu.
Sugu ni onegai shimasu.
May I have everything together, please?
That's all, thank you.
How do we eat this?
This isn't what I ordered.
My order hasn't come yet.

Another bottle of…..
[STAFF] Enjoy your meal.

I’ve decided on …I’ll have….  
I’ve decided on pasta. 
It’s my treat.
Help yourself. 
It looks delicious! 
It was delicious! 
It was very delicious. 
I’m fine, I’ve had enough thank you 
Please give me something cold to drink. 

Set menu
I’ll have the XY set menu please.  
Miso soup 
Japanese-style pickles  
Rolled omelette (egg) 
Pickled plum  
Grilled fish  
Shall we order this dish?  
What do you like/ dislike?  
Hmmm….I especially like sashimi.

Have you ordered already?  
Ice  

Do you mind if I start before you?  
Please start/don’t wait for me. 

Where is the washroom?  
Where is the toilet? 

Knife  
Spoon  
Chopsticks  
Salad  
Curry on rice  
All, entire, whole  
Seasoned boiled egg  
A kind of salted cod roe  
Addition, supplement  
Naifu  
Supuun  
Hashi  
Sarada  
Karee raisu  
Zenbu  
Ajitamago  
Mentaiko  
Tsuika  

Zenbu issho ni onegai shimasu.    
Sore de onegai shimasu. 
Kore wa douyatte taberun desu ka?  
Kore wa watashi ga chuomon shita mono dewa arimasen.  
Watashi no o-ryouri ga mada kite imasen. 

…..o mou ippon o kudasai.  
Go yuukuri douzo.  

…..ni shimasu.  
Pasta ni shimasu.  
Watashi no ogori desu.  
Douzo meshiagatte kudasai.  
Oishisou! (or ‘Oishi sou desu!)  
Oishikatta! 
Totemo oishikatta desu.  
Mou kekko desu. 
Nani ka tsumetai mono o kudasai.  
Teishoku  
XY teishoku o kudasai. 
Miso shiru 
Tsukemono 
Tamagoyaki 
Umeboshi 
Yakizakana 
Kono ryouri o chuomon shimashou ka?  
Nanika suki-kirai arimasu ka?  
Sou desu ne….sashimi ga tokuni suki desu. 

Mou chuomon nasaimashita?  
Kaori  

Osaki ni itadakimasu ka?  
Osaki ni, douzo! 

Ote-araizu wa doko desu ka?  
Toire wa doko desu ka? 

Fork 
Plate 
Waitress 
Pizza 
Dessert 

Fooku  
Osara  
Waitoresu  
Piza  
Dezaato  

Zenbu  
Ajitamago  
Mentaiko  
Tsuika  

Iri  
Kakuniku  
Gu
SERVING SIZES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single item</th>
<th>Tanpin</th>
<th>Medium size helping</th>
<th>Namimori</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A large serving</td>
<td>Ōmori</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Free, no charge               | Muryō      |                     | Yūryō    |
| A second helping              | Okawari    |                     |          |

Sample conversation

**Waiter:** Welcome!  
**You:** *(Ask to see the menu)* Menyu o misete kudasai.  
**Friend:** Coffee and sandwich please.  
**You:** *(Order beer and pizza from the menu)* Biiru to piza o kudasai *(put ‘to’ between each item).*

If you are ordering things from a restaurant menu, like pizza, beer, etc - When you connect more than 2 nouns, you use *to* between nouns. ie: Biiru to Piza to sandoitchi o kudasai.

Q: What is that food?  
A: [Food] o tabemasu.  
Q: What is that drink?  
A: [Drink] o nomimasu.

What is that drink?

Kono/sono nomimono wa nan desu ka?

Asking to see the bill (in a restaurant)  
Please give me the receipt  
The bill please.

**OR**

Is a table for two available?

Restaurant delivery service  
Home delivery (from a restaurant)

**[If Yes]:**

I'm Jon with a reservation for two at X o'clock.  
What are the house specialties?  
We're still waiting for the XYZ to be served.

**[If No]:**

Okay, I'll come another time.

Smoking section  
Non-smoking section  
Private room  
  Do you have a private room?  
Counter seat  
Table (not a booth or a room)  
Sunken kotatsu seat (where you kind of sit in a hole)  
Tatami room

Kitsuen seki  
Kin-en seki  
Koshitsu  
Koushitsu ga arimasuka?  
Kauntaa seki  
Isu seki  
Horigotatsu  
Zashiki
**SUSHI RESTAURANT**

- **Pickled ginger (Gari)**
- **Two pieces please.**
- **Bonito (Katsuo)**
- **Scallop (Hotate)**
- **Regular sushi (Nami nigiri)**
- **Egg sushi (Gyouku (tamago))**
- **Tea (Agari (ocha))**
- **Chef (Itamae)**
- **Whitebait (Shirauo)**
- **Abalone (Awabi)**
- **Deluxe sushi (Jou nigiri)**

**RAMEN RESTAURANT**

- **Noodles (Men)**
  - Thin noodles (Hosomen)
  - Thick noodles (Futomen)
  - Curly noodles (Chijiremen)
  - Roasted pork (Chaashuu)
  - Soup (Suupu)
  - Pickled bamboo shoots (Memma)
  - Meat:
    - Thin noodles (Hosomen)
    - Thick noodles (Futomen)
    - Hard (Katame)
    - Medium (Fuutsu)
    - Soft (Yawakame)

**Paying**

- **Restaurant bill**
- **The bill, please.**
- **Is tax included?**
  - **Okaike**
  - O-kanjou o onegai shimasu.
  - **Zeikomi desu ka?**

**FAST FOOD JOINTS**

**Table of Contents**

- 1 cheeseburger please.
- I’m going to eat here.
- I’m going to drink here.
- I’m going to take away.
- A (Small/Medium/Large) ------
  - ie: Large fries please.
  - ie: Medium fries please.

**GOING OUT FOR A DRINK**

**Table of Contents**

- Two bottles of Kirin beer, please.
- Let’s get drunk!
- It’s your turn.
- You go first.
- It's my treat.
- What do you drink?
- What are you drinking?
- Do you want some beer?
- How about another? (offering another drink)
- No, I’m fine thank you.
- Kirin biru o ni-hon kudasai.
- Konya wa nomou!
- Anata no ban desu.
- Osaki ni yatte.
- Watashi no ogori desu.
- Anata wa nani o nomimasu ka?
- Nani o nonde imasu ka?
- Biru o nomitai desu ne?
- Mou ippai dou desu ka?
- Mou kekko desu (declining the offer)
I'm a little **drunk**.

Are you drunk?

Let's go drunk?

Are you a heavy drinker?

**Bottle**

Hangover

Sukoshi **yotte** imas(u)  (Sukoshi – little)

Yotteru?

Hokano ba ni ikimashou.

Anata wa heavy drinker desu ka?

**Bin**

Futsukayoi

---

**KARAOKE, INTERNET CAFES, ETC.**

**Table of Contents**

- **Private room**  Koshitsu
- **For one person**  Hitoriyou
- **For two people**  Futariyou

**Sports and outdoor activities**

**Table of Contents**

I'd like to hire a [object].  [Object] o karitain desu ga.

**SPORTING PLACES**

- **Baseball ground**  Yakyuujou
- **Golf range**  Gorufi renshuujou

**JAPANESE FESTIVALS**

**Table of Contents**

Can I join in the XY festival?  XY matsuri ni sanka dekimasu ka?

- **Paper fan**  Uchiwa
- **Pole used to carry mikoshi**  Bou
- **Twisted headband**  Nejiri hachimaki
- **Booth selling goods or food**  Yomise

- **Portable shrine**
- **Split-toes shoes**
- **Nejiri hachimaki**
- **Yomise**

- **Mikoshi**
- **Jikatabi**
TWO USEFUL AND EASY SHOPPING PHRASES (& for other situations):

….o kudasai / …..o misete kudasai = Please may I have / Please may I see

Please may I have [OBJECT]
Please may I see (or, please show me) [OBJECT]

Do you/they have [OBJECT]?
Where is [OBJECT]?
Where can I buy [OBJECT]?
Have you seen [OBJECT]?

I’m looking for [object].

Q: I want to buy [Object].
..where is a good place?

A: [Place] is a good place to buy [Object].
It is OK as it is. (especially if you do not want it wrapped)

How much did you pay for [PLACE]?
Do you have a cheaper [PRODUCT]?
Can you make it cheaper?
How much does it come to altogether?
Which [Product name] is the cheapest?
These envelopes are ¥80 for 5.
You can get to the station in 5-6 minutes.

What time do you close?
Where is the exit?
Where is the east exit?
How long will it take?
Can I ask you to deliver it?
No, thank you.
Sold out
We’re sold out.
Overdue, expired

Cash
Price
Goods
Shopping
Shops
Elevator
Escalator
Stairs

Genkin
Nedan
Shinamono
Kaimono
Mise
Erebeetaa
Esukareeta
Kaidan
Buying something using installments:

How much would I have to pay every month?  Maitsuki, ikura haraeba ii desu ka?

Describing floors in a building -

Floor = kai – 7th floor = Nana kai

All floors in a building:
Ikkai, nikai, sangai, yonkai, gokai, rokkai, nanakai, hachikai, kyûkai, jukkai

Which floor?
What floor is [OBJECT] located on?
ie: Which floor are shoes located on?
Sales counter, Department
Menswear
Floor B1
1st Floor
2nd Floor
3rd Floor

Nankai desu ka?
[OBJECT] wa nankai ni arimasu ka?
Kutsu wa nankai ni arimasu ka?
Uriba
Shinshiyouhin
Chika ikkai
Ikai
Ni-kai
San-gai

A tax
I'll pay in cash
Genkin de haraimasu.
Offering for sale
Hatsubai
This magazine goes on sale every Wednesday.
Kono zasshi wa maishuu suiyoubi hatsubai desu.
Sales; selling
Hanbai
Trade, business
Shoubai
Advance sale
Maeuri
Things for sale
Urimono
Sold out
Urikire

Department store departments

Bedding
Furniture
Men's wear
Ladies' wear
I'm looking for [Item]
What are you looking for?
How long will it stay fresh?
Canned foods
Dairy products
Seasonings
Kanzume
Nyuuseihin
Choumiryou

I'm looking for [Item] o sagashite imasu.
Nani o sagashi desu ka?
Donokurai mochimasu ka?

Change (money)
Otsuri
Please bag this for me.
Fukuro ni irete kudasai
Can you gift wrap this please?
Kore o purezento you ni tsutsunde kudasai.
Paper bag
Kamibukuro
Featured (sale) item
Honnitsu no tokubai
Lip balm
Rippu kurimu
Suntan lotion
Hiyakedome

Power transformer (inter country power) hen-atsuku
Fukuro ni irete kudasai
Kore o purezento you ni tsutsunde kudasai.
Plastic bag
Binirubukuro
Hand lotion
Hand kurimu
Sanitary products
Seiri youhin
FOOD SHOPPING

Table of Contents

What’s the local speciality?       Koko no meibutsu wa nana desu ka?
I’ll take…..                      …..ni shimasu.
How much is it altogether?        Zenbu de ikura desu ka?
How much is it for one bag?      Hito-fukuro ikura desu ka?
A bag of these [objects] please. Kono [objects] o hito-fukuro kudasai.
A little more, please.            Mou sukoshi onegai shimasu.
That’s fine.                      Sore de kekkou desu.

A bottle/jar of…..               …..Ippon/hitobin
A box of…..                      …..hitohako
A slice of…..                    …..ichimai
A tin of…..                      …..hitokan

[Shop staff]  Anything else?     Hoka ni nani ka?
That’s [10,000 yen] in total.     Goukei de ichiman-en de gozaimasu.
We’re sold out.                   Urikire de gozaimasu.

[STAFF]  Anything else?          Hoka ni nani ka?
Is this everything?              Kochira de yoroshii deshou ka?
Altogether, that comes to ¥XYZ.   Gokei de ¥XYZ de gozaimasu.

IF YOU WANT TO INQUIRE WHETHER A SHOP OR PERSON HAS THE THING YOU ARE LOOKING FOR, use the phrase:

[OBJECT] ga arimasu ka?

Eg: Do you have any English newspapers? Eigo no shimbun ga arimasu ka?
   Do you have any magazines?         Zasshi ga arimasu ka?
   Do you have any English books?    Eigo no hon ga arimasu ka?
   Is there a telephone here?        Denwa wa arimasu ka?
   Do you have any coffee?           Kohii ga arimasu ka?
   Do you have any stamps?           Kitte ga arimasu ka?

If you want to say that you have or possess something, use the phrase….ga arimasu.

eg:
I own a house.       Ie/Uchi ga arimasu.
I’ve got a newspaper. Shimbun ga arimasu.

Big                     Ookii
Bigger (more big)      Motto ookii no
Smaller (more small)   Motto chiisai no

I’ll take it            Kore ni shimasu
Bigger                  Motto ookii no
Just right              Choodo ii
More                    Motto
Near                    Chikai

Small                   Chiisai
No thanks               Yamemasu
Smaller                 Motto chiisai no.

A little, a bit         Chotto
Smaller                 Motto chiisai (= more small)
Little, few, a bit     Sukoshi

Right! (when you have made up your mind) Dewa!
Dewa – then, in that case
Is that all? Kore de yoroshii desu ka?
Please heat it Atatamate kudasai

Enlarge Kakudai suru
Reduce Herasu

Special diets
Vegetarian Bejitarian
Vegan Bigan
Organic Ooganiku
Genetically modified Idenshi kumikae
Soybean Daizu

Food allergies
Egg Tamago Dairy products Nyuuseihin
Wheat Komugi Shrimp Ebi
Peanut Rakkasei

MSG Gurutaminsan

CLOTHES and ACCESSORIES

Table of Contents

There are several ways to wear and put things on –

To wear on upper body kiru
To wear on lower body haku
To wear on one’s head kaburu
To wear jewellery, accessories tsukeru
To wear glasses, sunglasses kakeru

Can you please exchange this? Kore o torikaemasuka?
You have that t-shirt on back to front, don’t you? Sono T-shatsu ushiromae ja nai?
Can I try it on? Shichaku shite ii desu ka?

Stationery Bunboogu Light bulb Denki yuu
Cosmetics Keshouhin Tableware Shokki
Detergent Senzai Razor Kamisori
Refund Henkin

I’ll shop at the vege shop on the way home today. Kyou kaeri ni yaoya de kaimono o shiyou.
Price (including tax?) ← check Zeikomi
High quality, first class, superior Jouto ← add to adjectives
Sale Uriage
Why don’t you put on the jacket? Jaketo o kitara dou desu ka?
**WHAT'S IT MADE OF?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Sozai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gara</td>
<td>Kinu</td>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silk</td>
<td>Gara</td>
<td>Gousei hikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wool</td>
<td>Silk</td>
<td>Gousei sen-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leather</td>
<td>Cotton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Synthetic leather</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Synthetic fibre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Secondhand/old clothes  
I'd like to give my old clothes to someone.

**TRYING ON CLOTHES**

**Can I see something in another XY?**  
Hoka no XY o misete kudasai.

**Ladies**  
For children: Fujin you  
Light / dark: Akarui / kurai  
Another pattern: Hoka no garu  
**What size is this?**  
Saizu wa ikutsu desu ka?  
Do you have (the bigger size?)  
Do you have anything (bigger/smaller/cheaper?)

**Mens**  
Sleeveless: Shinshi you  
Another colour: Hoka no iro  
I am just looking, thanks.: Mite iru dake desu, douzo.

**May I try it on?**  
Shichaku ii desu ka?  
This is fine: Choodo ii desu.  
I'll think about it: Chotto kangaete imasu.  
I'll be back: Mata kimasu

**Or: Shichaku shite mo ii desu ka?**  
I like (it/them): Sore ga ii desu.

**Shopping for shoes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Raincoat</th>
<th>Cap/hat</th>
<th>Boushi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zipper</td>
<td>Faasunaa</td>
<td>Nekuresu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bracelet</td>
<td>Buresureeto</td>
<td>Yubiwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key chain</td>
<td>Kii horudaa</td>
<td>Hea bando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankerchief</td>
<td>Hankachi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Those shoes over there. Do you have them in size 27?  
Ano kutsu, niju-nana senchi, arimasuka?  
Here we are you. Please try them on.  
Douzo, o-haki ni natte kudasai.  
They're tight and don't feel good.  
Kitsukute hakinikui desu ne.  
Do you have the next size up?  
Ue no zaizu, arimasen ka?  
They only go up to size 27……  
Ni-ju nana senchi made nan desu yo.  
How about these?  
Kore wa ikaga desu ka?  
These are comfortable. I'll take these.  
Kore wa hakiyasui desu. Kore ni shimasu.

**Discount terms**

Ten percent off.  
Juppaasento biki / ichiwari biki
Thirty percent off.  
Sanjuppaasento biki / sanwari biki
It's a bargain!  
O-kaidoku desu yo.
It's reduced.  
Yasuku natte orimasu.
It's half price.  
Hangaku desu.
Internet shopping

Table of Contents

Basic buttons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search</th>
<th>Kensaku</th>
<th>検索</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back</td>
<td>Modoru</td>
<td>戻る</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continue</td>
<td>Zokku</td>
<td>続行</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Sakujo</td>
<td>削除</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next</td>
<td>Tsugi e</td>
<td>次へ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td>Kyanseru</td>
<td>キャンセル</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product details</th>
<th>Shouuhin yousai</th>
<th>商品洋裁</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kakaku (zeikomi)</td>
<td>Prixe (tax included)</td>
<td>戻る</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>Suuryou</td>
<td>数量</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Put in shopping cart</td>
<td>Kago ni ireru</td>
<td>かごに入れる</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If it's a bigger site and you're a new customer, you may need to register. The word for registration is touroku (登録), so look for phrases like:

This button is for those who are not registered (first time visitors).
ID touroku shite inai kata wa kochira (hajimete no kata).

You will be asked to agree to the terms and conditions

I do not consent  doui shinai 同意しない
I do consent  doui suru 同意する

Then you'll be able to browse.
On the confirmation screen, you can check the contents of your cart and change if necessary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Back</th>
<th>Modoru</th>
<th>戻る</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proceed to checkout</td>
<td>Seisan</td>
<td>精算</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Hinmei</td>
<td>品名</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price per item (tax included)</td>
<td>Zeikomi tanka</td>
<td>税込み 単価</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>Suuryou</td>
<td>数量</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change (qty)</td>
<td>Henkou</td>
<td>変更</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-total</td>
<td>Shoukei</td>
<td>小計</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Sakujo</td>
<td>削除</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customer information screen. You must be very careful how you enter the details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full size hiragana or kanji (for your name)</th>
<th>Zensaku</th>
<th>全角</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full size katakana or kanji (for your name)</td>
<td>Zensaku katakana 全角カタカナ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Half size numbers
(for phone numbers, etc.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hankaku suuji</td>
<td>半角数字</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Half size numbers and alphabet
(for e-mail address and passwords.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hankaku eisuji</td>
<td>半角英数字</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SHOP NAMES
**Table of Contents**

Ya in Japanese means shop/store and you add this to the end of words to make shop names.

*Eg: Hana (flower) + ya = hanaya (florist)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM:</th>
<th>SHOP NAME:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sakana (fish)</td>
<td>Sakanaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pan (bread)</td>
<td>Panya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niku (meat)</td>
<td>Nikuya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exceptions:**

- Yasai (vegetables) becomes yaoya (greengrocer’s)
- Sake (alcohol) becomes sakaya (wine shop / off-licence)
- Kusuri (medicine) becomes yakkyoku

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bakery</th>
<th>Panya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bank</td>
<td>Ginkou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barber shop</td>
<td>Toko ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book shop</td>
<td>Honya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butcher</td>
<td>Nikuyasan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD shop</td>
<td>Shi dii shoppu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothing shop</td>
<td>Yoohin-ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee shop</td>
<td>Kissaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenience Store</td>
<td>Konbeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department store</td>
<td>Depaarto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Hair salon (women)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store/Pharmacy</td>
<td>Hair dresser (men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical shop</td>
<td>Hospital/clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign book store</td>
<td>Information Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture store</td>
<td>Liquor shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit shop</td>
<td>Meat shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit market</td>
<td>Police box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grocery shop</td>
<td>Post Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used bookstore</td>
<td>Photo studio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store/Pharmacy</td>
<td>Shoe shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical shop</td>
<td>Shopping mall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign book store</td>
<td>Supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture store</td>
<td>Sushi shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit shop</td>
<td>Toy shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit market</td>
<td>Vegetable market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grocery shop</td>
<td>Y100 yen shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used bookstore</td>
<td>Hyaku-en shoppu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Cash on delivery | Daikin hikikae |
| Requested delivery date | Haitatsu kiboubi |
| Delivery time frame | Haitatsu jikantai |
Add PLACES/Objects/Clothes Excel page in here
LOCATION

Street  Toori  Yard  Niwa
Sports store  Suportsu youhinten  Toy shop  Omochaya
Dolls  Ningyou  Hardware store  Kanamonoya
Gas station  Gasorinsutando  Clothing store  Youfukuya
Gym  Taikukan/Fitto-nesu sentaa

COLOURS

Table of Contents

B&W  Shiroi kuro  Orange  Orenji
Black  Kuroi  Peach  Momo
Blue  Aoi  Pink  Pinku
Brown  Chairo  Purple  Murusaki
Yellow  Kiiro  Red  Akai
Gold  Kin  Silver  Gin
Gray  Haiiro  White  Shiroi
Green  Midori  Purple  Murusaki

Small size (S)  Esu
Medium size (M)  Emu
Large size (L)  Eru

White pencil  Shiroi impitusu  Blue shirt  Aoi shatsu, etc
Dark  Koi
Dark red  Koi akai

HOW MUCH IS IT?  Ikura desu ka?

Table of Contents

How much for all?  Zembu de ikura desu ka?
A tax  Zeikin
I’ll pay in cash  Genkin de haraimasu.

NOUN wa [Counter] ikura desu ka?
How much are 3 CD’s?
CD wa sanmai ikura desu ka?

Expensive  Takai
More  Motto
Cheap, reasonable  Yasui
AT THE POST OFFICE

Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Postcard</th>
<th>Hagaki</th>
<th>Stamp(s)</th>
<th>Kitte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Letter</td>
<td>Tegami</td>
<td>Parcel</td>
<td>Kozutsumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By airmail</td>
<td>Koukuubin de</td>
<td>Envelope</td>
<td>Fuutou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By seamail</td>
<td>Funabin de</td>
<td>Special delivery</td>
<td>Sokutatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Express mail</td>
<td>Sokutatsu</td>
<td>Registered mail</td>
<td>Kakitome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delivery certified mail</td>
<td>Kokutei kiroku yuubin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mai** is a counter for flat objects – stamps, tickets, paper, cards, etc.

**Hon (pon, bon)** is a counter for long or cylindrical objects – bottles, pens, etc.

10 Flat objects: stamps, tickets, etc  
2 Cylindrical objects: bottles, pens  

**Express mail/First class**  
I'd like to send this to [country].  
How much is it by (air/sea)?  
I'd like to send this parcel 'express'?  

How much is a stamp?  
How much is this letter to England?  
How much is this postcard to France?  
10 x Y75 stamps please.  
Do you have a postcard?  

How much is a ticket?  
How much is a ticket to Kyoto?  
How much is a ticket to Auckland?  

**Sample dialogue: Anne has gone to the P.O to post some letters**

Anne:  すみません、この手紙はイギリスに送るのですか？（excuse me, how much is this letter to England?）
Teller:  二百 Naval someone（200+10 yen = Y210）
Anne:  あの…手紙はイギリスに送るのですか？（how much is this postcard to England?）
Teller:  十銭ニー手紙ですね…。（10 x Y75 stamps please）
Anne:  はい、手紙は送るのですか？（Do you have a postcard?）
Teller:  ええ、そこ（Postcards are 100 yen each）
Anne:  ええ、そこに手紙を送るのですか？（Yes, Is that all?）
Teller:  わかりました。英語でどうしますか？（Thank you. Altogether..1960 yen）

Pre-stamped postcard  
New Year postcard  
Parcel, small package  
Small package  
Change of address  

Kansei hagaki  
Nengajou  
Kozutsumi  
Sumouru paketto / kogata housoubutsu  
Tenkyo todoke

Page - 125 -  Jon's Japanese V2012.doc
AT THE CHEMIST

Table of Contents

Do you have something for a (cold/cough/a burn sunburn/a sting)?
Do you have any (plasters/aspirin)?
How should I take this medicine?

Take one tablet after each meal please.
(Once/twice/3 times) a day.
(Before/after) meals.
With water.

Medicines

- Antihistamine
- Aspirin
- Cough (medicine/drops)
- Cream /salve
- Eye wash/drops
- Insulin
- Laxative
- Pain killer
- Sleeping pill

(Kaze/Seki/Yakedo/Hiyake/Mushisasare) no kusuri wa arimasu ka?
(Bansoku/Asupurin) wa arimasu ka?
Kono kusuri wa douyatte nomimasu ka?
Kono jouzai o ichijou maishokugo fuyyou shite kudasai.
Ichinichi (ikkai/nikai/sankai)
Shokuzen/shokugo
O-mizu to issho ni.

AT THE BANK

Table of Contents

Money
Cash
Please show me
Bank account
Open a bank account
I'd like to open a bank account.
Please show me how to open a bank account.
I want to withdraw some money.
I just withdrew 10,000 yen yesterday.
Deposit / to make a deposit
I want to deposit some money.
Withdrawal
Please tell me the balance of my account.
Take cash out of the bank
Current account
Bank book
Bank transfer
Direct debit
Loan
Interest

Okane
Genkin
Oshiete kudasai
Kouza
Kouza o hiraku
Kouza o hirakitan desu ga.
Kouza no hirakikatta oshiete kudasai.
Okane o oroshitai
Kinou, ichi-man en oroshita bakari desu.
Yokin / yokin suru
Okane o yokin (_deposit) shitai
Hikidashi
Kouza no zandaka o oshiete kudasai.
Genkin o orusu
Futsu kouza
Yokin tsuchou
Furikome
Jidou furikomi
Yuushi / roun
Rishi

Check the balance
Zandaka shoukai
**Make payment**
- Signature
- Please sign here
- Cashpoint, cash machine
- Commission / handling fee
- Exchange rate
- Currency
- Credit card
- Travellers cheques
- Foreign exchange
- I want to change ….  into …
- To convert into yen
- May I have it in ….Yen notes please?
- Bankbook
- Could not find bankbook

**Furikomu**
- Sain
- Koko ni sain shite kudasai
- Kasshu masiin
- Komishhon / Tesuuryou
- Kawase reeto
- Tsuuka
- Kurejitto kaado
- Taraberaazu chekku
- Gaikoku kawase
- ......o kaetai desu
- ....o…ni kaetai desu
- en ni Kansan suru
- ....en satsu de kudasai
- Tsuuchou
- Tsuuchou o mitsukaranakatta

I’d like to change some NZ dollars into J yen…. What's today's rate?
- **Could you show me how to use the ATM?**
  - I'd like the telephone bill deducted automatically
  - I want to print the transactions (in my bankbook).
  - from my account.
  - I have lost my bankbook. Can I have a new one?

**Foreign Currency**
- Dollars  Doru
- Franc  Furan
- Pounds  Pondo
- Marks  Maruku

**At the bike shop**

**Table of Contents**
- Chain is dislocated.
- Please pour some oil where necessary.
- Looks like I have a puncture.

**AT THE HAIR DRESSER**

**Table of Contents**
- Hair salon (women)
- Hair dresser (men)
- I'd like to have a haircut.
- How long is the wait?
- Do I need a reservation?
- I want it cut this much
- I want the hairstyle in this photo
- I would like my hair thinned
- Please thin my hair
- Please tidy the neck
- Please cut the sideburns straight
- Please do not cut the front

- Biyou in
- Sanpatsuya, Tokoi ya
- Sanpatsu o shita moraitai no desu ga.
- Dono kurai, machimasu ka?
- Yoyaku wa hitsuyou (need) desu ka?
- Kono kurai katto shite
- Kono shashin no youni onegai
- Zentai teki ni suite kudasai
- Kami o suite kudasai
- Kubisuiji wa sotte kudasai
- Momi age (sideburns) wa massugu ni kitte kudasai
- Maegami wa kiranai de kudasai
Please do not cut too short

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hair color</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red hair</td>
<td>Akai kami</td>
<td>Brown hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black hair</td>
<td>Kuroi kami</td>
<td>Blond hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey hair</td>
<td>Shiraga</td>
<td>Curly hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight hair</td>
<td>Maasuguna kami</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Haircut</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Katto/Kamigata</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shampoo</td>
<td>Champuu</td>
<td>Shave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>Shoooto</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>Rongu</td>
<td>Wavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight</td>
<td>Sutoreto</td>
<td>Curled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AT THE LIBRARY**

- **Check out** | **Return**
  - Karidasu | Kaesu
  - Hon o kaesuhi | Library card

**SOUVENIR SHOPPING**

*Table of Contents*

- Where was it made? : Sanchi wa doko desu ka?
- For a man : Dansei muke
- For a woman : Josei muke
- Ceramics : Toujiki
- Lacquerware : Shikki
- Japanese doll : Nihonningyou
- Wooden doll : Kokeshi
- Japanese folding fans : Sensu

**DELIVERY SERVICES** – sending bags, suitcases, boxes, etc.

*Table of Contents*

**YOU:** I'd like to send this luggage to my home in Tokyo.
Can I have this delivered?

I'd like this [object] sent to my home

**DEliVERY GUY:**
Fine. For Tokyo, it's ¥1,000 per bag.
The (protective) bags are ¥150 each.
It will be delivered tomorrow.
What time of day do you want it delivered?

**Desired delivery date**
**Desired delivery time**

- Morning : Gozenchuu
- Afternoon : Gogo
- Evening : Yuugata
- Night : Yakan
- No preference : Kibou nashi
- Item : Hinmei

Warrantee : Hoshou

---

Amari kirannai de kudasai

- Brown hair : Chairo no kami
- Blond hair : Kin no kami / kinpatsu
- Curly hair : Kaarii he-a / makige

Grey hair : Shiraga
Curly hair : Kaarii he-a / makige
### Houses and buildings, around the house

#### Table of Contents

#### Parts of Houses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roof tile</td>
<td>Kawara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short curtain (hangs down)</td>
<td>Noren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sliding doors</td>
<td>Fusuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat floor cushion</td>
<td>Zabuton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest (of drawers)</td>
<td>Tansu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sliding paper doors</td>
<td>Shouji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small raised alcove</td>
<td>Tokonoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Types of Buildings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building Type</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single-family dwelling</td>
<td>Ikkodate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apartment, condo</td>
<td>Manshon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apartment building</td>
<td>Shuugou juutaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing complex</td>
<td>Danchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steps</td>
<td>Dan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porch</td>
<td>Pouchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front yard</td>
<td>Maeniwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage</td>
<td>Gare-ji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking space</td>
<td>Chuusha spesu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balcony</td>
<td>Barukonii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Kitchen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sink</td>
<td>Nagashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oven</td>
<td>Ooben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot</td>
<td>Nabe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowl</td>
<td>Chawan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stove</td>
<td>Rengii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupboard</td>
<td>Todana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pan (frying)</td>
<td>Furai pan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kettle</td>
<td>Tenki kettoruan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bedroom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dresser</td>
<td>Doresaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fan</td>
<td>Senpuuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirror</td>
<td>Kagami</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bathroom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wash/face cloth</td>
<td>Taoru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bath mat</td>
<td>Basu maato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighing scales</td>
<td>Taijuukei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaster</td>
<td>Bansoukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap(s)</td>
<td>Jyaguchi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### House Action Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turn on the light</td>
<td>Tenki o tsukeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean up</td>
<td>Souji suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mop the floor</td>
<td>Yuka ni moopu o kakeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dust the furniture</td>
<td>Kagu no hokori o harau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do the laundry</td>
<td>Sentaku suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Put the groceries away</td>
<td>Shokuriyouhin o katazukeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set the table</td>
<td>Teeburu o totonoeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wash the dishes</td>
<td>Sara o arau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed the cat</td>
<td>Neko ni esa o yaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn off the light</td>
<td>Tenki o kesu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweep the floor</td>
<td>Yuka o haku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum the carpet</td>
<td>Soujiki o kakeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the bed sheets</td>
<td>Shiitsu o kaeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fold the laundry</td>
<td>Sentakumono o tatamu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take out the trash</td>
<td>Gomi o suteru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear the table</td>
<td>Teeburu o katazukeru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry the dishes</td>
<td>Sara o fuku</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IN THE HOUSE

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The house</th>
<th>ie (ee-eh) / uchi</th>
<th>Your house</th>
<th>Otaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom</td>
<td>O-furoba</td>
<td>Japanese style room</td>
<td>Washitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathtub</td>
<td>Yokuso, yubune</td>
<td>Kitchen</td>
<td>Daidokoro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedroom</td>
<td>Shinshitsu</td>
<td>Living room</td>
<td>Ima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookcase</td>
<td>Honbako</td>
<td>Lobby</td>
<td>Robii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>Karendra</td>
<td>Oven/stove</td>
<td>o’bun, tenpi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceiling</td>
<td>Tenjou</td>
<td>Poster</td>
<td>Posutaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chair</td>
<td>Isu</td>
<td>Room</td>
<td>Heya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closet</td>
<td>Oshiire</td>
<td>Rubbish bin</td>
<td>Gomibako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning, sweeping</td>
<td>Souji</td>
<td>Shelf</td>
<td>Tana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain</td>
<td>Kaaten</td>
<td>Sink</td>
<td>Nagashi, tame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desk</td>
<td>Tsukue</td>
<td>Stairs</td>
<td>Kaidan, hashigo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining room</td>
<td>Dainingu, Shokudoo</td>
<td>Supper, dinner</td>
<td>Yuushoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawer</td>
<td>Hikidashi</td>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Teeburu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrance</td>
<td>Genkan/Iriguchi</td>
<td>Toilet</td>
<td>Otearai / Toire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>Yuka</td>
<td>Verandah</td>
<td>Beranda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezer</td>
<td>Reitoko</td>
<td>Wall</td>
<td>Kabe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fridge</td>
<td>Reizoko</td>
<td>Wardrobe, chest of</td>
<td>Tansu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drawers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garbage, rubbish</td>
<td>Gomi / haihin</td>
<td>Washing machine</td>
<td>Sentakuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garden/yard</td>
<td>Niwa</td>
<td>Window</td>
<td>Mado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas</td>
<td>Gasu</td>
<td>Fan</td>
<td>Fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hallway</td>
<td>Rooka, genkan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heater</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Household

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Housework</th>
<th>Kaji</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Please make yourself at home.  
- Please come early tomorrow morning.  
- I'd like to, but I'm afraid I can't.  
- I don't have to have it.  

#### DESCRIBING BREAKDOWNS

##### PLUMBING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The toilet is clogged.</td>
<td>Toire ga tsumatte imasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The sink won't drain.</td>
<td>Nagashi no mizu ga nagaremasen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bath smells bad.</td>
<td>Ofuro ga kusai.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### TV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Screen</td>
<td>Gamen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It switches on, but there's no picture or sound. The picture jumps and the sound buzzes.

**APPLIANCES**

It switches on but doesn't heat/cool/go.

**CARS**

The engine won't start.

**COMPUTER**

The hard disk clinked and clattered.

**POWER**

Electric power
Electricity bill
A power outage/failure/blackout

There was a blackout in this area due to the typhoon.

**TOOLS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rake</td>
<td>Kumade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clippers</td>
<td>Uekibasami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw</td>
<td>Nokogiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nails</td>
<td>pinchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chisel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Houki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kanazuchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pliers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Degen wa hairimasu ga, gamen mo oto mo demasen. Gamen ga chira-chira shite, zatsuon ga shimasu.

Switchi wa hairimasu ga, atatamaranai/hienai/mawaranai/no desu.

Enjin ga kakarimasen.

Haado deisuku ga hakkon hakkon, kacha kacha to iu oto o shimashita.

Kono aria wa taifuu no eikyou (impact, effect, influence) de teiden shita.
# TRAVEL AND GETTING AROUND

## Key words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tourism</th>
<th>Kanko</th>
<th>Travel</th>
<th>Ryoko</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Half day / one day tour</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hannichi / ichinichi kousu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinner included</td>
<td></td>
<td>Shokuji tsuki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpreter</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tsuuyaku</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where does the (coach tour) start from?</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Basu tsuaa) wa doko kara demasu ka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time does it (start/finish)?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nanji ni (sutaato shimasu/owarimasu) ka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is there to do in Okinawa?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Okinawa dewa donna koto ga dekimasu ka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Planning a trip – on an Internet web page

When booking a trip on the Web, you may need to fill in this information –

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of nights stay</th>
<th>Haku</th>
<th>泊</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rooms</td>
<td>Heya</td>
<td>部屋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults</td>
<td>Otona</td>
<td>大人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td>Kodomo</td>
<td>子供</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number (ie: of people)</td>
<td>Mei</td>
<td>名</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SEARCH (button)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of room</th>
<th>Kensaku</th>
<th>検索</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heya taipu</td>
<td>部屋タイプ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shokuji taipu</td>
<td>食事タイプ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryoukin</td>
<td>料金</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinguru</td>
<td>シングル</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsuin</td>
<td>ツイン</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daburu</td>
<td>ダブル</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shitei nashi</td>
<td>指定なし</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No meals</th>
<th>Shokujinashi</th>
<th>食事なし</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breakfast only</td>
<td>Asa nomi</td>
<td>朝のみ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinner only</td>
<td>Yuu nomi</td>
<td>夕のみ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breakfast and dinner</td>
<td>Asa/yuu ari</td>
<td>朝/夕あり</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>Washitsu</th>
<th>和室</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Japanese/Western</td>
<td>Wayoshitsu</td>
<td>和 [Can't type the rest]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Confirming a room reservation

As your trip approaches, you may want to confirm that your Internet booking has gone through.

I made a reservation on the Internet for 1 night on the 26th. Could you confirm it please?

[Receptionist] That's fine. Two people. About what time are you likely to arrive?

Sightseeing
An excursion

Travelling by car

Table of Contents

Expressway
Toll gate
Rush hour
Congestion, traffic jam
Rest area
Rest area with limited facilities
Road map
Car rental
Speed per hour
Tourist information
Why are you visiting?
Tourist attractions
Tokyo Metropolitan Building
The traffic signal will change to red.

Parts of a car

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accelerator</th>
<th>Brakes</th>
<th>Clutch</th>
<th>Tires</th>
<th>Windscreen wiper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Akuseru</td>
<td>Bureeki</td>
<td>Kuratchi</td>
<td>Taiya</td>
<td>Waipa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiator</th>
<th>Steering wheel</th>
<th>Wheels</th>
<th>Window</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rajieetaa</td>
<td>Handoru</td>
<td>Hoiiru</td>
<td>Mado</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRANSPORT

Table of Contents

TRANSPORTATION

Distance
One's destination
Destination
Day trip
Firstly, let's buy tickets to our destination.
Please sit in the third seat from the right.
Fee
Change (money)
On foot/walking

Koutsuu
Kyori
Mokutekichi
Iki saki
Higaeri
Mazu, mokutekichi made no kippu o kaimashou.
Migi kara sanbanme no seki ni suwatte kudasai.

Car
Kuruma
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underground/subway</td>
<td>Chikatetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus</td>
<td>Basu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus stop</td>
<td>Basu noriba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plane</td>
<td>Hikouki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat</td>
<td>Seki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxi</td>
<td>Takushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform</td>
<td>Hoomu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scooter</td>
<td>Baiku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking/carpark</td>
<td>Chuisha jou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ticket gate</td>
<td>Kaisatsuguchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack</td>
<td>Amidana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A national road/highway</td>
<td>Kokudou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A road, a street, a highway</td>
<td>Douro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle</td>
<td>Jitensha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bullet train</td>
<td>Shinkansen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Train</td>
<td>Densa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commute</td>
<td>Kayou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timetable</td>
<td>Jikokubyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxi stand</td>
<td>Takushi noriba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship</td>
<td>Fune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rush hour</td>
<td>Russhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highay</td>
<td>Kousoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ticket office</td>
<td>Kippu uriba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molester, groper</td>
<td>Chikan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Packing
No parking here
Shall I get the car out of the garage for you?
Railroad car; a coach

Traffic, transportation
Getting off a train or bus

Ticket
Kippu
Season ticket
Teiki
First class
Gurinsha
Get on, ride
Norimasu
Get off
Orimasu
Change
Norikaemasu
Last train of the day
Shuuden

Is a subway station nearby?
How do I get to Kyoto?
Does this train go to [PLACE]?
Does this train go to Shinjuku?
Does the shinkansen stop at Odawara?
Which train goes to [PLACE]?
Which train goes to Shinjuku?
Which platform?
Which line?
What number is the platform?
How far is it?
Will I have to transfer?
How many stops from here?
Please tell me when we get to the station.
Please point out.
Where is the terminus?
Please draw a map.
How many stops from here?
Please get off at the seventh station.
How long does it take?
Please take the train bound for Tokyo.
Do I have to change trains?
Excuse me, where can I buy a ticket?

Give me 2 tickets for Kyoto please.
Where are the ticket machines for [Train line]?

Where can I board the train for [xxx]?

Chikatetsu no eki wa chikai desu ka?
Kyoto ni douyatte ikimasu ka?
Kono densha wa [PLACE] e ikimasu ka?
Kono densha wa Shinjuku e ikimasu ka?
Shinkansen wa Odawara ni tomarimasu ka?
[PLACE] wa dore desu ka?
Nambon sen desu ka?
Nani sen desu ka?
Nanban sen desu ka?
Dono kurai desu ka?
Norikae arimasu ka?
Koko kara ikutsuse?
Eki ni tsuitara, oshiete kudasai.
Yubi sashite kudasai.
Shuuten wa doko desu ka?
Chizu kaite kudasai.
Koko kara ikutsu me desu ka?
Nanatsume no eki de orite kudasai.
Jikan wa dono kurai desu ka?
Tokyo-yuki no densha ni notte kudasai.
Norikae wa
Sumimasen, kippu wa doko de kaemasu ka?
[Excuse me, ticket where can (I) buy?]
Kyoto made no kippu o ni-mai kudasai.
[Train line]-sen no kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

[xxx] eki no densha wa doko de norimasu ka?
Have you got a cheaper one?
What is the cheapest [OBJECT]? (ie: ticket)

What is the cheapest ticket to [PLACE]?

How much is a ticket to [PLACE]?
How much is a ticket to Shinjuku?

Exit
North entrance
East entrance
Ticket barrier

Where is the ticket (counter/barrier)?
Which platform does the train to Tokyo leave from?
Is this a (non-smoking/first class) carriage?
Are these reserved seats?
Which carriages have (non-reserved) seats?
Is this seat free?

At which station do we change trains?

A terminal station; the last stop
I'm getting off at the next station.

[the train] that has just left

A local train (all stations)
Local train
Semi-express
Rapid/express train
Super express/special/limited express train

Travelling by train

Train, often refers to a scheduled train
Unreserved seat
Reserved seat
Non-smoking car
Non-smoking seat
Fare adjustment machine
Timetable
Station box lunch

Train carriages

The –th carriage
Second carriage
Third carriage
Fourth carriage

bound for, train where get on, ride, catch
Motto yasui no wa arimasu ka
Ichiban yasui kippu wa nan (dore) desu ka?
dore means which one?
[PLACE] made ichiban yasui kippu wa nan (dore) desu ka?
[PLACE] yuki no kippu wa ikura desu ka?
Shinjuku yuki no kippu wa ikura desu ka?

Entry
Deguchi
Kita guchi
Higashi guchi
Kaisatsuguchi

Exit
North entrance
East entrance
Ticket barrier

Where is the ticket (counter/barrier)?
Which platform does the train to Tokyo leave from?
Is this a (non-smoking/first class) carriage?
Are these reserved seats?
Which carriages have (non-reserved) seats?
Is this seat free?

At which station do we change trains?

A terminal station; the last stop
I'm getting off at the next station.

[the train] that has just left

A local train (all stations)
Local train
Semi-express
Rapid/express train
Super express/special/limited express train

Travelling by train

Table of Contents

Train, often refers to a scheduled train
Unreserved seat
Reserved seat
Non-smoking car
Non-smoking seat
Fare adjustment machine
Timetable
Station box lunch

Train carriages

Table of Contents

The –th carriage
Second carriage
Third carriage
Fourth carriage

-ryoume
-Ni ryoume
-San ryoume
-Yon ryoume

Ressha
Jiyuuseki
Shiteiseki
Kinensha
Kinenseki
Seisanki
Jikokuyou
Ekiben
両面 (ryoumen) = both sides
車両 (sharyou) = train carriage

め is used to tell the order. Here are examples.
入院して7日目に Nyuuin shite nanoka me ni. On the seventh day after one's admission to a hospital
入会者は彼で10人目だ Nyuukaisha wa kare de juu-nin me da. He was the tenth member to join.
彼女はうちから3軒目の家に住んでいる Kanojyo wa uchi kara san-ken me no ni ni sunde iru.
She lives three doors from my house.
薬局は銀行から3軒目だ Yakkyoku wa ginko kara san-ken me da.
The pharmacy is the third shop from the bank.
彼が生まれてから3年目に母親が死んだ Kare ga umarete kara san-nen me ni hahao ya ga shinda.
His mother died three years after he was born.
ケネディは何代目の大統領ですか Kennedy wa nandai me no daitouryou desu ka?
How many presidents were there before Kennedy?
上野は何番目の駅ですか (Ueno wa nanban me no eki desu ka?) How many stations are there between here and Ueno?

What time is the bus? Nanji no basu?
What time is the train? Nanji no densha?
How long does it take? Dono kurai kakarimasu ka?

TAXIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please take me to [PLACE]. [PLACE] made onegai shimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie: Please take me to Harajuku. Harajuku made onegai shimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I would like to go to [PLACE]. [PLACE] made ikitai no desu ga.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie: I would like to go to Omote-sando. Omote-sando made ikitai no desu ga.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much would it cost to go to [PLACE]? [PLACE] made ikura kakarimasu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie: How much would it cost to go to Shinjuku? Shinjuku made ikura kakarimasu ka?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please take me to [this place].
Please go to Mita first, then Ebisu.
I will show you the way.
I will show you the way when we get closer.
Please go fast.
A shortcut
By short cut.
Please stop here.
Here is fine.
Please tell me a shortcut to the station.
I will bring money.
I will be back soon.
How much is the fare?
Could I have a receipt please?

| ie: How much would it cost to go to Shinjuku? Shinjuku made ikura kakarimasu ka? |
| ie: How much would it cost to go to Shinjuku? Shinjuku made ikura kakarimasu ka? |
| [Showing map] Koko onegaishimasu. |
| Mazu Mita, sorekara Ebisu. |
| Watashi ga oshiemasu. |
| Chikaku ni tsuitara oshiemasu. |
| Hayaku onegai shimasu. |
| Chikamichi |
| Chikimachi de. |
| Koko de tomete kudasai. |
| Koko de kekkou desu. |
| Eki e no chikamichi o oshieta kudasai |
| Okane o motte kimasu. |
| Sugu modorimasho. |
| Ryoukin wa ikura desu ka? |
| Ryoushuusho o onegaishimasu. |
Travelling

Table of Contents

Excuse me. From what platform can I get the train headed for Shinjuku?

Does this train stop at Ginza?

One’s destination

What can you do in Guam?

Sumimasen. Shinjuku-yuki wa nanban-sen desu ka?

Ginza de tomarimasu ka?

Ikisaki

Guam de nani ga dekimasuka?

Using buses and taxis

Does this train go to XY?

Signboard (on train platforms)

Timetable

Train track

Entrance/exit area

Through…

Destination

Kono densha wa XY made ikimasu ka?

Keijiban

Jikokuhyou

Senro

Norioriguchi

tsuuka

Mokutekichi

Train platform

Ticket gate

All day pass

Traffic jam

Delay

Densha no houmu

Kaisatsu

Ichinichiken

Koutsuu juutai

Chien

Where is the busstop for XY?

Kiosk/shop/newsstand

Seat for senior citizens

Police office

Zebra crossing

Sidewalk, walkway

Railway crossing

Diagonally across

Baiten

Yuusen seki

Keisatsucho

Oudan hodou

hodou

Fumikiri

Hasu mukai

XY yuki basutei wa doko desu ka?

Smart (IC) card

Public restrooms

Traffic lights

Pedestrian overpass

Road

(Straight) across

Can you go with me? Tsurete itte kudasai?

Aishii kaado

Koushuu toire

Shingooki

Oudan hodoukyou

Shadou

Mukai

Buying express train tickets

One ticket to Kyoto on the next Hikari shink, please. Tsugi no hikari de Kyoto made ichimai kudasai.

The train is full. But there are seats on the train leaving at 26 minutes past.

OK, I'll take that.

I don't know what time I'll be returning, so make it unreserved.

Can I get a refund?

Man'in desu ne. Niju-roppun nara seki ga arimasu ga

Ja, onegai shimasu.

Kaeri no jikan ga mada wakarani no de, jiyuseki ni shite kudasai.

Harai-modoshi (refund) ga dekimasuka?

Missing a train

If you missed the train, ask a station official if you can ride the next train.

I missed the train.

Can I go on the next train with these tickets?

Ressha ni noriokurute shimatta.

Kono kippu nara tsugi ni noremasu ka?

On the train

Is this seat free?

Aite masu ka?
**HOTELS, ACCOMMODATION**

**Table of Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accommodation</th>
<th>Shukuhaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Western-style hotel</td>
<td>Hoteru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese inn</td>
<td>Ryokan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family-run guesthouse</td>
<td>Minshuku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business/no-frills hotel</td>
<td>Bijinesu hoteru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Do you have a (single/double..) room?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Shinguru/Dabaru...) wa arimasu ka?</th>
<th>Watashi wa ... o onegaishimasu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A single room</td>
<td>Shinguru no heya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A double room</td>
<td>Daburu no heya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twin</td>
<td>Tsuin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western style room</td>
<td>You shitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese style room</td>
<td>Wa shitsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With a bath**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yokushitsu tsuki no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**With a shower**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shawaa tsuki no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**For one night**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ippaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**For 2 nights**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nihaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**For one night, two days**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ippaku futsuka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**For two nights, three days**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nihaku mikka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**For two adults and one child.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Otono futari, kodomo hitori onegaishimasu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**May I see the room?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heya o mite mo ii desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**How much is it per night?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ippaku ikura desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Do you have anything (larger/cheaper)?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motto (ookii/yasui) no wa arimasu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**That's fine.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kekkou desu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**I'll take it.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sore de onegai shimasu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**[STAFF] How many nights?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nanpaku desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**I'm sorry, we are full.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moushiwake gozaiamsen.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**It's half price for children.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Okosama wa hangaku de gozaimasu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Shower**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Furo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Makura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haburashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagasode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimsuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short sleeve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Checking in**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yoyaku o shita (Walsh) desu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Could you bring the luggage in?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nimotsu o hakonde kudasai.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**[STAFF] Please fill in this form.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kono youshi ni go-kinuyu kudasai.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What time is breakfast?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chuushoku wa nanji desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**I would like to leave my valuables at the front desk.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Furonto ni kichouhin o azuketain desu ga.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Could you recommend a restaurant?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restauran o suisen shite kudasai.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Would you order me a taxi, please?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Takushii o yonde kudasai.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What is the check out time?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chekku outo wa nanji desu ka?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Hotel words and expressions**

**Table of Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accommodation</th>
<th>Shukuhaku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Western-style hotel</td>
<td>Hoteru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese inn</td>
<td>Ryokan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family-run guesthouse</td>
<td>Minshuku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business/no-frills hotel</td>
<td>Bijinesu hoteru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Temple offering accommodation
Campsite
Japanese-style room (with futon)
Western-style hotel (with bed)
Breakfast
Lunch
Dinner
Is (breakfast/dinner) included?
Does it come with a (bathroom/shower)?
A room with a view.
Public telephone

Japanese style toilet
Western style toilet
Ceiling
Screen door with grids
Alcove
Pillow
Sheets
Cleaning
Laundry
Heating
Tap
Blinds
Light bulb
Emergency exit

Please exchange it.
Please fix it.
Make a reservation.

PROBLEMS

Someone has locked the door.
The (door/key) doesn’t work.
There is a problem with the (air con/phone).
There is no [object, ie: soap].
I don’t know how to operate the [object].

How do you use the [object]?

Hot springs, onsen, Japanese inns

Table of Contents

HOT SPRINGS, ONSEN

Outdoor hot springs Rotenburo
Towel Tenugui
Bath chair Furoisu
Mens bath Otokoyu
Mixed bath Kon-yoku

Steam Yuge
Hot water Yu
(water) Tub Oke
Womens bath On-nayu
Large communal bath Dai yokujou
JAPANESE INNS

I’m Jon. I have a reservation
Do you have a room with an outdoor hot spring?
Do I eat dinner in my room?

Japanese style room  Washitsu
Bathrobe        Yukata
Family bath     Kazoku buro
Large bath      Daiyokujou
Key             Kagi

Japanese Western room  Wayoushitsu
Heated table      Kotatsu
Sashimi boat      Funamori

INSIDE A ROOM IN A JAPANESE INN

Safe             Kinko
Floor chair      Zaisu
Low dining table Zataku
Japanese-style closet Oshire
Emergency exit   Hijouguchi
Proprietoress    Okami
Please put the futon mattress away.
Breakfast        Choushoku

Flat floor cushion  Zabuton
Tatami mat        Tatami
Sweet served with green tea Chagashi
Paper doors       Shouji
Party hall        Enkaijou
Maid             Nakaisan
Futon o agete kudasai.
Slipper          Surippa

Using the in-room telephone

Front desk.  Furonto
Outside line  Gaisen
Room service  Roomu saabisu

If you need something, phone either the front desk or room service:
Hello? This is room 303. Can you bring a beer?
Moshi moshi. Sanbyakusan gooshitsu desu ga. Biiru o motte kite kudasai.

For tomorrow morning, can we have western-style breakfasts?
A term, a period of time
I want to extend the duration of my stay.
Campsite

Hello? This is room 303. Can you bring a beer?
Moshi moshi. Sanbyakusan gooshitsu desu ga. Biiru o motte kite kudasai.

For tomorrow morning, can we have western-style breakfasts?
A term, a period of time
I want to extend the duration of my stay.
Campsite

Checking out & paying the bill & paying a bill

I’d like to (check out/pay the bill) please.
How much is it in total?
I think there is a mistake.
What is this charge for?
I haven’t used the [object].

Tariff
Service charge
Tax
Discount rate
Excess charge/surcharge
Telephone charge

(Ryousou auto/shiharai) o onegai shimasu.
Zenbu de ikura desu ka?
Machigai ga arimasu.
Kono ryoukin wan an desu ka?
[Object] wa tsukatte imasen.

Ryoushinsyou
Saabisurryou
Zeikin
Waribiki ryoukin
Chouka/warimashi ryoukin
Denwa ryoukin
ASKING AND GIVING DIRECTIONS

Table of Contents

➢ Which way to [PLACE]?
   ie: Which way to the bank?
   ie: Which way to the train station?
   ie: Which way to the school?

➢ I want to go to [PLACE].
   ie: I want to go to Tokyo.

Excuse me. Where is [PLACE]?
ie: Excuse me. Where is the Bank of Tokyo?

It is by the station.

Have you seen [OBJECT]?

Can I ask you a question?
Can you please tell me how to get to [PLACE]?

ORIENTATION POINTS

Table of Contents

City
Urban city
Town
Path
Street
Main street
Countryside
Bridge
Traffic lights
Crossroads
Sidewalk/pavement
Footpath
Motorway, expressway
Map

This way
The next...
The next traffic lights...
First
Second
Third
The second...
The second crossroads...
Please go to the next town
Bend, wind, turn

Toshi / Shi
Tokai
Machi
Michi
Dori/michi/touri
Oodoori
Inaka
Hashi
Shingou
Kosaten
Hodou
Kousoku-douru
Chizu
Kocchi
...tsugi no
...tsugi no shingou
Ichiba
Ichi
banme
Ni
banme
Sam
banme
...nibanme no
...nibanme no kosaten
Tsugi
no
mach
i
ni
itte
kudasi
Magaru

District
City Block
Neighbourhood
Road
Place/spot
Sky
Sora
Prefecture
Ken
Village
Corner
Pedestrian bridge
Railroad crossing

Ku
Chome
Hen
Michi/shadou
Tokoro
Moon
Tsuki
Star
Hoshi
Sato
Kado
Oodan-hodou, hodoukyou
Fumikiri

North
South
East
West
That way

Kita
Minami
Higashi
Nishi
Socchi
Example sentences:
That area
This area
In this area
In this area there are lots of café’s.
In this area there is a museum.
In this area there is a large bathhouse.

GIVING DIRECTIONS

Table of Contents

To go straight on
NOTE: Think of ‘o’ in this case as acting like ‘at’

(Please) go…..
Straight on
A little way
Please go straight on.
Please go a little way.
Please come a little way.
Please go straight on at the crossroads.
Please go straight on at the next crossroads.
Go straight at the traffic lights.

To turn
(Please) turn…..
Right
Left
Please turn (to the) right.
Please turn (to the) left.
Don’t turn
Cross
Please turn left at the traffic lights.
Turn right at the crossroads.
Turn left at the next corner.
Please turn left at the second set of traffic lights.

You can link two directions simply by leaving out the first ‘kudasai’.
Thus, massugu itte kudasai + shingo o migi ni magette kudasai becomes:
Massugu itte, shingo o migi ni magette kudasai.

Please turn right at the third corner.
Please go straight at the second big department store. Nibanme no ookii deparo o massugu itte kudasai.
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Naka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above/surface/topside</td>
<td>Ue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behind, at the back</td>
<td>Ushiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In front of</td>
<td>Mae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beside/in neighbourhhood/ by</td>
<td>Soba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooftop</td>
<td>Okujou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground</td>
<td>Chika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below</td>
<td>Shita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Soto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near here</td>
<td>Kono chikaku ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opposite (side)</td>
<td>Mukaigawa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far</td>
<td>Tooi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over there / beyond (pointing)</td>
<td>Mukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>Mannaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Around</td>
<td>Mawari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between</td>
<td>Aida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Across from X X</td>
<td>No mukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not far</td>
<td>Tokunai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Go left
- In: no naka ni
- To the left of: no hidari ni/de
- In front of: no mae ni/de
- By: no soba/tonari
- Between: no aida ni
- Going up: o agaru

### Go right
- Out of: no soto e/ni
- To the right of: no migi ni/de

### Behind
- Across from: no mukouga na ni
- Next to: no tonari ni
- Going down: o sagaru

### Other examples:
- Near to: Chikaku
- Next to: Tonari/Yoka
- Next to the …: ….no tonari
- Next to the bank:
  - The post office is next to the bank.
  - The nearest
  - Where is the nearest [PLACE]?  Ichiban chikai
  - Where is the nearest police box?
  - Excuse me, where is the nearest bakery?
- Left hand side
- Right hand side
- The department store is opposite the bank. Depaato wa ginko no mukaigawa desu.
- The supermarket is next to the station. Suupa wa eki no tonari desu.
- Other examples:
  - There are lots of stores around the station Eki no mawari ni mise ga takusan arimasu.
  - The parking lot is behind the building. Chuushajou wa tatemono no ushiro ni arimasu.
  - There is a park beside my house. Ie no soba ni kouen ga arimasu.
  - The cafe is by the station, you know. Cafe wa eki no soba ni arimasu yo.
  - The toilet is beside the exit. Toire wa deguchi (exit) no soba ni arimasu.
  - The PO is between the bank and the police box. Yuubinkyouku wa ginkou to koban no aida ni arimasu.
  - There is a dog under the table. Teberu no shita ni inu ga imasu.
  - The book is on top of the table. Hon wa teberu no ue ni arimasu.
John is **inside** the house.
The PO is **near** the station.
The cat is **under** the table.
The bank is **in front of** the station.

**In front of** the station.
**Behind** the station.
**Next to** the station.
**To the right of** the station.
**To the left of** the station.
**Inside** the station.
**Outside** the station.
**Near** the station.
**On the way to** the station.

John-san wa uchi no **naka** ni imasu.
Yuubinkyouku wa eki no **chikaku** ni arimasu.
Neko wa teberu no **shita** ni imasu.
Ginkou wa eki no **mae** ni arimasu.

Eki no **mae** ni
Eki no **ushiro** ni
Eki no **tonari** ni
Eki no **migi** ni
Eki no **hidari** ni
Eki no **naka** ni
Eki no **soto** ni
Eki no **soba (chikaku)** ni
Eki no **tochuu** ni
# FAMILIES, PEOPLE and KIDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Own family</strong></th>
<th><strong>Someone else’s family</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Own family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husband</td>
<td>Kazoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wife</td>
<td>Shujin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father</td>
<td>Chichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother</td>
<td>Haha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents/Parent</td>
<td>Ryoshin/Oya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father / Mother</td>
<td>Fubo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father &amp; son or</td>
<td>Oyako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male and female</td>
<td>Danjo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eldest daughter</td>
<td>Choujo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daughter</td>
<td>Musume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Son</td>
<td>Musuko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby</td>
<td>Akachan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child</td>
<td>Kodomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eldest child</td>
<td>Ichiban ue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd child</td>
<td>Nibanme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd child</td>
<td>Sanbanme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibling, sister, brother</td>
<td>Kyoudai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister</td>
<td>Shimai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older brother</td>
<td>Ani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older sister</td>
<td>Ane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Younger sister</td>
<td>Imooto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Younger brother</td>
<td>Ootoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncle</td>
<td>Oji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt</td>
<td>Oba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandfather</td>
<td>Sofu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>Sobo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandparents</td>
<td>Sofubo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandchildren</td>
<td>Mago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandson</td>
<td>Magomusuko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granddaughter</td>
<td>Magomusume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niece</td>
<td>Mei, meigosan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephew</td>
<td>Oi, oigosan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cousin</td>
<td>Itoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandparents</td>
<td>So kubo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great grandparents</td>
<td>So So kubo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married couple</td>
<td>Fuufu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second cousin</td>
<td>Hatoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relatives</td>
<td>Shinseki, enja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twins</td>
<td>Futago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triplets</td>
<td>Mitsugo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girl, woman, lady</td>
<td>Joshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boy, man, son</td>
<td>Danshi -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friend</td>
<td>Tomodachi/Muujin/Shinyuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighbour</td>
<td>Tonari no hito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girlfriend</td>
<td>Kanojo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man/male</td>
<td>Dansee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father-in-law</td>
<td>Giri no chichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Friendship</strong></td>
<td>Yuukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boyfriend</strong></td>
<td>Kareshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Woman/female</strong></td>
<td>Josee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lover</strong></td>
<td>Koibito</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* There is no direct Japanese equivalent for ‘brother’.
FAMILY, PEOPLE AND KIDS

Table of Contents

Parent
Adult
Pregnant
Girl/boyfriend
Acquaintance
Neighbour
Married
Single
Marriage
Wedding
Unmarried / single
Divorce, separation
Divorced
Single men
Kindergarten
Young person
Old person

My older brother's name is Chris.
My mother's name is Eileen.
I have 2 younger sisters.

How many people are in your family?
There are [x] people in my family.
ie: There are five people in my family.
Q: How many brothers and sisters have you got?
A: I have 2 older sisters.
This person is my mother.
My mother is a doctor.
(Her) hobby is reading.

Age

How old are you/he/she?

50 years old.
Happy Birthday!
Date of birth
Congratulations (Birthdays, Weddings, New Years, etc)
My birthday is July 8th

I was born on May 5th, 1965.

Sai

Oikutsu desu ka? (polite)
Nansai desu ka? (more casual)
Go-ju sai. (Rule: simply attach ‘sai’ to the age number)
Tanjoubi omedetou!
Seinengappi -
Omedetou gozaimasu!
Watashi no tanjoubi wa shichi-gatsu hachi-nichi.
[ My birthday July 8th ]
Watashi wa senkyuu hyaku roku juu go nen no go gatsu
itsuka ni umaremashita.
Baby/Childcare

Thank you for taking care of [Serena]. Serena o mite itadaki arigatou gozaimshita.

Can you take care of [Serena]? Serena o mite itadakemasuka?

Types of nursery (hoikuen)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accredited</th>
<th>Ninshou, Nintei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unlicensed</td>
<td>Ninkagai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninshou hoikuen</td>
<td>Private facilities provided by Tokyo Metropolitan Government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ichiji hoiku</td>
<td>Flexible part-time care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninka hoikuen</td>
<td>Nurseries adhering to nationwide standards with fully qualified staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kindergarten</td>
<td>Youchien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kindergarten kid</td>
<td>Youchienji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior High School</td>
<td>Chuugakkou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senior High School</td>
<td>Koutougakkou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University</td>
<td>Daigaku</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Japan, school begins in April. Nihon de wa gakkou wa shigatsu ni hajimarimasu.

A classmate Doukyuusei

BABY & CHILDBIRTH-RELATED TERMS

(to be) pregnant Ninshin suru
(to) implant Ishoku suru
Artificial insemination Jinkou jusei
Birth canal Sandou
Birth control Hi-nin/Sanji seigen
Birth control pill Hi-nin yaku
Breast feeding Bonyuu eiyou
Contraction Shuu shuku
Date of birth Seinen gappi
Delivery (childbirth) Shussan / Bunben
Delivery room Bunben shitsu
Egg (ovum) Ranshi
Expecting date Yotelbi
Fertility Jusei ritsu
Incubator Hoiku ki
Infertility Fu-nin shou
Insemination Jusei ritsu
Labour pain Jintsuu
Last stage Makki
Natural childbirth  Shizen bunben
Pregnancy test  Ninshin tesuto
Premature baby  Mijuku ji
Premature birth  Souzan
Reproductive system tests  Sei-shokki kikan kensa
Sperm  Seishi
Low birth rate  Shoushika
To return to work  Shigoto ni fukki suru
Maternity leave  Sankyuu
Parenting leave (mothers and fathers)  Ikuji kyuuka

BIRTH

Are you expecting?  Omedeta desu ka?
To be pregnant  Ninshin suru
Mother's pocketbook (medical records)  Boshi techou
Obstetrics and gynecology  Sanfujinka
Birth, delivery  O-san
Delivery room  Bunben shitsu
To be present at the birth  O-san ni tachiau

BABIES

Breast feeding  Bonyuu
Formula, milk preparation  Miruku
Feeding bottle  Honyuubin
To breastfeed a baby  Oppai o yaru
To drink from the breast  Oppai o nomu
Weaning, solid food  Rinyuushoku
Baby car  Bagii
Car seat  Chairudo shiito

CHILD ACCIDENTS & SEEING THE DOCTOR

Fall/en down stairs  Kaidan kara ochi(ru/ta)
Fell over  Korobimashita
Take care of, look after  Azukarimasu
I'll come and pick you up.  Mukae ni ikimasu.
Please come and pick me up.  Mukae ni kite kudasai.
An [object] is stuck in my throat.  [Object] ga nodo ni sasarimashita.
Something seems to be wrong with my child.  Kodomo no yousu ga okashii-n desu.
S/he doesn’t drink as much milk as s/he should.  Miruku o omou you ni nonde kuremasen.
Thermometer  Taion kei

CHILDHOOD ILLNESSES and MEDICAL TERMS

Tonsillitus  Hentou sen
Bronchitus  Kikanshien
Measles  Hashika
Mumps  Otafuku-kaze
Atopic dermatitis  Atopii
Tetanus  Hashoufu
Medical check up  Kenkou shindan
Influenza  Infurensa
Pneumonia  Haien
Chicken pox  Mizubousou
Infantile asthma  Shouni zensoku
Whooping cough  Hyakunichi-zeki
Fracture  Kossetsu
Vaccination  Yobou sesshu
DTP vaccine (diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis)  Sanshukongou wakuchin
MMR vaccine (measles, mumps, rubella)  Shin-sanshukongou wakuchin
Vaccination  Yobou sesshu

CHILDREN'S PLAY

The rough and tumble of children's play knows no language barrier. Here's some basic words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swing</td>
<td>Buranko</td>
<td>Slide</td>
<td>Zuberidai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing frame</td>
<td>Untei</td>
<td>Seesaw</td>
<td>Shisou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climb</td>
<td>Noboru (nobotte)</td>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>Nageru (nagete)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch</td>
<td>Uketoru (uketotte)</td>
<td>Bounce</td>
<td>Hazumaseru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(hazumasete)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall</td>
<td>Ochiru (ochita / ochitae)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hashite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kick</td>
<td>Keru (kette)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FOR KIDS:

Can I join in?    Irete / mazete?
Can I borrow this?  Kashite?
Take turns!    Junban dai yo
Not fair     Zurio / ijiwaru
Appetite    Shokuyoku ← add to health section?
Parents group Fubo-kai
Hurry up and get ready! Isoide voui shinasai! ← check with H

KIDS, TOY STUFF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>e (an image, not a photo)</td>
<td>Marker pens</td>
<td>Majiku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balloon</td>
<td>Fuusen</td>
<td>Crayon</td>
<td>Kureyon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glue</td>
<td>Nori / bondo</td>
<td>Blocks</td>
<td>Tsumiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) build</td>
<td>Tateru</td>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>Kiru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candles</td>
<td>Rousoku</td>
<td>Toy</td>
<td>O-mocha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic bib</td>
<td>Purashitiku sty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FOR PARENTS

That's a good boy/girl  O-rikou-san

ADMING A BABY

Isn't she cute? Hasn't she grown.  Kawaii desu ne. Ookiku narimashita ne.
Doesn't she look like her father! Otousan ni nite imasu ne.
Yes, everyone says so.  Ee, minna ni iwareun' desu.
Are you going back to work? Shigoto ni fukki shimasu ka?
Yes, at last I found a place in a nursery…. Hai, youyaku hoikuen o mitsukete,
…and plan to go back to work next month. Raigetsu kara kaisha ni modoru yotei na no.

ASKING ABOUT A KINDERGARTEN

Which kindergarten does Megumi go to? Megumi-chan wa doko no yochien e kayotte irun desu ka?
Why don't you ask? Kitte mitara dou desu ka?
**INTRODUCING YOURSELF**

You may be asked to introduce yourself at kindergarten or school.

I am Serena's father. Seri-chan no papa desu.
I came from NZ 10 years ago. Juu-nen mae, NZ kara mairimashita.

**PHONING THE KINDERGARTEN/SCHOOL**

Kindergarten teacher Hobo(san)

This is Serena's father. Serena is in Sumere class. Sumere gumi no Serena-chan no papa desu
Serena has a temperature so I'd like to keep her out of kindergarten/school today. Kodomo ga netsu o dashimashita node, kyou wa yasumasetai to omoimasu.
[Staff]: I see. I hope he feels better. Wakarimashita. O-daiji ni.

**WRITING AN ABSENCE NOTE**

Because the family is going out of town, Ashita (kinyoubi) kazoku de dekakeru no de,
..please excuse Serena from school tomorrow. Serena o yasumasete kudasai.

**MEETING YOUR CHILD'S TEACHER**

Excuse me, I'd like to see Mr. Yamada. Gomen kudasai. Yamada sensei, onegai shimasu.
We're much obliged to you. Could I have a word with you? Itsumo o-sewa ni natte orimasu. Chotto go-soudan shitai koto ga arimashite.....
OK. Let's go to the classroom. Hai. Kyoushitsu e ikimashou.
Well, what would you like to discuss? Dewa, douzo o-hanashi kudasai.
John is depressed these days....... John ga konogoro shizunde ite.....
...he's not the same as usual, so I've been worried. ...yousu ga itsumo to chigau mono desu kara, ki ni natte

**IN SCHOOL**

**Table of Contents**

**SCHOOLS**

Elementary school students Shougakusei
Middle and high school students Chuugakusei, Koukousei
Field (sports) day Undoukai
I was absent from school yesterday because of a cold. Kinou, kaze de gakkou o yasunda.
Principal Kouchou sensei
Gym Taiikukan
Chalk Chouku

**SCHOOL ROOMS**

Gym Taiikukan
Boy's toilet Danshi toire
Music room Ongakushitsu
Classroom Kyoushitsu

Girl's toilet Jyoshi toire
Lunch room Shokudou
Office Jimusho
Flag Hata
Desk  Tsukue
Bulletin board  Keijiban
Board (ie: black)  Kokuban

SUBJECTS
Accounting  =>  Kaikeigaku
Art  Geijutsu
Business  Sho'bai
Chemistry  Kagaku
Dance  Hitosashi
Foreign Languages  Gaikokushu
Geography  Chirigaku
Geometry  Kikagaku
MATHS  Suugaku
Physical Education  Taiiku
Politic Science  Seijigaku

To study  Benkyo suru
To learn  Naraimanabu
To teach  Oshieru

That child attends a nearby elementary school  Ano ko wa chikaku no shougakkou ni **kayotte iru**.
Sixth grader  Rokunensai
Sixth grader in elementary school  Shougaku rokunensei

ROCK, PAPER, SCISSORS – "Jan ken"
**Jan, ken, pon!**  Rock (gu)  Scissors (choki)  Paper (pa)

PRE-SCHOOL
Nursery  Hoikujo/hoikuen
Kindergarten  Yochien
School outing  Ensoku

GRADE SCHOOL
Entrance ceremony  Nyuugaku-shiki
Knapsack, satchel  Randoseru
To go to school  Toukou suru
Class  Kumi
Class one of third grade  San-nen ichi kumi
Sports day  Undokai
Lesson  Jugyou
Day when parents watch a class  Sankanbi
School lunch  Kyuushoku
Report card  Seisekihyou / tsuushinbo
After-school hours  Houkago
Lessons (in piano, judo, etc.)  o-keiko / nariagoto

JUNIOR HIGH / HIGH SCHOOL
Club activities  Bukatsu
Taking entrance exams  Juken
School entrance exams  Nyuugaku shiken
Back up choice of school  Suberidome
Refusing to go to school  Toukou kyoji
Bullying
School violence
Graduation ceremony

Ijime
Kounai bouryoku
Sotsugyoushiki
## PARTS OF THE BODY

### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART</th>
<th>JAPANESE</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arm</td>
<td>Ude</td>
<td>Heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>Hara</td>
<td>Head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ankle</td>
<td>Ashikubi/Ku</td>
<td>Heel(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back</td>
<td>Senaka</td>
<td>Hip(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backside</td>
<td>Oshiri</td>
<td>Legs/feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beard</td>
<td>Agohige</td>
<td>Lower back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>brain =&gt; no'zui, zuno</td>
<td>Lips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>Chi</td>
<td>Mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>Karada</td>
<td>Muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Mune</td>
<td>Mustache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf</td>
<td>Fukurahagi</td>
<td>Wrist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>Mune</td>
<td>Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chin</td>
<td>Ago</td>
<td>Nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ears</td>
<td>Mimi</td>
<td>Gaiji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External ear</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chuuji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle ear</td>
<td></td>
<td>Naiji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner ear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbow</td>
<td>Hiji</td>
<td>Oesophagus/gullet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Hada</td>
<td>Shin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyelashes</td>
<td>Matsuge</td>
<td>Spine/backbone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyebrows</td>
<td>Mayuge</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>Teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finger</td>
<td>Yubi</td>
<td>Thigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forehead</td>
<td>Hitai</td>
<td>Throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand</td>
<td>Te</td>
<td>Toe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair</td>
<td>Kami no ke</td>
<td>Tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Waist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yo'bu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART</th>
<th>JAPANESE</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Left hand</td>
<td>Hidarite</td>
<td>Right hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Lifeline'</td>
<td>Seimeisen</td>
<td>Finger/toe nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thumb</td>
<td>Oyayubi</td>
<td>Index finger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle finger</td>
<td>Nakayubi</td>
<td>Ring finger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little finger</td>
<td>Koyubi</td>
<td>Finger nail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INTERNAL ORGANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART</th>
<th>JAPANESE</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>Chuusui</td>
<td>Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Nou</td>
<td>Kanzou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>Shinzou</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungs</td>
<td>Hai</td>
<td>Kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestine</td>
<td>Chou</td>
<td>Small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spleen</td>
<td>Hizou</td>
<td>Colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreas</td>
<td>Suizou</td>
<td>Rectum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I've **put on** a little weight recently.  

**BODY ACTION VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wash my face</th>
<th>Kao o arau</th>
<th>Take a bath</th>
<th>ofuro ni hairu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brush my teeth</td>
<td>Ha o migaku</td>
<td>Comb my hair</td>
<td>kami o tokasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sneeze</td>
<td>Kushami (o) suru</td>
<td>Blow my nose</td>
<td>Hana o kamu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chew</td>
<td>Kamu</td>
<td>Yawn</td>
<td>Akubi (o) suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scratch my back</td>
<td>Senaka kaku</td>
<td>Stretch my arms</td>
<td>Ude o nobasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clap my hands</td>
<td>Te o tataku</td>
<td>Bend my knees</td>
<td>Hiza o mageru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wink</td>
<td>Wiinku suru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MOVING, MOVEMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Around</th>
<th>mawari o…(aruite)</th>
<th>Between</th>
<th>aida o…(aruite)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Over</td>
<td>ue o… (nobote)</td>
<td>Under</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Through</td>
<td>toori mekete</td>
<td>Crawl</td>
<td>hau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump</td>
<td>tobu (&lt;-- 'te' form? Ask H)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Describing a person –**

NAME-wa n  ga A1 desu  (where n is the body part)

*ie:* Dave has a **big mouth.**  
Dave-san wa **kuchi** ga **ookii** desu.

Yamada has a **long hair.**  
Yamada-san wa **kami** ga **nagai** desu.

**About this size** (also useful for describing objects).  
Kono **kurai**

**FEELINGS – adjectives that describe feelings** -  **shimasu**

**Table of Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glad</th>
<th>Ureshii</th>
<th>Sad</th>
<th>Kanashii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delightful</td>
<td>Tanoshii</td>
<td>Hateful</td>
<td>Nikui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashamed/embarrassed</td>
<td>Hazukashii</td>
<td>Enviable</td>
<td>Urayamashii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pained/Trying</td>
<td>Tsurai</td>
<td>Regrettable</td>
<td>Oshii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fearful</td>
<td>Kowai</td>
<td>Terrible</td>
<td>Osoroshii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Likable</td>
<td>Sukina</td>
<td>Dislikable</td>
<td>Kiraina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disappointing</td>
<td>Zannenna</td>
<td>Anxious</td>
<td>Shinpaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incredible</td>
<td>Fushigina</td>
<td>Skillful</td>
<td>Jozuna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excited</td>
<td>Koufun suru</td>
<td>Bored</td>
<td>Taikutsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizzy</td>
<td>Kurakura / Furafura suru</td>
<td>Surprised</td>
<td>Odoraku</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

I envy you.  
Anata ga **urayamashii** desu.

I feel **pained (trying)** at parting.  
Wakare ga **tsurai** desu.

I fear a ghost.  
Obake ga **kowai** desu.

I am **surprised** as I saw a snake  
Hebi o mite **bikuri** shimasu.

Disappointment – I failed the exam.  
Shiken ni ochi de **gakkari** shimasu.

Enchanted – I was enchanted by the fireworks.  
Hanabi (fireworks) o mitte **uttori** shimasu.

Irritated, nervous, impatient - I am irritated.  
**Iraira** shimasu.

Uneasy - I am uneasy.  
**Harahara** shimasu.

Excited – I am excited.  
**Dokidoki** shimasu.
Over-excited – I am over-excited/looking forward to.  **Wakuwaku** shimasu.

**N ga suru / shimasu**
This form is used to express that one feels something.  **N** is something that stimulates one of the 5 senses.

I smell something strange.  
Hen na nioi ga shimasu.  

Don’t you hear a baby crying?  
Akachan no naite iru koe ga shimasen ka?

**PERSONAL CONDITION**

**Table of Contents**

I'm thirsty.  
Nodo ga kawaite imasu.  

I'm hungry.  
Onaka ga suite imasu.  

I'm full.  
Onaka ga ippai desu.  

I'm tired.  
Tsukarete imasu.  

I'm sleepy.  
Nemui desu.  

I'm sick.  
Byouki desu.  

I'm fine.  
Genki desu.  

I'm all right.  
Daijoubu desu.

**Expressing emotions**

I feel XX.  Watashi wa XX to kanjimasu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disappointed</th>
<th>Gakkari shita</th>
<th>Happy</th>
<th>Shiawase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tired</td>
<td>Tsukareta</td>
<td>Sad</td>
<td>Kanashii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glad / satisfied</td>
<td>Ureshii / manzoku shita</td>
<td>Comfortable</td>
<td>Kaiteki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lonely</td>
<td>Sabishii</td>
<td>What should I do?</td>
<td>Dou shiyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good luck!</td>
<td>Kouun o!</td>
<td>I can’t believe it!</td>
<td>Shinjirarenai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darn!/Damn!</td>
<td>Shimaatta!</td>
<td>Nice!</td>
<td>Yatta!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felt frustrated</td>
<td>Kuyashikatta</td>
<td>← ask H for ‘masu’ form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yawn  
Okubi o suru  
Cry / Don't cry  
Naku / Nakunai  

Angry  
Okotta  
Laugh  
Warau/Waratte  

Scared  
Kowai  
Frown  
Kao o shikameru

**PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS**

**Table of Contents**

Timid  
Okubyou na  
Brave  
Yuukan na  

Positive, active  
Sekkyokuteki na  
Negative  
Shoukyokuteki na  

Gloomy  
Kurai  
Cheerful  
Akarui  

Thoughtful  
Yasashii  
Generous  
Kimae ga ii  

Kind  
Shinsetsu na  
Strict  
Kibishii  

Clever, wise  
Kashikoi  
Charming  
Miryokuteki na
### BUSINESS

### IN THE OFFICE

**Table of Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Kaisha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office</td>
<td>Jimusho/Ofuuso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch Office</td>
<td>Shiten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>President’s office</td>
<td>Shachoushitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office Dining Room</td>
<td>Shainshokudou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small office/company</td>
<td>Shitenchou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interview</td>
<td>Mensetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lunchtime</td>
<td>Hiruyasumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting Room</td>
<td>Ousetsushitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head Office</td>
<td>Honshanka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reception</td>
<td>Uketsukei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting/conference</td>
<td>Kaigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference room</td>
<td>Kaigishitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business trip</td>
<td>Shuchou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pay</td>
<td>Kyuuryou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pay day</td>
<td>Kyuuryoubi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Repooto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RANKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chairman</th>
<th>Kaichou</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vice President</td>
<td>Falkushachou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Manager</td>
<td>Buchou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section Manager</td>
<td>Kachou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member, employee, staff</td>
<td>Shain (ie: IBM no shain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company employee</td>
<td>Kaishain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>President</th>
<th>Shachou</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Director</td>
<td>Torishimariyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Director</td>
<td>Joumo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary</td>
<td>Hisho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workmates</td>
<td>Kaisha no hito</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JOBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actor (m/f)</th>
<th>Haiyu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architect</td>
<td>Kenchikuka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banker</td>
<td>Ginko'in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpenter</td>
<td>Daiku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentist</td>
<td>Shikaishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrician</td>
<td>Denkiko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory worker</td>
<td>Ko'in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intern</td>
<td>Int'l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University employee</td>
<td>Daigaku shokuin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overtime work</td>
<td>Zangyou shimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-worker</td>
<td>Douryou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract</td>
<td>Keiyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architect</td>
<td>Kenchikushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting</td>
<td>Keiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human resources</td>
<td>Jinji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance</td>
<td>Kinyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing</td>
<td>Shuppan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil servant</td>
<td>Koumuin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advertising</td>
<td>Koukoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kindergarten</td>
<td>Youchien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class reunion</td>
<td>Kurasu-kai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accountant</td>
<td>Keikeishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attorney/lawyer</td>
<td>Dairinin / bengoshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business person</td>
<td>Jigyo'sha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer programmer</td>
<td>Purogurama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctor</td>
<td>Isha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineer</td>
<td>Gishi / enjineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair dresser</td>
<td>Headoressa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judge</td>
<td>Saibankan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researcher</td>
<td>Kenkyuusha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boss</td>
<td>Joushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salary</td>
<td>Kyuuryou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nurse</td>
<td>Kangoshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accountant</td>
<td>Kaikeishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>Eigyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Soumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service industry</td>
<td>Saabisugyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT firm</td>
<td>IT kigyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing</td>
<td>Seizougyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td>Kyouiku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining Engineer</td>
<td>Kouzan no gishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>End of year Party!</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I'm a XX…** Watashi wa XX desu.

**Teacher** Kyoushi

**Lawyer** Bengoshi
Hair stylist  Biyoushi  Accountant  Kaikeshi
Chef  Chourishi  Interpreter  Tsuuyaku
Secretary  Hisho  Driver  Untenshu
Fisherman  Nyoushi  Farmer  Nouka
Designer  Dezainaa  Athlete  Supootsu senshu
Salesperson  Hambaiin  Government worker  Koumin

**MISCELLANEOUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioner</td>
<td>Reibou/Airkon</td>
<td>Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document</td>
<td>Shorui</td>
<td>News</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eraser</td>
<td>Keshigomu</td>
<td>Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exam, test</td>
<td>Shiken</td>
<td>Part time job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory</td>
<td>Koujyou</td>
<td>PC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fax machine, message</td>
<td>Fakkusu</td>
<td>Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction manual</td>
<td>Setsumeisho</td>
<td>Punch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>Intaaneto</td>
<td>Rule, regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laptop</td>
<td>Laputopu</td>
<td>Scotch tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>Manyuaru</td>
<td>Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material/data/stuff</td>
<td>Shiryou</td>
<td>Stapler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memo, notes</td>
<td>Memo</td>
<td>Talk, conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Seniority in a company**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chairman</td>
<td>Kaichou</td>
<td>CEO, president</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive vice president</td>
<td>Fuku-shachou</td>
<td>Shachou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing director</td>
<td>Joumu</td>
<td>Senior managing director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senior manager</td>
<td>Jichou</td>
<td>Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supervisor</td>
<td>Shunin</td>
<td>Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTRODUCTIONS**

**My name is ---- (very polite)**
I'm glad to meet you.
Here's my card *(hand over your business card)*
May I have your card?

Who is that? *(polite)*
Do you know who that is? *(very polite)*
I would like to meet him/her.
Would you introduce me to him/her?
Pardon me, may I introduce myself?

**Watakushi no namae wa ------- desu.**
Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
Meishii o douzo.
Meishi o choudai dekimasu ka?

A: Bob of NTT Shoji
B: Sebastian of OK Insatsu
Good morning.

**Introducing yourself**

**Exchanging business cards**
A: Bob of NTT Shoji
B: Sebastian of OK Insatsu
Good morning.
Introducing people

My name is Jon and I'm from Business Grow.
How do you do? My name is Rob.
I'm very pleased to meet you. Let me introduce you.
This is Sato, from Sales.
Well, I've come to tell you about our new product.

Meeting someone for the first time

Table of Contents

How do you do / how are you?  Haijimamashite, o-genki desu ka?
My name is James Bond.    Watashi no namae wa James Bond desu.
I am from Auckland, New Zealand.                             Watashi wa New Zealand no Auckland kara desu.
Who is the manager?  Manager wa donata desu ka? (Donata is the polite word to ask who)
May I speak to Mr/Miss/Ms Yamada?  Yamada-san o onegaishimas(u).
Can I please speak to Mr/Mrs X?     X-san wa irasshaimasu ka? * It is asking if Mr/Mrs X is in.
Instead of asking to speak to, we ask if Mr/Mrs X is in.
Can I speak to somebody who can speak English?
Did you get my (fax/e-mail)?    Watashi no (fakks/denshi meiru) o uketorimashita ka?
Did you receive my [OBJECT, ie: CV]?  Watashi no [OBJECT, ie: CV = rirekisho] wa todoite imasu ka?
Thank you for calling me a short while ago
I called you on February 8th.
I called you last week.
I called you last month.
I e-mailed you on February 8th
I e-mailed you last week.
I e-mailed you last month.
What is [person's name] e-mail address and telephone number?
I'll call back later.
Starting a conversation

That's an unusual surname. Where are you from?
Mazurashii myouji desu ne. Dochira no go-shuushin desu ka?

How's business?
Bijinesu wa ikaga desu ka?

What's the situation like in your industry?
Gyoukai no keiki (economy) wa ikaga desu ka?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Ordinary form</th>
<th>Polite form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Your company</td>
<td>(anata no) kaisha</td>
<td>Onsha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our company</td>
<td>(uchi no) kaisha</td>
<td>Heisha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other words and expressions

Joining a company
Nyuusha
Kyounen no shigatsu ni nyuusha shimashita.
Shousha
Dairiten
Watashi wa koukoku daititen ni tsutomete imasu.
Haru kara honsha e tenkin ni narimashita.

Press conference
Kisha kaiken.

A model or sample
Mihon.

Evidence, testimony
Shougen.

Business, transactions, dealing
Torihiki.

Clients
Torihihiki.
Torihiakisaki (general term, not used when talking to them)
Ousetsushitsu.

Management
Keiei.

Aisatsu.

Nenmatsu no go-aisatsu.
Nenshi no go-aisatsu.

Long-standing relationship
Nagai tsukiai.

Negotiations (to negotiate)
Koushou (suru).

Quality
Hinshitsu.

Investment
Toushi.

Formation, conclusion
Seiritsu.

Holiday, day off.
Kyuujitsu.

Break, intermission
Kyuukei.

Lunch break
Hiru yasumi.

A guess or estimate
Kentou.

A speech or proposal
Hatsugen.

An opinion or idea
Iken.

Gratitude and apology

Expressions of gratitude

Thank you for your effort.
Otesu (Gomendo)o okake shimashita.

Thank you very much for your kindness.
Goshinsetsuni, arigato gozaimashita.

I am awfully grateful for your consideration.
Okokorozukai, osoreirimasu.

Thank you.
Sumimasen.
Farewell and goodbye

When you leave the office after work
I'm afraid I must say goodbye now. Osakini shiturei shimasu.
Thank you very much for your toil. Otsuka esamadeshita.

When you greet your boss who is going to be transferred for a higher position
Congratulations. Omedeto gozaimasu.
I wish you success in your endeavors. Masumasu no gokatsuyaku o oinori shite irimasu.

When you ask somebody for something
I'm sorry to give you trouble. Osore irimasu.
Allow me to make you a request. Onegaishimasu.
Would you please do --? -- o onegai dekimasennka.

Application:
Excuse me, but would you please sign your name. Osore irimasu, sain o onegaishimasu.
Would you please make a copy. Kopi o onegai dekisenka.

Expressions of declining
I'm very sorry but ... Moushiwake arimasen ga
Some other time, please. Matanokikaini onegaishimasu.
I refuse to do it. Okotowari itashimasu.

Application:
I'm sorry but I would like to consider the new product some other time.
Moushiwake arimasenga, sono shinseihin ni kanshishite wa mata nokikaini onegaishimasu.

From a close friend…
Thanks. I'm sorry but I've got something on that day. Arigatou. Warui kedo, sono hi ni yotei (plan) ga arun da yo.

More polite way to say the same thing…
Thank you. Unfortunately I have something to do that day. Arigatou gozaimashita. Zannen desu ga, sono hi ni chotto yotei (plan) ga arimashita.
Moushiwake gozaimashita.

How to refuse an invitation you've already accepted…
It's about our appointment tomorrow. Ashita no yakusoku no koto desu kedo.
Something urgent has cropped up and I won't be able to come. Kyuuyou ga dekite, shusseki (attendance) dekinaku nattan desu yo.
I'm very sorry. Hontou ni zannen desu ga.

Expressions of refusing a request
I'm sorry I don't know. (Polite way to say, Wakarimasen.- I don't know.) Wakarikanemasu.
I'm sorry I can't do it. (Polite way to say, Dekimasen.- I can't do it.) Itashikanemasu.

Expressions of making a proposal
What do you think?  
Do you have any opinion?  
I How about that?  

Dou omoimasuka.  
Nanika iken wa arimasenka.  
Ikagadeshouka.

Application:  
I would like to propose to install one PC per each person. How about that? Do you have any opinion?  

Hitotari (ichi) daino pasokon donyu o teian itashimasu.  
Ikaga deshoka? Nanika iken wa arimasenka?

NOTE – all the following end in ‘mashita’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Base Form</th>
<th>Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tanomu</td>
<td>Tanomimashita</td>
<td>REQUEST/ASK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotaeru</td>
<td>Kotaemashita</td>
<td>ANSWER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasou</td>
<td>Sasoumashita</td>
<td>INVITE/ASK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotowaru</td>
<td>Kotowarimashita</td>
<td>DECLINE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oreii o</td>
<td>Oreii o ii mashita</td>
<td>THANK/GRATITUDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kikimashita</td>
<td>QUESTION/ASK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kunai = Negative form of A(1)-i  
Katta = past tense  
Kunakatta = past negative tense

ANSWERING THE PHONE

Table of Contents

Hello.  
Company no [your name]  
ie: This is Jon from Business Grow.  
Tanabe’s telephone number is 3341 8989.  
I'll call back later.

Who would you like to speak to?  
May I have your name please?  
Would you repeat your name please?  
Hold on a second please!  
Thank you for waiting…  
I am afraid (Gary) is in a meeting.  
I will tell him that you called.

A: Bob of NTT Shoji picks up the phone.  
B: Sebastian of OK Insatsu who made the phone call.  
C: Manager Yamada of NTT Shoji

When you answer an outside call for somebody else

This is NTT Shoji, Eigyobu.  
NTT Shoji, eigyobu (sales/marketing dept.) de gozaimasu.

Is Manager Yamada in?  
May I ask whom I am talking to?  
I'm sorry. This is Sebastian of OK Insatsu.

You are Sebastian of OK Insatsu, aren't you?  
You want to speak to Mr. Yamada, don't you.
Please hold on.
Shosho o-machi kudasai.

I am sorry to have kept you waiting. This is Yamada.
Thank you very much for your generous patronage.
Omatase itashimashita Yamada desu.
Itsumo osewa ni natte orimasu.

Oh, we also thank you for your generous patronage.
Kochirakoso osewa ni natte orimasu.

When your boss is not at his or her desk

A. Moshiwake gozaimasen. Bucho no Yamada wa, tadaima seki o hazushite orimasu. Ikagaita shimashouka?
I'm sorry. Manager Yamada is not at his desk right now. May I help you?
B. Wakarimashita. Sorede wa, nochihodo mata odenwa sasete itadakimasu.
OK. Then, I will call him back later.

If the person can't get to the phone, say one of the following

I'm sorry but she's not here / she's gone out.
She's not at her desk right now.
She's on another line –
She's in a meeting –
She's got a visitor -

Could you please call again later?
(Gary is) talking on the phone (/on another line)
at the moment.  
.....in a meeting.  
... away from his desk for lunch.  
....out of the office.       ...  
He has just stepped out.  
... will not be back today.  
I'm sorry but she's not here / she's gone out.  
He is out of the office.  
She's not at her desk right now.  
She's got a visitor -  
He is out of town.  
Is there any message?  
I will call back.  
You have the wrong number.

Sumimasen ga, rusu desu (← is absent)/ dekakete orimasu.
I'm sorry but she's not here / she's gone out.  
Ima seki o hazushite imasu.  
Denwa chuu desu.  
Kaigi-chu desu.  
Raikyaku (← visitor)-chu desu.

Ato de mo ichido denwa shite kudasai?
(Gary-san wa) tadaima hoka no denwa ni dete orimasu / Denwa chuu desu.  
Kaigi chuu desu.  
Hirugohan ni dekakemashita.  
Gaishutsuchu dekakemashu.  
Seki o hazushite imasu.  
Kyou wa modorimasen.  
Sumimasen ga, rusu desu (← is absent)/ dekakete orimasu.  
Gaishitsu shite imasu.  
Ima seki o hazushite imasu.  
Raikyaku (← visitor)-chu desu.  
Shutchou shite imasu.  
Dengon wa arimasu ka?  
Mata denwa shimasu.  
Bangou chigai desu.

Thank you very much for calling!
Denwa arigatou gozaimashita!

Phone numbers are said using the individual digits, ichi, ni, san, etc.
A dash between groups of numbers is usually spoken using ‘no’.

Phone card
I'll call back later.
Can I speak to Manami-san, please?
Is this Yamada-san?
Can we talk now?
I’d like to leave a message.
He is on the phone at the moment.
I will call you later.
I'll call you back later.

Please hold on a minute.
Shoushou o-machi kudasai.

Tereka.
Mata atode kakemasu.
Manami-san o onegaishimasu?
Yamada-san desu ka?
Ima heeki?
Dengon o onegaishimasu.
Tadaima, denwachuu desu.
Nochihodo o-denwa itashimasu.
Atode mata kakenoashimasu.

Shoushou o-machi kudasai.
Hello? Sorry to have made you wait.
I'm afraid she is away from her desk right now.

I see, so she isn't there?
Do you know when she will be back?
She is in the office, so she should be back soon.
Shall she call you when she gets back?

No, I'll be going out soon so..

I will call her back later.

I see. Thank you very much (that will be good).
Okay, goodbye!
That sounds difficult (that must be tough).
That looks interesting.

Sorry for being late.

Sorry to keep you waiting.

I'm sorry, please say that again.

Moshi moshi, o-matase itashimashita.
Tadaima seki o hazushite orimasu.
(seat/desk be away from)
Sou desu ka, irrashimashen ka.
Itsu goro modoraremasu ka?
(when she gets back from this side call you)
Shanai ni orimasu node sugu modorimasu.
Modorimashitara kochira kara o-denwa itashimashou ka?

I see, so she isn't there?   Sou desu ka, irrashaimasen ka.
Do you know when she will be back?  Itsu goro modoraremasu ka?
She is in the office, so she should be back soon. Shanai ni orimasu node sugu modorimasu.
(soon, will leave, so…)
Dewa, mata watahsi kara denwa shimasu.
(again, from me, will call)
Hai, dewa yoroshiku o-negai itashimasu.
Hai, shiture shimasu.
Taihen desu (ne).
Omoshiroi sou desu (ne).
Osoku natte sumimasen.

Tell him I called. I'll call back later.

Tell him I called. I'll call back later.

Denwa ga atta koto o o-tsutae kudasai. Mata o-denwa shimasu.
Dengon, o-negai dekimasu ka?
O-tesuki no toki ni, orikaeshi o-denwa kudasai.
Owarimashita, watashi ni denwa o suru you ni o-tetsukai kudasai.

When the call is for someone else, you can say

Please wait a moment. Ms Sato, there's a call for you.
Excuse me, but may I ask who is calling?

Hai, chotto matte kudasai. Sato-san, denwa haitte imasu.
Shisurei desu ga, dochira sama deshou ka?

Leaving a message

Tell him I called. I'll call back later.

Tell him I called. I'll call back later.

Table of Contents

Tell him I called. I'll call back later.

Can I leave a message?
Please ask her to call as soon as she is free.
When he's through, ask him to telephone me.

When the call is for someone else, you can say

Please wait a moment. Ms Sato, there's a call for you.
Excuse me, but may I ask who is calling?

Hai, chotto matte kudasai. Sato-san, denwa haitte imasu.
Shisurei desu ga, dochira sama deshou ka?

Can I leave a message?
Please ask her to call as soon as she is free.
When he's through, ask him to telephone me.

Using your cell phone

Here are some phrases you can use if using your mobile phone…

Excuse me. Do you mind if I take this call?
I'm very sorry.
I'm sorry. A call has just come through that I have to answer. I'll call you right back.
I can't talk long! My batteries are low (about to die).
You're breaking up. I can't hear you very well.

Shiturei shimasu. Chotto denwa ni demasu no de.
Sumimasen.
Sumimasen. Doushitemo denai to ikenai denwa ga ima hairimashita. Sugu kakenashimashou.
Amari nagaku hanashi wa dekina! Denchi ga kiresou.
Denwa ga togirete, yoku kikoenain da kedo.
Apologizing / Being late to an appointment

**Table of Contents**

I have a 2pm appointment with [PERSON].
I have come to meet [PERSON].
Sorry to be late.
I was too busy to make it.
I'm sorry I'm late.
**I got lost.**
I lost the phone number.
I lost the map.
I can't find the place.
I can't find your office.
**Where are you now?**

**Asking for directions**

This is Jon. Sorry to be late but I can't find the way.
I lost the phone number.
I lost the map.
I can't find the place.
I can't find your office.
**Where are you now?**

**Calling in sick**

I've got a terrible headache and I'd like to take the day off.
**[After boss agrees…]**
I'm really sorry. Goodbye.
Could I please have tomorrow off?
Could you possibly let me have tomorrow off?

**Asking permission**

Could I please have tomorrow off?
Could you possibly let me have tomorrow off?

**Making an appointment**

Hello, is that Mr. Yamada? (Division Manager)
Yes, speaking.
This is Jon Walsh of Business Grow. Good morning.
Good morning. We're very much obliged to you.
I'm calling because I'd like to come and see you and I wonder would be convenient.
I see. What's it about?
**[Give answer…]**
[Yamada] All right. When would be convenient?
Let me see. I would prefer tomorrow or the day after.
Let's see. I'll be here tomorrow afternoon.
Then may I come around 2pm tomorrow?
That's fine. I'll be waiting for you at 2pm tomorrow. Thank you. Well then, I'll visit you. I look forward to seeing you. Goodbye.

**Asking for someone**

**Table of Contents**


**When calling another organization, you could say**

My name is Jon and I'm from Business Grow. Business Grow no Jon desu.
Professor Yamada please. Yamada-kyouju, o-negai shimasu.

Or, more stunningly -

My name is Jon and I'm from Business Grow. Business Grow no Jon to moushimasu ga. Yamada-san.
Professor Yamada please. Yamada-kyouju irasshaimasu ka?

**Starting a conversation**

I have an inquiry. Chotto o-kiki shitain desu ga.
Sorry to keep phoning you. Tabi tabi sumimasen.
I had a message saying you had called. O-denwa itadaita sou desu ga.
Thank you for just now. (Used when phoning people) Saki hodo wa doumo.
Back with the answer, for example, to an inquiry).

Excuse me for calling this late at night. Yabun moushiwake arimasen.

**Interrupting someone at work**

**Table of Contents**

Are you busy? O-isogashii desu ka?
Do you have a minute? Chotto yoroshi desu ka?
I have a small favour to ask. Chotto onegai ga arun desu.
I have a question. Shitsumon ga hitotsu arimasu.

I have 3 questions. Miitsu shitsumon ga arimasu.

Excuse me, may I ask you something? (polite) Chotto kagai masuga?
Can I ask you a question? Shitsumon o shite mo ii desu ka?
I have 3 questions. Miitsu shitsumon ga arimasu.

Can I check…. Cheku shimashou ka?
Is [this] all right? (asking whether something is appropriate or not) [Kore] de ii desu ka?
General phrases

**Table of Contents**

- The work is almost finished.
- Thank you for your hard work!
- Thank you (expressing gratitude for help received)
- Can I print from your computer?
- Please bring the report here.
- Please bring the file here.
- Please bring the coffee here.
- Can you do it by 5 o’clock?
- I need it by Tuesday.
- Shigoto wa hotondo owarimashita.
- Gokurousama deshita!
- Okagesama de.
- Anata no konpyuuta kara insatsu ga dekimasu ka?
- Report o motte kitte kudasai.
- Firu o motte kitte kudasai.
- Kohii o motte kitte kudasai.
- Go-ji made ni dekimasu ka?
- Kayoubi made ni hitsuyou (need) desu.

**Business Japanese**

**Table of Contents**

- **Head office**
  - Honshanka
- **Interview**
  - Mansetsu
- **Reception**
  - Uketsuki
- **Pay day**
  - Kyuuryou-bi
- **Instruction manual**
  - Setsumeishou
- **Talk, conference**
  - Soudan
- **Branch office**
  - Shiten
- **Lunchtime**
  - Hiruyasumi
- **Pay**
  - Kyuuryou
- **Material, data, stuff**
  - Shiryou
- **Rule, regulation**
  - Kisoku
- **Written application**
- **Persentation, submission**
- **Attendence, presence**
  - I will attend a conference on Monday.
- **Publication**
- **By the way, how is the new person in your office?**
- **Shaking hands**
- **A means, a way, a step**
  - We should think of a different method.
  - Business; an engagement; work

**I will attend** a conference on Monday.

**By the way, how is the new person in your office?**

- **Toko-rodu**, atarashii staffu wa dou desu ka?
- Akushuu
- Shuudan
- Betsu no shuudan o kangaeru beki desu.
- Youji
- Shuupan

**I will attend** a conference on Monday.

**He/She is my.....**

- **Boss**
  - Joushi
- **Subordinate**
  - Buka
- **Senior**
- **Sempai**
- **Junior**
- **Kouhai**

**Just before a meeting starts**

- May I have your attention. It's time to start.
- Hai, sorede wa hajimemasu.

**Visiting a client's office**

- I've been expecting you. I'm Jon.
- Thank you for making time to see me today.
- Not at all. Come this way.
- Kyou wa o-isogashii tokoro, arigatou gozaimasu.
- Tondemo nai desu. Kochira e douzo.
**Taking clients out to dinner**

To start with shall we have some beer?
Mazu, biiruni shimashou ka?
It's dreadfully hot.
Atsukute tamaranai desu yo.
On the other hand, it's pleasant in winter.
Sono ippou

**Leaving somewhere**

When it’s time to go, look at your watch and say the magic words – **Mou soro soro** (‘It's about time to go.’)

Thank you for having us over. Thank you for the meal.
Doumo, o-jama shimashita. Taihen gochisousama.
Can't you stay longer?
Mada iiin' ja nain' desu ka?
I have to get up early tomorrow morning.
Ashita hayai mon' desu kara.
Then please come again.
Sore dewa, zehi mata o-dekake kudasai.
Come and visit us next time.
Kondo wa uchi ni oide kudasai.
Excuse me but I've got to go. [Said to other guests.]
O-saki ni shitsurei shimasu.

**About [Subject]**

Place of birth
shushinchi
Or
mata wa または
Purpose
mokuteki もくてき
Impression
inshou いんしょう
Self introduction
jikoshoukai じこしょうかい
Trainee
kenshuusei けんしゅうせい
Commonplace, ordinary
arifureta ありふれた
Do you know - ?
gozonji ぞんじ

**Export section/department**

This occasion
kono tabi このたび
Head office
honsha ほんしゃ
It's been decided that…
kono ni naru ことになる
In one's university days
daigaku jidai 大学じだい

**Computer terminology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer</td>
<td>コンピュータ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client PC</td>
<td>クライエント PC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install</td>
<td>インストール</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>デバイス</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>ユーザ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal</td>
<td>ポータル</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data</td>
<td>データ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>メンテナンス</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>センター</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
More office vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Category</th>
<th>Japanese Equivalent</th>
<th>Page Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lunch</td>
<td>Shokuji</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office, firm</td>
<td>Jimusho</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td>Hooritsu</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law firm</td>
<td>Hooritsu jimusho</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Kensetsu</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior, boss</td>
<td>Jooshi</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orimasu</td>
<td>Imasu (humble)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department manager</td>
<td>Buchou</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>Eigyou</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales/marketing department</td>
<td>Eigyou-bu</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real estate</td>
<td>Fudousan</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting department</td>
<td>Keiri-bu</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public relations</td>
<td>Kouhou</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life (insurance)</td>
<td>Seimei (hoken)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil, petroleum</td>
<td>Sekiyu</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirmation</td>
<td>go-kakunin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal, dealing</td>
<td>go-shori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s do</td>
<td>itashimashou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution</td>
<td>kaiketsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s consider</td>
<td>kangaemashou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Again, one more time</td>
<td>mou ichido</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan</td>
<td>Saku</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both sides</td>
<td>Souhou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>Ue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or: After</td>
<td>Ikou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suitable</td>
<td>Yoi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone</td>
<td>Donata ka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morning</td>
<td>gozen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In, during</td>
<td>chuu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the morning</td>
<td>Gozen chuu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary</td>
<td>Hisho</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was told</td>
<td>iwaremashita</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>motsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For the most part, mainly</td>
<td>omo ni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was done (passive form of su)</td>
<td>saremashita</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do (te form of sareru [polite suru])</td>
<td>sarete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deal with</td>
<td>atsukatte imasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tell (te form of hanasu)</td>
<td>hanashite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td>hou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate law</td>
<td>Kaisha-hou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client, customer</td>
<td>o-kyakusan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Types of company

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trading company</td>
<td>Shousha</td>
<td>Real Estate</td>
<td>Fudosan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsidiary</td>
<td>Kogaisha</td>
<td>Trading company</td>
<td>Shousha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real Estate</td>
<td>Fudosan</td>
<td>Head office</td>
<td>Honshanaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch office</td>
<td>Shiten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERNAL E-MAIL MESSAGES

Thank you for your help.
I'm attaching the data.
If you have any questions, please reply to me today.
I appreciate your cooperation.

Thank you for your help.
I have finished the market survey and am sending it.
Please check the contents and give your approval.

EXTERNAL E-MAIL MESSAGES

Thank you very much for making time to see us…
today when you are so busy.
Regarding the points that you raised…

If there is anything else, please contact me at any time.
We look forward to your continued association.

MORE E-MAIL LANGUAGE

To everyone / to all members
I am sending this message from Tokyo.

Then add one of these follow-up phrases.
We are very much obliged to you.
Thank you for your message/mail.

Then state the reason for your message, and any other points you want to make:

This is the first time I am contacting you.
This is to report on the meeting the other day.
This is to let you know how things are progressing.
Sorry to trouble you, but please reply by return.
No need to reply.
Closing phrases:

Please give this your kind consideration.  Yoroshiku o-negaishimasu.
よろしくお願いします。

I ask for your consideration/cooperation.  Go-kentou/go-kyouryoku yoroshiku o-negaishimasu.
ご検討/ご協力よろしくお願いします。
LET’S DO STUFF!

Table of Contents

To suggest doing something, change the masu ending of the doing word to mashou (= let’s).

MASHOU form – is used to ask for a listener’s opinion with respect to an activity to be undertaken together, or to suggest that the listener and speaker do something together.

Examples:

Let’s drink some coffee.

Let’s take a little break.

Let’s go to the coffee shop over there & drink something.

Shall I call you tomorrow morning?

Where shall we eat tonight?

Let’s cook!

Let’s eat!

Shall we eat?

I will go.

Shall I go there?

Shall we go by car?

I will do it.

Let’s go to Ginza.

Let’s return home.

Kohii o nimi mashou.

Sukoshi yasumi mashou.

Ano kissaten e itte nani ka nomi mashou.

Ashita no asa derwa shimashou ka?

Konban doko de tabemashou ka?

Gohan o tsukuri mashou! Or Ryoori o shimashou!

(Gohan o) tabemashou! / tabeyou!

Bangohan o tabemashou ka?

Watashi ga ikou/ikimasu.

Watashi ga ikimashou ka?

Kuruma de ikimashou ka?

Watashi ga shimashou.

Ginza e ikimashou.

Uchi ni kaerimashou.

Other examples:

Let’s have a party!

Let’s go to the cinema on Saturday.

Let’s go shopping tomorrow.

Shall we go to the cinema on Saturday?

Shall we go for a drive next (week) Sunday?

Shall I come tomorrow?

Shall I lend you my umbrella?

Paatii o shi mashou!

Doyoubi ni eigakan ni ikimashou. (ni means ‘to’)

Ashita kaimono ni ikimashou.

Doyobi ni eigakan ni ikimashou ka?

Raishuu no nichiyobi ni doraibu ni ikimashou ka?

Ashita mo ki mashou ka?

Kasa o kashi mashou ka?

GIFT GIVING

Table of Contents

Souvenir.

This gift is for you.

Please accept this gift.

This is also from New Zealand.

Omiyage.

Kono omiyage wa anata ni desu.

Douzo, kono omiyage o osamate kudasai.

Kore mo New Zealand kara desu.

At the front door

This is a small present for you.

It’s only a small gift.

What a nice gift!

Ano, kore douzo.

Tsumaranai mono desu ga.

Keekoo mono o.
OFFERING A GIFT

This is a trifling thing.
It is only a small amount.
It's only a small token.

Tsumaranai mono desu ga.
Honno wazuka desu ga.
Kokoro-bakari no mono desu ga.

New Year postcard

Stock phrases:
Happy New Year
Looking forward to continuing our acquaintance this year.
With sincere wishes for a very happy new year.

Nengajou

Akemashite omedetou gozaimasu.
Honnemoyoroshiku o-negai moushiagemasu.
Honnenmo shiawase ouki toshi de arimasu you.
Expressions and verbs for giving and receiving

Table of Contents

[From p115 of Systematic Japanese book]

**Speaker or speaker's party**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GIVE</th>
<th>RECEIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To a subordinate</td>
<td>From a subordinate or equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>yaru</strong></td>
<td><strong>morau</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To an equal</td>
<td>From a superior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ageru</strong></td>
<td><strong>itadaku</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a superior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sashi-ageru</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listener, Listener's party, or third party**

**Agemasu and Kuremasu mean to give.**

- **AGEMASU** is used when ‘someone gives something to **someone else**’ *(not to you)*

Shall I give you this book?
Carl often gives a movie ticket to Ken.
I gave Mr Lee a shirt.
I gave my mother a sweater.
I gave my father some tea.
Mary gave John a map.
Mr Yamada gave flowers to Ms. Kimura.
I gave chocolates to Ms. Sato.
I gave Mr Taylor some sake.
I gave a present to my son.
I gave a present to my friend.
I gave a present to my teacher.
My friend gave me a present.
I received a present from my friend.

My teacher gave me a present.
I received a present from my teacher.

I gave the dog some meat.
I will give you (a child) a cake.
My daughter gave some flowers to the guest.
Please give me 5 apples.

Kono hon o agemashou ka?
Carl-san wa Ken-san ni yoku eiga no kippu o agemasu.
Watashi wa Lee-san ni shatsu o agemasu.
(Watashi wa) Haha ni seetaa o agemasu.
(Watashi wa) Chichi ni ocha o agemasu.
Mary-san wa John-san ni chizu o agemasu.
Yamada-san wa Kimura-san ni hanas o agemasu.
Watashi wa Sato-san ni chocolate o agemasu.
Watashi wa Taylor-san ni sake o ageta.
Musuko ni purezento o yarimashita.
Tomodachi ni purezento o agemasu.
Sensei ni purezento o sashi-agemasu.
Tomodachi wa watashi ni purezento o kuremasu.
Tomodachi (ni/kara) wa watashi ni purezento o moraimashita.
Sensei wa watashi ni purezento o kudasai-mashita.
Sensei (ni/kara) wa watashi ni purezento o itadaki-mashita.
Inu ni niku o yarimashita.
Okashi o agemasu.
Musume wa okyaku-sama ni hanas o sashiagemasu.
Ringo o itsutsu kudasai.
Please give me three bottles of beer.  

- **KUREMASU** is used when ‘someone gives’ something to **me or my family member**.
  ie: WHEN SOMEONE ELSE GIVES TO US, use kuremasu:

**STRUCTURE**: Noun o kuremasu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GIVING:</th>
<th>RECEIVING:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buchou:</td>
<td>Buchou ni:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watashi wa</td>
<td>Itadakimasu’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friend:</td>
<td>Tomodachi ni:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Agemasu’</td>
<td>‘Moraimasu’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kodomo:</td>
<td>Kodomo ni:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Yarimasu’</td>
<td>‘Moraimas’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Moraimasu** means ‘to receive, get, be given’ (Dictionary form is ‘morau’)

I received this gift from my older sister.  
Kore wa ane kara moraimashita.

I received Japanese sweets from Yoshiko.  
Yoshiko-san (ni/kara) Nihon no okashi o moraimashita.

Yoshiko gave me Japanese sweets.
Yoshiko-san ga Nihon no okashi o kuremashita.

I received a letter from my friend in America.  
Amerika ni iru tomodachi kara tegami o moraimashita.

Could I get this catalog?  
Kono katarogu o moraimasu ka?

It is a beautiful card, isn’t it?  
Kirei na kaado desu ne.

I received a letter from my friend.  
Watashi no tomodachi kara tegami o moraimashita.

Jon received a record from his friend.  
Jon-san wa tomodachi ni tokei o moraimashita.

Carl received flowers from Emi.  
Carl-san wa Emi-san ni hana o moraimashita.

Carl received beer from Tony.  
Carl-san wa Tony-san ni biiru o moraimashita.

What did you receive from Karen?  
Karen-san ni nani o moratta no?

Compare the above to:

Yoshiko gave me Japanese sweets.
Yoshiko-san ga Nihon no okashi o kuremashita.

It is a beautiful card, isn’t it?  
Kirei na kaado desu ne.
Did you get it from somebody?
Dareka ni moratta desu ka?

N-1 wa N-2 ni N-3 o yarimasu/yaru
N-1 gives N-3 to N-2. (person, animal or plant)
This form is generally used only when the speaker talks about his/her family to others.

I gave a dictionary to my younger sister.
Watashi wa imooto ni jisho o yarimashita.

Mrs Sugahara gives water to the flowers every morning.
Sugahara-san wa maiasa hana ni mizu o yarimasu.

I gave chocolates to my wife.
Watashi wa tsuma ni chocolates o yarimasu.

LENDING:
Ken lent some money to Tom.
Watashi wa Tom-san ni okane o kashite agemashita.

Watashi wa Kimura-san ni hon o kashite agemashita.

Tom had Ken lend him some money.
Tom-san wa Ken-san ni okane o kashite moraimashita.

HONORIFIC and HUMBLE TERMS
Table of Contents

Sashiageru is the humble form of ageru and is used when someone gives something to his/her superior.
Kudasaru is the honorific form of kureru and is used in the context of ‘someone who is my superior gives something to me or a member of my family.
Itadaku is the humble form of morau and is used when someone receives something from his/her superior.

STRUCTURE:
Noun o itadakimasu
kudasaimasu
yarimasu

Examples: (all of these are past tense)
(I) received a present from my friend.
(Watashi wa) tomodachi ni present o moraimashita.

(I) received a present from the general manager.
(Watashi wa) buchou ni present o itadakimashita.

My friend gave me a present.
Tomodachi wa watashi ni present o kuremashita.

The general manager gave me a present.
Buchou wa watashi ni present o kudasaimashita.

I gave a present to my friend.
Watashi wa kodomo ni present o yarimashita.

I gave a present to a child.
Watashi wa kodomo ni present o yarimashita.

STRUCTURE:
Te-form + itadakimasu
kudasaimasu
yarimasu

I borrowed a book from my friend.
Tomodachi ni hon o kashite moraimashita.

I had the meal prepared by the manager’s wife.
Kachou no okusan ni ryouri o tsukute itadakimashita.

The manager’s wife prepared a meal (for me).
Kachou no okusan wa (watashi ni) ryouri o tsukute kudasaimashita.

My friend lent me a book.
Tomodachi wa (watashi ni) hon o kashite kuremashita.

I showed photos to my friend.
Watashi wa tomodachi ni shashin o misete agemashita.

I showed photos to my son.
Watashi wa musuko ni shashin o misete yarimashita.
GIVING and RECEIVING - Honorific and humble terms

**Table of Contents**

Sashiageru is the humble form of ageru and is used when someone gives something to his/her superior.
Kudasaru is the honorific form of kureru and is used in the context of ‘someone who is my superior gives something to me or a member of my family.
Itadaku is the humble form of morau and is used when someone receives something from his/her superior.

**Examples:**
We gave our teacher a birthday present.
What did the teacher give you?
My teacher gave me a Japanese dictionary.
The section chief gave a book to my child.

I received a kabuki ticket from Hanako’s parents.
Carl received a watermelon from the section chief.

**SENTENCE STRUCTURES**

[NAME wa] → WHEN → WHERE or WHAT → ACTION WORD (Verb)

**WORD ORDER**
In general, standard word order for Japanese when using an action verb is as shown below.

SUBJECTs are put in brackets to stress that they are very often deleted.

**[SUBJECT]+TIME+PLACE/IMPLEMENT+INDIRECT OBJECT+OBJECT+ACTION VERB**

[Watashi wa] ashita gakkou de sensei ni purezento wo agemasu.
(I'm going to give a present to my teacher at school tomorrow.)

For an existence verb it is:

**[SUBJECT]+TIME+LOCATION+EXISTENCE VERB**

Takahashi wa ima honsha ni iru. (Takahasi is in the main office right now.)

For a motion verb it is:

**[SUBJECT]+TIME+ORIGIN+ROUTE+DESTINATION+MOTION VERB**

[Watakushi wa] ashita paatii ni iku. ([I'm] going to a party tomorrow.)

**IMPORTANT:** Word order before the verb and the particles that nouns take depend on the verb type: action, existence or motion.

The particle before the ACTION WORD will be different depending on WHEN, WHERE and WHAT.
Also, in Japanese, the **subject** is often not spoken when it is apparent.
For example, the sentence in English, I'll have a beer will be, **Biru o nomimasu**.
You don't have to say Watashi wa as it is so apparent.

**Ikimasu** = **go**  
**Kimasu** = **come**  
**Kaerimasu** = **return**

These are used in the following examples:

**Ni** means **to** and **comes after the place you are going to.**

**ie:** Furansu **ni** = **to** France

David is **going** to a restaurant.
Yuko is **coming** to my house.

Where are you going tomorrow?
You answer by replacing **doko** with the **place**, keeping the same sentence order, **ie:**
I'm **going** back to France tomorrow.
I'm **going** to a Japanese class tomorrow.

I'm going to Tokyo tomorrow.
Where does Mr Yamaguchi go everyday?
Mr Yamaguchi goes to work everyday.

**Or more simply:**
He goes to work.

**Shigoto** ni ikimasu.  (**work, goes**)

To express **I don't….** (the negative) in Japanese you change **masu** to **masen**.  **Eg:**

I don't drink coffee.  
I don't eat breakfast.  
I'm not going to work tomorrow.

You can politely invite someone to do something by adding **ka** to the negative form, **eg:**

Would you like to (lit. won't you) drink some coffee?  **Kohii o nomimasen ka?**  
Would you like to eat some pizza?  **Pizza o tabemasen ka?**

**W**ould you like to come to my house?  **Watashi no uchi ni kimasen ka?**
= [to my house, won't you come?] = same sentence structure as above: **WHERE → VERB**

This phrase literally means **Won't** you come to my house?

When suggesting dates or times to do an activity, you can use the phrase … **wa dou desu ka?**  
**how about…?**  **Eg:**

**How about this (week) Saturday?**

How about Tuesday?  
How about 6 o’clock?  
How about tomorrow?

To say **yes**, use … **wa ii desu** (it’s fine).  **Eg:**

Tuesday is fine.  
6 o’clock is fine.

To refuse politely, use … **wa chotto** (it’s a bit…..).  **Eg:**

Tomorrow’s a bit……
Next week is a bit……
Wednesday? Wednesday’s a bit……
When you trail off your sentence like this, your listener will know that it’s inconvenient to you.

**I’m going with a friend to a restaurant**

*To means and* when you link 2 objects, ie:

May I have coffee and milk please?
May I have pizza and beer please?

*To* can also have the meaning *with*, eg:

With my friend
With Dave
With my giraffe

**NOTE:** *to* comes after the person you do something with, eg:

I study with Yuko.
Bruce is going to watch a movie with Yuko.
I am going shopping with Carl.
I am going to Egypt with my giraffe.

**SAMPLE CONVERSATION**

You: Hello!
Friend: Hello!
You: Would you like to come to my house next week? Raishuu no uchi ni kimasen ka?
Friend: That sounds nice. I’d love to go. Ii desu ne! Yorokonde ikimasu.
You: How about Wednesday? Suyoubi wa dou desu ka?
Friend: Wednesday? Wednesday’s a bit… Suyoubi desu ka? Suyoubi wa chotto…
You: How about Thursday then? Mokuyoubi wa dou desu ka?

**TEST:** Change these sentences into suggestions or invitations according to the information in the brackets:

Ashita resutoran ni ikimasu *(shall we?)* → Shall we go to a restaurant tomorrow? → Ashita resutoran ni ikimasu ka?

Raishu watashi no uchi ni kimasen ka? → Would you like to come to my house next week?
Raishu watashi no uchi ni kimasen ka? → Would you like to come to my house next week?
Konban eiga o mimasu *(let’s)* → Let’s go to the movies this evening → Konban eiga o mimashou ka?

**DESCRIBING PAST ACTIVITIES**

Last week I went to Kyoto

**REMEMBER THE SENTENCE STRUCTURE:**

[NAME wa] → WHEN → WHERE or WHAT → ACTION WORD (Verb)

**SAMPLE CONVERSATION:**

Takeshi: I went to Kyoto last week. → Senshuu Kyoto ni ikimashita.
Anne: That sounds nice! How did you get there? → Ii desu ne! Nan de ikimashita ka?
Takeshi: I went by shinkansen from Tokyo station. Tokyo eki kara shinkansen de ikimashita.
Anne: What did you do in Kyoto? Kyoto de nani o shimashita ka?
Takeshi: Ate pizza and drank beer. Pizza o tabete biiru o nomimashita.

Other examples:

Yesterday Anne studied Japanese. Ann-san wa kinou Nihongo o benkyoo shimashita.
Scott came to Japan last year. Scott-san wa kyonen Nihon ni (= to) kimashita.

What did you do in Kyoto?

Kyoto de nani o shimashita ka?

NOTE: To say where an activity happens or happened (place of action) you use de, meaning in or at.
You say de after the place.

Eg: In Kyoto Kyoto de
At a restaurant resutoran de

Mr Sugahara read a newspaper at home. Sugahara-san wa uchi de shimbun o yomimashita.

Note again the sentence structure: [NAME wa] WHEN WHERE or WHAT ni ACTION

WORD (Verb)
Chris ate breakfast in the park. Chris-san wa kouen de asogohan o tabemashita.
Carl drank beer in the pub. Carl-san wa pub de biiru o nomimashita.
Karen wrote letters in the café. Karen-san wa kissaten de tegami o kakimashita.

NEGATIVE TENSE

To say is not, am not, are not, etc in Japanese, you use ‘ja arimasen’, or the more polite version: ‘dewa arimasen’

No, he is not Tony. Iie, Tony-san ja arimasen.
It is not a watch. Tokei ja arimasen.
It is not January. It is February. Ichigatsu ja arimasen. Nigatsu desu.
It is not 6pm. It is 5pm. Rokku-ji ja arimasen. Go-ji desu.

PAST TENSE

To say was or were in Japanese, change desu to deshita, eg:

My father was a Dentist. Chichi wa haisha deshita.
My teacher was French. Sensei wa Furansu-jin deshita.
I was a Writer. Writer deshita.

To talk about past events and activities: change the masu ending to mashita, eg:

I went to Kyoto. Kyoto ni ikimashita (remember ‘ni’ means ‘to’)
I drank some coffee. Kohii o nomimashita.
I watched TV. Terebi o mi mashita.
I did the shopping. Kaimono o shimashita.
Did you go shopping? Anata wa kaimono o shimashita ka?
NEGATIVE PAST TENSE

To say *wasn’t* or *weren’t* in Japanese, use *ja arimasen deshita*, (or *dewa arimasen deshita*).

Here is a list of expressions to refer to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am/is/are</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>am not/is not/are not</td>
<td>was not/were not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desu</td>
<td>deshita</td>
<td>ja/dewa arimasen</td>
<td>ja/dewa arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am in Tokyo.
I was in Tokyo.
I am not in Tokyo.
I was not in Tokyo.

---

### PLAIN (Conversational) FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>Jisho</th>
<th>Negative Form NAI</th>
<th>KATTA Past Form (ie: it Was..)</th>
<th>NAKATTA Past Negative Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A1</strong></td>
<td>If an A1 adjective ends in い, ie: hosoi (desu), then the plain form is just the adjective, ie: hosoi.</td>
<td>くない (kunai)</td>
<td>かった (katta)</td>
<td>くなかった (kunakatta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>だ (da)</td>
<td>ie: Suteki da Genki da Benri da</td>
<td>ではない (dewanai)/じゃない (janai)</td>
<td>だった (datta)</td>
<td>でなかった (dewanakatta) /じゃなかった (janakatta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A2</strong></td>
<td>だ (da)</td>
<td>ie: Yasumi da</td>
<td>ではない (dewanai)/じゃない (janai)</td>
<td>だった (datta)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| NOUN | だ (da) | ie: Yasumi da | ではない (dewanai)/じゃない (janai) | だった (datta) | でなかった (dewanakatta) /じゃなかった (janakatta) |

### ENGLISH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>Masu (Polite) Form</th>
<th>Plain (Casual) Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Hai/ee</td>
<td>うん (un)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Iie</td>
<td>ううん (uun) or いや (iya - men)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A2</th>
<th>Desu</th>
<th>Da</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ie: Shinsetsu desu</td>
<td>ie: Shinsetsu da</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desu yo</td>
<td>Da yo (or just yo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desu ne</td>
<td>Da ne (or just ne)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desu ka?</td>
<td>Seems to just disappear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sou desu ka?</td>
<td>Sou? (rising intonation)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dewa</td>
<td>Ja</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikimasu</td>
<td>Iku (Jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimasu</td>
<td>Kuru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaerimasu</td>
<td>Kaeru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shimasu</td>
<td>Suru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demasu</td>
<td>Deru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yomimasu</td>
<td>Yomu (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arimasu</td>
<td>Aru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imasu</td>
<td>Iru (jisho form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Takai desu</th>
<th>Takai (because it is A1 ending in ‘i’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jouzo desu</td>
<td>Jouzo da (because it is A2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Where is [PLACE]?:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[PLACE] wa doko desu ka?</th>
<th>[PLACE] wa doko?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What will you have to drink?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nani o nomimasu ka?</th>
<th>Nani o nomu?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What will you eat for dinner?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bangohan wa nani o tabemasu ka?</th>
<th>Bangohan wa nani o taberu?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What will you do?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nani o shimasu ka?</th>
<th>Nani o suru?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**What did you do?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nani o shimashita ka?</th>
<th>Nani o shita?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Will you read this book?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hon o yomimasu ka?</th>
<th>Hon o yomu?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**I want to drink**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nomitai desu</th>
<th>Nomitai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Please write**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kaite kudasai</th>
<th>Kaite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Are you free tonight?:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes, I am</th>
<th>Un, hima (da yo)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No, I am not free</td>
<td>Uun, hima dewa nai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Are you free now?:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ima hima?</th>
<th>Ima nani shiteru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**This apple is tasty, isn’t it?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kono ringo wa oishii ne?</th>
<th>Kono ringo wa oishii ne?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Is there a pair of scissors there?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Soko ni hasami (ga) aru?</th>
<th>Soko ni hasami (ga) aru?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Do you have a dictionary?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jisho motte iru?</th>
<th>Jisho motte iru?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Yes I do**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Un, motte iru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**No I don’t**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uun, motte nai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Is that curry & rice tasty?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sono karee-raisu (wa) oishii?</th>
<th>Sono karee-raisu (wa) oishii?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Yes, it’s hot but tasty.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Un, karai kedo, oishii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**NEGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewa arimasen</th>
<th>Dewanai / Janai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Won’t you go?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ikimasa ka?</th>
<th>Ikanai? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Won’t you eat?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tabemasu ka?</th>
<th>Tabenai? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Won’t you drinko?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nomimasu ka?</th>
<th>Nomanai? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Won’t you read?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yomimasu ka?</th>
<th>Yomanai? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**A1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issho ni V masenka?</th>
<th>Issho ni V nai?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**A1** (good) ii

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yokunai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST** — for most of these (all the verbs), change the end of the て form to ‘ta’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deshita</th>
<th>Datta (だった)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deshita ka?</th>
<th>Datta? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ikimashita</th>
<th>1-ta (いった)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ikimashita ka?</th>
<th>1-ta? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mimashita</th>
<th>Mita</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mimashita ka?</th>
<th>Mita? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demashita</th>
<th>De_ta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Shite imasu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Arimashita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Shimashita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Shimashita ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Kaimashita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Kaimashita ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Nomimashita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Nomimashita ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Tabemashita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>Tabemashita ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>N wa dou deshita ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>(good) ii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Did you eat? **Gohan o tabemashita ka?**  **Gohan tabeta?**

After I ate dinner, I watched TV **Bangohan o tabeta ato, terebi o mita.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST NEGATIVE</th>
<th>Dewa arimasen deshita</th>
<th>Dewanakatta / Janakatta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ie: Joubu dewa arimasen deshita</td>
<td>(ではありません)・(ありません)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joubu ja nakatta</td>
<td>(or Joubu dewa nakatta)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB / Have eaten</th>
<th>Tabemashita deshita</th>
<th>Tabenakatta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERB / have been</td>
<td>Ikimasen deshita</td>
<td>Ikanakatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOUN / I am French</td>
<td>Furansu-jin desu</td>
<td>Furansu-jin da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A1 / How is your job?</th>
<th>Shigoto wa dou desu ka?</th>
<th>Shigoto wa dou? (rising intonation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(‘Desu ka?’ disappears)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demasu</td>
<td>Denaka_ta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| I came | Kimasen deshita | Konaka_ta |

| Thank you | Arigatou gozaimasu | Arigatou |

| A1 / Good | ii | Yokunakatta |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>As I have a stomach ache</th>
<th>Onaka ga itai desu kara, byouin e ikimasu.</th>
<th>Onaka ga itai kara, byouin e iku.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Japanese food is delicious but expensive. | Nihon no tabemono wa oishii desu ga, takai desu. | Nihon no tabemono wa oishii, takai. |
Example plain form questions

Q: Biru o nonda?  
A: ee, nonda

Q: Shinbun o yonda?  
Q: Tenisu o shita?  

Q: Denwa o kakeru?  
A: Denwa kakenai

Q: Kinou nani o shita? (rising intonation)  
A: Nihongo no benkyo o shite, terebi o mita.

I bought a mikan.  
(Masu form) Mikan o kaimashita.  
(Plain form) Mikan o kata.

Have you bought a mikan?  
(Plain form) Mikan o kata? (rising intonation)

Did you drink a coffee?  
(Masu form) Kohii o nomimashita ka?  
(Plain form) Kohii o nonda?

DELETIONS
Table of Contents

How to shorten sentences and sound more colloquial

Usually, you don't have to worry about whether to use wa or ga, because most subjects can usually be deleted. You can't get something wrong, if you leave it out in the first place. So we'll work on the parts of sentences that you can delete, starting with subjects.

If you turn to a Japanese and suddenly make a statement:

Ashita paatii ni iku.  
([I'm] going to the party tomorrow.)

The listener will *naturally* assume the subject is you. So don't bother supplying any subject. To do so, in fact, is not natural; a Japanese wouldn't normally do it.

If you turn to a Japanese and suddenly ask a question:

Ashita paatii ni iku?  
([Are you] going to the party tomorrow?)

The listener will assume the subject is himself or herself. Easy! Most one-on-one conversations where you or the listener is the subject *don't need an explicit subject*. No chance of screwing up wa/ga here.

If you suddenly turn to a Japanese and want to make a statement or ask a question about some other person altogether, use wa after that person's name or title the first time you mention that person:
Shachoo wa, ashita paatii ni iku? (Is the shachoo going to the party tomorrow?)

Let's just say the wa introduces a change in subject. This time it signals a change from the default you the listener to the shachoo. After you establish that you're talking about the president you can go back to dropping subjects again:

Sono ato wa, kaeru ka na? (Is he going home after that?—again, there is some vagueness added with ka na (I wonder).

Don't be too forward making assumptions about other people. This trick also stops the listener from thinking the question is back to being about themself. There's a strong tendency for questions to erase understood info and you have to signal that things are unchanged. Usually you play with the verb a little bit to get this across. Note that the change in time being talked about was also signaled with a wa.)

Note that this tendency to delete in Japanese parallels the point where an English native speaker would use plain pronouns like, I, you, he, she, they. When you start a comment about yourself, you use I (Japanese people delete). When you ask about the listener, you use you (Japanese people delete). When you've first established someone and then keep going with that person, you use he or she (Japanese people delete). See? Simple. **So don't go around using watakushi, anata, kare and kanojo all the time.** Use them the first time only and then get rid of them.

Deleting other established information

Just like with subjects, any info that's been established can be deleted, and any changes in established info can be signaled using wa:

Ashita paatii ni iku? ([Are you] going to the party tomorrow?)

Un, anata wa? (Yeah, how about you?-- info about paatii ni and iku unchanged, therefore deleted.

Subject changed to original questioner, so the change is signaled with wa.)

Un-n, ikanai (No, I'm not going.--info about paatii ni still deleted, iku comes back as ikanai because it has changed form.)

Sono ato no eiga wa? (How about the movie afterwards?--the established info paatii changed to eiga so we use wa to establish the change in understood information. Understood info that *hasn't* changed is still left out, like the subject boku and the action iku.)

Un-n, ikanai.

This is pretty much how deletions work whether it be subjects or something else. In general, always go for deletions if possible. This section also serves the purpose of giving you a feel for wa.
Keigo - Honorific expressions

Table of Contents

See more examples in Systematic Japanese book from P118

Sonkeigo

- **Deferential expressions** – used to **describe the listener**, things connected with him & his actions (or the person being referred to) **in a way that shows the respect** of the speaker for the listener.

Conversion rules

**Group 1:** Change the ‘i’ sound to a ‘a’ sound and add ‘re’ directly afterwards.
- ie: Ikimasu → Ikaremasu

**Group 2:** Just add ‘rare’
- ie: Okimasu → Okiraremasu

**Group 3:** Kimasu → Koraremasu
Shimasu → Saremasu

Kenjougo

- **Humble expressions** – expressions in which **the speaker humbles himself** and belittles his own actions to show his respect to the listener (or the person being referred to).

Teineigo

- **Polite expressions** – expressions in which **the speaker conveys politeness directly to the listener**. The endings ‘desu’ & ‘masu’ are classed as **teineigo**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masu Form</th>
<th>Sonkeigo</th>
<th>Kenjougo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ikimasu (to go)</td>
<td>Ikiraseimasu</td>
<td>mairimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimasu (to come)</td>
<td>Kireimasu</td>
<td>orimasu (V te orimasu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imasu (to be (exist))</td>
<td>Imaseimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V te imasu)</td>
<td>(V te irashaimasu)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabemasu (to eat)</td>
<td>Meshiagarimasu</td>
<td>itadakimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nomimasu (to drink)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shimasu (to do)</td>
<td>Nasaimasu</td>
<td>Itashimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(setsumei) shimasu</td>
<td>Go (setsumei) nasaimasu</td>
<td>Go (setsumei) itashimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iimasu (to say)</td>
<td>Osshaimasu</td>
<td>moushimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shitte imasu (to know)</td>
<td>Go-zonji desu</td>
<td>Zonjite orimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-to omoimasu (to think)</td>
<td></td>
<td>-to zonjimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nemasu (to sleep)</td>
<td>Oyasumi ni narimasu</td>
<td>ukagaimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kikimasu (to hear, ask)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houmon shimasu (call, visit)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na adj / Noun desu</td>
<td>Na/N de irashaimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimasu</td>
<td>* omeshi ni narimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mimasu (to see)</td>
<td>goran ni narimasu</td>
<td>Haiken shimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V te kuremasu) (to give)</td>
<td>(V te) kudasaimasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V te agemasu) (to give)</td>
<td>* (V te) sashigemasu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moraimasu (get, receive)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Itadakimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V te moraimasu</td>
<td>* choudai shimasu</td>
<td>V te itadakimasu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table of Contents**

**Examples:**
Is the company manager going on a company trip?
Professor Bob, are you coming to school tomorrow?
I met Darth Vader's mother in Tokyo.

I will be at home tomorrow.
What did you do in Japan?
Please have something to eat or drink.
Is that person Dr Bob?
How do you do? I am Yoda.
Did you see George Lucas’s ‘Star Wars’?
I had my teacher lend me this textbook.
Are you reading a Japanese newspaper every day?

I got a letter from my teacher at school.
I’d like you to hold this for a while.
The company president is calling you.
Have you read this book?
I’ll call Mr Tanaka.
I’ll bring it immediately.
Shall I lend you an umbrella?
I’d like you to hold this for a while.

**TEST SECTION**

Give the honorific equivalent of the underlined words, maintaining their original forms (eg: plain, polite)

_Eg_: Gakkou e _itta_ ➔ Gakkou e _irrashatta_  

Cover the right hand column
Examples:
The bag department is on the 5th floor.
Kaban-uriba wa 5-kai de gozaimasu.

Sonkeigo for **Verbs** - OTHER HONORIFIC & HUMBLE FORMS:

**VERBS**

- **‘ru’ and ‘u’ verbs**
  - **Honorific forms**: o + V-stem + **ni naru**
  - **Humble forms**: o + V-stem + **suru**

**ni narimashita**

More polite.
- cannot be used with Group 3 verbs or verbs in which the masu-form consists of one syllable, such as imasu, nemasu, mimasu, etc

**STRUCTURE:** o + masu-form + ni narimashita

Examples:
Has the manager left already?  Kachou wa mou o-kaeri ni narimashita ka?
Would you like to read this newspaper?  Kono shinbun o o-yomi ni narimashita ka?
The painting was done by the president.  Kono e wa shachou ga o-kaki ni narimashita.
Are you going to buy this?  Solo-sensei ga o-kaki ni natta hon o yomimasita.
I read the book Professor Solo wrote.  Koko de o-machi shite orimasu.

The sonkeigo above can be turned into requests as follows - >

**Examples:**
Please drink some more.  Motto o nomi (ni natte) kudasai.
Please have some more.  Motto meshiagatte kudasai.
Will you please wait in the lobby?  Robii de o-machi kudasai.
Will you please come in?  Douzo o-hairi kudasai.

**STRUCTURE:** N (A2) de gozaimasu / dewa gozaimasen

Examples:
This is my book.  Kore wa watashi no hon desu. *(becomes)*
The autumn leaves were very beautiful.  Kouyou ga totemo kirei deshita. *(becomes)*

When the subject of a sentence is the listener or a person associated with the listener, - de irasshimasu is used.

**Examples:**
Are you Mr Smith?  Anata wa Sumisu-san desu ka? *(becomes)*
Is your mother doing well? Okaasan wa o-genki desu ka? (becomes) Okaasan wa o-genki de irasshimasu ka?

**STRUCTURE:** N ga gozaimasu / N wa gozaimasen
This is the polite form of N ga arimasu / N wa arimasen.

Examples:
There will be a meeting tomorrow. Ashita kaigi ga gozaimasu.

**TEST SECTION**

Give the honorific or humble equivalent of the underlined words, maintaining their original forms (eg: plain, polite)

*Eg:* Sensei ga hanashimasu ➔ Sensei ga o-hanashi ni narimasu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensei ga hon o yomimasu</th>
<th>Sensei ga hon o o-yomi ni narimasu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shachou no kaban o mochimasu</td>
<td>Shachou no kaban o o-mochi shimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomodachi no otoosan ga kau</td>
<td>Tomodachi no otoosan ga o-kai ni naru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanaka-san wa asa nyuusu o kikimasu</td>
<td>Tanaka-san wa asa nyuusu o o-kiki ni narimasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensei ni bideo o okutta</td>
<td>Sensei ni bideo o o-okurishita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**POLITE FAMILY TERMS**

**Table of Contents**

Honorific terms are used when referring to the members of other families.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Own family</th>
<th>Someone else’s family</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Father</td>
<td>Chichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother</td>
<td>Haha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older Brother</td>
<td>Ani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older Sister</td>
<td>Ane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Younger brother</td>
<td>Ototo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Younger Sister</td>
<td>Imooto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husband</td>
<td>Shujin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wife</td>
<td>Kanai/Tsuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child</td>
<td>Kodomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents</td>
<td>Ryoshin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siblings</td>
<td>Kyoudai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Couple</td>
<td>Fuufu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandfather</td>
<td>Sofu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>Sobo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncle</td>
<td>Oji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt</td>
<td>Oba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cousin</td>
<td>Itoko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
Are your family well? Go-kazoku wa o-genki de irashaimasu ka?
I received a letter from my friend’s parents. Tomodachi no go-ryoshin kara o-tegami o itadakimashita.

I saw your husband’s picture in a newspaper. Shinbun de go-shujin no o-shashin o haiken shimashita.

How many brothers and sisters do you have? Go-kyoudai wa nan-nin irrashaimasu ka?

Mother, it is a call from father. Okaasan, otoosan kara denwa desu yo.

i-adjectives and Na-adjectives
To change these adjectives into honorific/polite form, just insert ‘o’ in front of them -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>i-adjective</th>
<th>Honorific/polite form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wakai (young)</td>
<td>O-wakai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yasashii (gentle)</td>
<td>O- yasashii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinsetsu da (kind)</td>
<td>go-shinsetsu da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isogashii (difficult)</td>
<td>O- isogashii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirei da (pretty, clean)</td>
<td>O- kirei da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jouzu da (skillful)</td>
<td>O- jouzu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
If you have time, won’t you come to the park with us? O-hima na toki, issho ni kouen ni irrashaimasen ka? Bob-sensei wa kono goro o-isogashii sou desu.

Additional notes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mondai</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shitsumon</td>
<td>Question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotae</td>
<td>Answer/reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotesete</td>
<td>Answer in reply to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshi</td>
<td>Particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bun</td>
<td>Sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotoba/tango</td>
<td>A word/term/phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikata</td>
<td>Phrase/term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsukotte</td>
<td>Make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaiwa</td>
<td>Conversation/dialogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunpoo</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E o mite te ni kotaba oreite kudasai</td>
<td>Look at the picture and fill in the words and phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotae no bun kaite kudasai</td>
<td>Write a sentence to reply to sentence A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kansei</th>
<th>Complete/finish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tekitou</td>
<td>Suitable/appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukshuu</td>
<td>Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yooni</td>
<td>Like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doushi</td>
<td>Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meishi</td>
<td>Noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katachi</td>
<td>Form (shape)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naka</td>
<td>Inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsugi</td>
<td>Next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tango, kashi</td>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ts, kei (foomu)</td>
<td>Form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SENTENCE STRUCTURES

Table of Contents

SENTENCE STRUCTURES
[NAME wa] → WHEN → WHERE or WHAT → ACTION WORD (Verb)

AMARI – ‘Not Very’, Not Much, Not Many, Not Enough, Not Well.
Amari always needs a negative word & is used to moderate the degree of negativity.
STRUCTURE: Amari A1 Negative
A2 Negative
RULE: if you see AMARI, make the word after the following adjective negative and past tense depending on the tense of the sentence.

Examples:
Q: Is Peter handsome?
A: No, he is not very handsome
I don’t eat much.
I don’t drink very much.
I don’t read very much.
This food is not very nice.
This food is not very good.
I don’t have much money, so I cannot take a trip.
It is not so hot in Thailand now.
Japan is not very quiet.
I don’t drink alcohol so much.
This dictionary is not so good, is it?
Recently I have not been playing tennis often.
I cannot run very fast.
Shanghai is not very cold.

Peter-san wa handsome desu ka?
Iie, amari handsome dewa arimasen.
Watashi wa amari tabemasen.
Watashi wa amari nomimasen.
Watashi wa amari yomimasen.
Kono tabemono wa amari oishii dewa arimasen.
Kono hon wa amari (yokunai/dewa arimasen).
Okanegai amari nai kara ryokou wa dekimasen.
Tha wa ima amari atsukunai desu.
Nihon wa amari shizuka dewa arimasen.
O-sake o amari nomimasen.
Kono jisho wa amari yoku arimasen ne.
Saikin (recently) amari tenisu wa shite imasen.
Kinou no paatii wa amari tanoshikunakatta desu.
Watashi wa amari hayaku hashiremasen.
Shanghai wa amari samukunai desu.

SAYING WHERE THINGS ARE – ARIMASU / ARU = Existence
ie: the pen is on the table.

Arimasu is a verb used together with the particle ‘ni’ to indicate the existance of an inanimate thing in a particular place – it means: be, there be, exist, have.

Any sentence ending in ‘ARIMASU’ – translate as THERE IS or THERE ARE.
Any sentence ending in ‘ARIMASU ka’ – translate as ARE THERE? or IS THERE?

STRUCTURE: PLACE ni NOUN ga arimasu

Examples:
There is a pen on top of the table.
There is a car in front of the house.
There is a chair beside the table.
There is a television in the living room.

Tsukue no ue ni pen ga arimasu.
Uchi no maek ni kuruma ga arimasu.
Taberu no soba ni chair ga arimasu.
Ima ni terebi ga arimasu.
Also describing WHERE things are.
NI wa N2 ni arimasu/imasu.
The book is on the desk.
Mr Rau is in the room.
The bank is on the other side of the station.
Where is the station?
The park is over there.
Waseda University is in Tokyo.
Today’s newspaper is here.
Excuse me, where is the Bank of Tokyo?
Dave is over there.

There is a television.
There is a stereo in this car.

Arimasu
is used for anything EXCEPT living things.

Examples:
Do you have a dictionary?
Do you have a pen?
I have 3 children.

(also) ‘have’ (refers to possession)

Examples:
Do you have a dictionary?
Do you have a pen?
I have 3 children.

DESCRIBING What [Event] occurs/is done in Place

Sentence Structure: Place de [EVENT] ga arimasu
Q: What is happening?
A: [EVENT] ga arimasu.
Q: Where is the event?
A: The event is at/in PLACE.

I went to see the Motor Show in Odaiba.
There is a party at Sam’s today.

WHAT IS IN [PLACE]?

Change the format of the above sentence structure to:
STRUCTURE: PLACE ni nani ga arimasu ka?
(the NOUN changes to ‘nani’ & ‘ka’ is used)

Examples:
Q: What is inside the meeting room?
A: A TV is inside the meeting room.

Q: What is inside the meeting room?
A: A TV is inside the meeting room.
Is there an English newspaper in this library?  Kono toshokan ni Eigo no shinbun ga arimasu ka?
There are many foreign restaurants in New York.  New York ni wa gaikoku no resutoran ga takusan arimasu.
Does the room have a shower?  Heya ni wa shower ga arimasu ka?
Is there a supermarket in Ginza?  Kono machi (ni) wa daigaku ga mittsu arimasu.
There are 2 TV’s in my apartment.  Watashi no apaato (ni) wa terebi ga nidai arimasu.
Detroit is in (the state of) Michigan.  Detroit wa Michigan-shu ni arimasu.
There is no TV at Mr Smith’s house.  Sumisu-san no uchi (ni) wa terebi ga nai.

**Arimasu is a verb that indicates Existance**

N1 ni N2 ga V-te arimasu

ie: A TV has been placed in the lobby.  Robii ni TV ga oite arimasu.
A name is written on the notebook.  Nooto ni namee ga kaite arimasu.

If N2 becomes the subject, the sentence structure becomes:

N2 wa N1 ni V-te arimasu

The TV has been placed in the lobby.  TV wa robii ni oite arimasu.
Where is that restaurant?  Sono restaurant wa doko ni arimasu ka?

**Verbs which indicate placement of a thing:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>MASU Form</th>
<th>Te-Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Place</td>
<td>Okimasu</td>
<td>Oite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hang</td>
<td>Kakemasu</td>
<td>Kakete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place on or load</td>
<td>Nosemasu</td>
<td>No sete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Put away</td>
<td>Shimaimasu</td>
<td>Shimatte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V-te okimasu has 3 meanings:

1) **PREPARATION:**
   - Before I go on the trip, I will buy and & keep the tickets with me.  Ryokou ni iku mae ni, kippu o katte okimasu.
   - Make the room beautiful.  Heya o kirei ni shite okimasu.
   - I have bought a ticket in advance.  Kippu o katte okimashita.
   - I have reserved a table in the restaurant.  Restoran no teberu o yoyaku shite okimashita.

2) **A MEASURE:**
   - When you use the scissors, please place them back where they were.  Hasami o tsukattara, moto no tokoro ni shimatte oite kudasai.

3) **TO SUSTAIN THE RESULTANT STATE:**
   - As it is cold, please keep the window closed.  Samui desu kara, mado o shimete oite kudasai

**WHO IS IN [PLACE]??**

**STRUCTURE:**  PLACE ni dare ka imasu ka?  (Is there anyone in PLACE?)
**NOTE:** We use ‘imasu’ here since we are talking about PEOPLE not objects
**Examples:**  Q:  Daidokoro ni dare ka imasu ka?  (Is there anyone in the kitchen?)
A: Hai, imasu. (YES)
Or A: Iie, [PLACE] ni wa dare moimasen (No, there is no one in the kitchen)

IF YES, Q: Dare **ga** imasu ka? (Who is there?)
A: [PERSON] **ga** imasu.
A: Zack is there.        Zack-san **ga** imasu.

**Examples:**
Mr Tanaka is in the office.   Jimusho ni Tanaka-san **ga** imasu.
Carl is in the library.       Toshokan ni Carl-san **ga** imasu.
Mike is in the living room.   Ima ni Mike-san **ga** imasu.

**WHAT [IS/WAS] [Person] doing?**

**STRUCTURE:**
Q: [TIME] [NAME] nani o shite imasu ka?
A: [TIME] [NAME] wa V-**て** imasu.

**Examples of ‘is doing’:**
Q: What is Brad doing today?
   Kyou Brad-san wa nani o shite imasu ka?
Q: What is Simon doing tomorrow?
   Ashita Simon-san wa nani o shite imasu ka?

**Example of ‘was doing’:**
Q: What did Tanaka do yesterday evening?
   Kinou no yoru Tanaka-san wa nani o shite imashita ka?

**Answer examples:**
At 5 o’clock yesterday, Tanaka was smoking.
   Kinou no goji Tanaka-san wa tobako o suite imashita
At 8 o’clock yesterday, Tanaka was reading the paper.
   Kinou no hachiji Tanaka-san wa shinbun o yonde imashita
At 9 o’clock yesterday, Tanaka was shopping
   Kinou no kuji Tanaka-san wa kaimono o shitte imashita
Mr Suzuki is eating dinner now.
   Ima Suzuki-san wa bangohan o tabete imasu
Hanako is reading a book now.
   Ima Hanako-san wa hon o yonde imasu.

**BAAI WA**
Clause 1 hypothesises the occurrence of an undesirable event, and Clause 2 indicates how to cope with it.

**STRUCTURE:**
Verb + **ta or nai** form + [**baai wa**
Adj –i
Na – na
Noun – no

**Examples:**
In case a fire breaks out, what shall I do?
   Kaji ga okita **baai wa**, dou shitara ii desu ka?
In case of rain, it will be postponed to next week.
   Ame no **baai wa**, raishuu ni shimasu.

**Add more examples! ⇐ ask Harumi to check the below**

If the shop is closed, please call.
   Mise ga shimatte iru **baai wa**, denwa o shite kudasai.
In case the library is open, please wait for me inside.
   Toshokan ga aite **baai wa**, naka de matte ite kudasai.
BAKARI – about/or so/only/just/have just (done)/always
This expression indicates that only a little time has passed after an act was completed.

STRUCTURE: V-ta bakari desu

Examples:
Karen has just eaten breakfast.
Steve has just finished reading the Japan Times.
I have just finished taking a walk in the park.
I have just seen a movie.
I have just finished my homework.
Since I have just finished work, I have not eaten dinner yet.
I have just finished drinking a coffee.
Since I have just come to Japan, I don’t understand anything.

The only thing Tomoko is doing is playing.
Dennis is drinking only beer.

BA YOKATTA

This expression expresses the speaker's regret.

Examples:
I wish I had asked my teacher.
I wish I had read that book.
I wish Mr Wells had gone to Japan, don’t you?
I wish I had studied English harder.
I wish I had met Tony.
I wish I had written a letter.
I wish I had eaten breakfast.
I wish I had returned home earlier.

I wish I had asked my teacher.
I wish I had read that book.
I wish Mr Wells had gone to Japan, don’t you?
I wish I had studied English harder.
I wish I had met Tony.
I wish I had written a letter.
I wish I had eaten breakfast.
I wish I had returned home earlier.

CHIKAKU

Examples:
Q: Is Tobu store close to Yoyogi kouen?
A: Yes, it is.
Is the bank close to the supermarket?
Q: Where is the post office?
A: Close to Meguro station.
The PO is near the station.
Yesterday I went to a bookshop close to the station.
Is there a cheap hotel near the station?
Is there a bookshop near the bank?
I met a friend near the park.

Close to

Tobu store wa Yoyogi kouen no chikaku ni arimasu ka?
Hai, arimasu.
Ginkou wa supaa no chikaku ni arimasu ka?
Yuubinkyouku wa doko desu ka?
Meguro-eki no chikaku desu.
Yuubinkyouku wa eki no chikaku ni arimasu.
Kinou eki no chikaku no honya e ikimashita.
Eki no chikaku ni yasui hoteru wa arimasu ka?
Ginkou no chikaku ni honya wa arimasu ka?
Kouen no chikaku de tomodachi ni aimashita.
**chinami ni**  
**incidentally, by the way**

**chinami ni** (ちなみに) is a conjunction which is used to add supplementary information which is not necessarily on the topic but still related to what is being discussed. chinami ni (ちなみに) is also used to ask for supplementary information. It is roughly equivalent to incidentally, by the way or for your information in English.

きょう しゅくだいをわすれたせいとが10にんもいました。ちなみにぜんいんだんしです。
There were as many as 10 students who forgot their homework today. Incidentally, all of them are boys.

こんなこうきゅうしゃはかえないからきょうみけど、ちなみに、いくらですか。
I can’t afford to buy a luxurious car like this. But just out of curiosity, how much is it?

---

**DEMO**

[Dare, Doko, itsu, nan, dore, etc] + Demo  -  No limitations

Anything, anywhere, anytime, anything – total affirmation

This form indicates there are NO LIMITATIONS or conditions.

**STRUCTURE:**

**Q:** QW (Question Word) V-mashou ka?

**A:** QW demo ii desu.

**Examples:**

Q: Where shall we go?
A: Anywhere is good.

Q: What kind of restaurant shall we eat at?
A: Any restaurant is good.

Please call me any time.

Any time is OK/Any time will do.

No matter who it is / anyone
No matter what it is / anything
No matter when it is / any time
No matter where it is / anywhere
No matter which it is / anything

Anyone can enter that library.
I can go anywhere by myself.
I can sleep in any place.
I can eat any Japanese food.
I can drink any Japanese drink.

Hamburger shops are everywhere.
Prof. Kato is kind to everybody.

Doko de ikemashou ka?
Doko demo ii desu.

Donna restaurant de tabemashou ka?
Donna restaurant demo ii desu.

Itsu demo denwa shite kudasai.

(Nanji/itsu) demo ii desu.
Nan demo ii desu.
Doko demo ii desu.

Dare demo ii desu.
Nan demo ii desu.
Itsu demo ii desu.
Doko demo ii desu.
Dore demo ii desu.

Ano toshokan wa dare demo hai理由ます。
Hitori de doko demo ikemasu.
Watashi wa doko demo nemuremasu.
Nihon ryouri wa nan demo taberaremasu.
Nihon no nomimono wa nan demo nememasu.

Hamburger no mise wa doko ni demo arimasu.
Kato-sensei wa dare ni demo shinsetsu desu.
- DESHOU (Dictionary form: Darou)  - Will be, shall be, probably
- KAMO SHIREMASEN - expression of conjecture may, might, possibly.

STRUCTURE:
Verb| + Dict. Form| + [deshou
Adj | + Dict. Form| [  
Na] + Dict. Form + [kamo
Noun] | shiremasen

Examples: DESHOU – is used when the speaker's judgement contains uncertainty and he does not want to appear too assertive.

It will probably rain tomorrow.
I guess he will not come to the party.
I guess the weather will be fine tomorrow.
Food is expensive in Japan, isn't it?
That man is probably Mike.
She is very beautiful, isn't she?
Mr Smith's apartment was probably expensive, wasn't it?
I think that Japanese is probably difficult.
Brad was in Japan for 5 years, so he is probably fluent in Japanese.
My friend is probably in Japan now.
My friend will probably come.
My friend will probably not come.
Tony will probably go.
Tony will probably didn't go.
He will probably go to Japan.
Tonight it will probably snow.
I wonder if Mary spoke Japanese in Japan.
I suppose Janine got tired.
I guess the mail will come at 10.
You are going to a party tomorrow, aren't you?
It was cold in Gunma wasn't it?
Roger is probably good at skiing.
That man is probably Chinese.
John will probably come.

Ashita wa ame ga furu deshou.
Kare wa tabun paatii ni konai deshou.
Ashita wa tabun ii tenki deshou.
Nihon wa tabemono ga takai deshou?
Ano hito ga Mike-san deshou.
Kanojo wa totemo kirei deshou?
Smith-san no apaato wa takakatta deshou ne?
Nihongo wa muzukashii darou to omoimasu.
Brad-san wa Nihon ni go-nen ita kara, Nihongo ga jouzu deshou.
Watashi no tomadachi wa ima Nihon ni iru deshou.
Watashi no tomadachi wa kuru deshou.
Watashi no tomadachi wa konai deshou.
Tony-san wa iku deshou.
Tony-san wa ikanakatta deshou.
Ano hito wa Nihon ni iku deshou.
Konban yuki ga furu deshou.
Mary-san wa Nihon de Nihongo o hanashita deshou ka?
Janine-san wa tsukareta deshou.
Tegami wa ju-jii ni kuru deshou.
Ashita partii ni iku deshou?
Gunma de samukatta deshou?
Roger-san wa ski ga jouzu darou.
Ano hito wa Chugoku-jin darou.
John-san ga tabun kuru deshou.

KAMOSHIRENAI/ kamo shiremasen - indicates conjecture and corresponds to 'may, might'

Indicates that the speaker is making a judgement about what may possibly happen, although he cannot be absolutely certain.

STRUCTURE:
1) Verb (Plain Form) + kamoshirenai iе: iku ➔ iku kamoshirenai
2) i-Adj (Plain Form)+ kamoshirenai iе: atsui ➔ atsui kamoshirenai
3) Na-Adj (Plain Form minus ‘da’) + kamoshirenai iе: benri da ➔ benri kamoshirenai
4) Noun + kamoshirenai iе: sensei ➔ sensei kamoshirenai
DOCHIRA

This expression is used to ask which is more satisfactory with regard to the adjective, A or B, which can both be things or people.

STRUCTURE: Q: A to B to dochira ga [Adjective] desu ka?

Eg: Which do you like most – dogs or cats?

ANSWERS:

➢ **IF A & B are SIMILAR, use:**
A: (A mo B mo) dochira ga [adjective]-negative desu
- used when you think that both A & B are the same – neither is better than the other.

Examples:

Q: Which is more busy/lively - Shibuya or Shinjuku?
A: BOTH Shibuya & Shinjuku are busy/lively.

➢ **IF A & B are DIFFERENT, use:**
A: B no hou ga [A yori] [adjective] desu
- used when you think that B is more satisfactory than A with respect to the adjective.

Examples:

Q: Which do you like better - beer or wine?
A: I like beer more than wine.

Q: Which do you like more - Chicago or Tokyo?
A: I like Tokyo more than Chicago.

Q: Which do you like more – spring or autumn?
A: Which is bigger – Mt Fuji or Tokyo Tower?
A: Mt Fuji is bigger than Tokyo Tower.
Tokyo is bigger than Kyoto.
Kyoto is smaller than Tokyo.
Grapes are cheaper than melons.
Oranges are cheaper than apples.
This car is bigger than that car.

Q: Yoda, which do you prefer - wine or women?
A: I like wine more than women.

Q: Which is more interesting, baseball or soccer?
A: I like soccer more than baseball.

Q: Which is cooler, Auckland or Wellington?
A: Wellington is cooler than Auckland.

The subway is more convenient than the bus.

Both Darth and Yoda can play the piano, but Yoda is better than Darth.

I saw a big watch and a small one at the Dept. Store.
My older sister says that a larger one is better, but I want a smaller one.

A lively town is better than a quiet one.
Q: Which is more interesting – Paris or London?
A: Paris is more interesting than London.

Q: Which came earlier – Mr Hayashi or Mr Yamada?

NOTE: Both

yori ‘than –’
Indicates that the preceding noun or verb shows the measure for comparison.

Examples of usage –
Mr Hayashi is taller than me.
Going by subway is faster than going by bus.
Please give me that rather than this.
I like rice more than bread.
Kyoto is colder than Tokyo.
America is larger than Japan.
Carl is younger than I am.
I eat more than Tony.
Going by bus is cheaper than going by car.

Hayashi-san wa watashi yori se ga takai desu.
Chikatetsu de iku hou ga, yori hayai desu.
Kore yori sore o kudasai.
Gohan no hou ga pan yori suki desu.
Kyoto wa Tokyo yori samui desu.
Amerika wa Nihon yori ookii desu.
Carl-san no hou ga watashi yori wakai desu.
Watashi no hou ga Tony-san yori yoku tabemasu.
Basu de iku hou ga kuruma de iku yori yasui desu.

→ See ICHIBAN
→ See DORE
DONO GURAI - How long/How many/How much/How far/How often?

Is widely used to ask the amount of money, length, distance, quantity or number. The meaning varies depending on the predicate which follows it.

Examples:
How **long** does it take to go from Tokyo to Kyoto?
Tokyo kara Kyoto made **dono gurai** kakarimasu ka?

How **long** does it take from here to the station?
Koko kara eki made **dono gurai** kakarimasu ka?

How **much** does a car cost?  How **long** does it take by car?
Kuruma wa **dono gurai** kakarimasu ka?

How **many hours** does it take to go from Tokyo to Kyoto?
Dono gurai Nihongo o benkyou-shimashita ka?

Q: How **long** did you study Japanese?
A: I studied it for 3 years.

**DONO KATA**
An expression asking which is the **person** among 3 or more whose name or job is identified by N. ie: you know their name but you don't know where they are.

**STRUCTURE:** N wa **dono kata** desu ka?

Examples:
Which one is Carl?
Carl-san wa **dono kata** desu ka?

Which one is the photographer
Kameraman wa **dono kata** desu ka?

Which one is Mr Scott?
Scott-san wa **dono** kata desu ka?

That tall man with black hair is.
Ano se ga takakute, kami ga kuroi hito desu.

**DONNA**
**What kind of….**
This form is used to ask the nature, type, characteristics, etc of a thing(s) or a person(s) N.
A noun always comes after ‘donna’.

**STRUCTURE:** N-1 wa **donna** N-2 desu ka?

Examples:
Q: What kind of person is Miss Kimura?
A: She is beautiful

Q: What kind of **sports** do you like?
A: I like tennis

Q: What kind of **music** do you like?
Q: What kind of **shirts** do you like?
Q: What kind of **town** is Nara?
DONNA KOTO
DESCRIPTION: This form asks generally what kinds of things are done at P.
STRUCTURE: (Verb or Place) de donna koto o shimashita ka?
Add examples – ask H to check

DOU - How/How is it?/How do you like?/How about?
Dou is used to ask the listener the condition (good, bad, etc.) of N or to ask his/her impression if N.
STRUCTURE: N wa dou desu ka?
Examples:
Q: How is Japanese food? Nihon no tabemono wa dou desu ka?
Q: How are Japanese cars? Nihon no kuruma wa dou desu ka?
How shall I do it? Sore wa dou suru desu ka?
How can I go to the station? Eki made dou ikuru desu ka?
How are you feeling today? Kyou wa kibun wa dou desu ka?
How did you like your trip to Kyoto? Kyoto ryokou wa dou deshita ka?
What do you think of this movie? Kono eiga wa dou omoimasu ka?
How do you read this kanji? Kono kanji wa dou yomimasu ka?
How do you write this letter? Kono tegami wa dou kakimasu ka?
How’s your new apartment? Atarashii apaato wa dou desu ka?
How’s your coffee? Kohii wa dou desu ka?
How do you read this word? Kono kotoba wa dou yomimasu ka?
How do eat this food? Kono tabemono wa dou tabemasu ka?

DORE
The polite form is ‘Dochira’ which also means ‘who’ or ‘where’
Dore becomes dono before a noun it modifies. It becomes doko when expressing ‘where’.
Examples:
Which is the cheapest of them? Kono uchi dore ga ichiban yasui desu ka?
Which do you like the best? Dore ga ichiban suki desu ka?
Which book is interesting? Dono hon ga omoshiroi desu ka?
Which is Karen’s umbrella? Karen-san no kasa wa dore desu ka?
Which is Tony’s car? Tony-san no kuruma wa dore desu ka?
Which is Tony’your seat? Anata no isu wa dore desu ka?
Which is Sam’s box? Sam-san no hako wa dore desu ka?

This is an interrogative for asking a question.
STRUCTURE: Doshite (plain form)-n desu ka?
Examples:
A: I took a day off from the company yesterday. Kinou kaisha o yasumimashita.
B: Why did you take a day off? Doshite yasumimashita ka?
A: Because I had a fever Netsu ga arimashita kara (= because)
How do you write this character?

Q: Why do you go to that restaurant?
A: Because it is quiet.

Why did you want to go to France?
Why don’t you read a newspaper in the morning?
Why are you studying Japanese?

Kono ji wa **doshite** kakun desu ka?

**Doshite** ano restaurant e iku na desu ka?
Shizuka na desu.

**Doshite** Furansu e ikitai na desu ka?

**Doshite** asa shinbun o yomimasen ka?

**Doshite** Nihongo o benkyou-shite imasen ka?

Note: **kara** (because) is attached to the end of a sentence or a phrase when stating a reason(s).

ie: As I have a stomach ache, I won’t eat anything.
Onaka ga itai (desu/da) **kara**, nani o tabemasen.

**DOU IU** and **DONNA**
**Dou iu is used in almost the same way as ‘donna’**
– used when asking for a more detailed description of something.

Example:
May 5th is a holiday, but what kind of holiday is it?

Gogatsu itsuka wa yasumi desu ga, **dou iu** hi desu ka?

**DOU YATTE**
**Dou yatte is used to ask the way or method of doing something.**

Examples:
How do you go to your University?
I take a No. 16 bus from Kyoto station and get off at Daigaku-mae.

Daigaku made **dou yatte** ikimasu ka?
Kyoto-eki kara 16-ban no basu ni notte, Daigaku-mae eki de orimasu.

**HAJIMERU – .....
‘begin or start such and such’.....**

Examples:
When did you **start** to study Japanese?
I heard that Mr Vader will **begin** to work.
at a restaurant next month.
My computer broke down when I **began** to write a report.

It’su kara Nihongo o **nari-hajimemashita** ka?
Vader-san wa raigetsu kara resutoran de **hataraki-hajimeru** sou desu.

Repooto o **kaki-hajimetara**, konpyuutaa ga koshou shite shimaimashita.

Kinou kara atsuku **nari-hajimemashita** ne?

Eiga wa ichi-ji kara **hajimarimasu**.

Gakkou wa hachi-ji han kara **hajimemasu**.

Hachi-gatsu kara hon o yomihajimemashita.

Itsu kara kuruma o atumehajimetag desu ka?
HAZU – ‘I expect that, it is expected that, is expected to, I am fairly certain that…..’  
The noun ‘hazu’ INDICATES THE SPEAKERS’S EXPECTATION concerning something or somebody, but not the speaker him/herself.

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb]+ *Dict. Form* ]
i-Adj ]+ *Dict. Form* ] + hazu
Na| + Da → Na  ]
Noun + no ]

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I expect that Mr Clark will go to the party.</td>
<td>Clark-san wa partii ni iku hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect that Jon knows Carl.</td>
<td>Jon-san wa Carl-san o shitte iru hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect that book was expensive.</td>
<td>Ano hon wa takakatta hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/he is expected to be 45 years old now.</td>
<td>Ano hito wa ima yonjuugo-sai no hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim is expected not to come, since she is sick.</td>
<td>Kim-san wa byouki da kara, konai hazu desu yo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This computer should be simple.</td>
<td>Kono kompyuta wa kantan na hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect that apartment is clean.</td>
<td>Sono apaato wa kirei na hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is supposed to come.</td>
<td>Kanojo wa kuru hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He should be home today.</td>
<td>Kare wa kyou ie ni iru hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We should be arriving in NY around 9 o'clock.</td>
<td>Ku-ji goro ni wa New York ni tsuku hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The meeting is supposed to be over before 4pm.</td>
<td>Kaigi wa yo-ji mae ni owaru hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The department store is supposed to be open at 10.</td>
<td>Depaato wa ju-ji ni aku hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was supposed to be back by noon.</td>
<td>Kare wa hiru made ni modoru hazu desu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HODO – ’about, or so, (not) as…as…to the extent of…’

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kyoto station is about 1 kilometre from here.</td>
<td>Kyoto eki wa koko kara ichi kiro hodo desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please wait here 10 minutes or so.</td>
<td>Juu-pun hodo koko de matte kudasai.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll take about 1 kilogram of that coffee.</td>
<td>Sono kohii o ichi kiro hodo kudasai.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English is not as difficult as Japanese.</td>
<td>Eigo wa Nihongo hodo muzukashiku arimasen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can’t walk as fast as you can.</td>
<td>Boku wa kimi hodo hayaku arukemasen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no student who studies as hard as Carl.</td>
<td>Carl hodo yoku benkyou suru gakusei wa inai.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q: Is Carl as good at skiing as Tony?</td>
<td>Carl-san wa Tony-san to onaji gurai sukii ga jouzu desu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Yes, Carl is as good at skiing as Tony.</td>
<td>Hai, (Carl-san wa) Tony-san to onaji gurai jouzu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: No, Carl is not as good at skiing as Tony.</td>
<td>Iie, (Carl-san wa) Tony-san hodo wa jouzu dewa arimasen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HOSHII – …..want……

**STRUCTURE:** (Watashi wa) N ga hoshii desu     (I) want N

Q: What do you want?  
A: I want N.  

Q2: Do you also want N2?  
A: No, I do not want N2.  

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I want a camera.</td>
<td>Watashi wa kamera ga hoshii desu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Q: (Anata wa) nani ga hoshii desu ka?  
A: (Watashi wa) N ga hoshii desu.  

Q2: (Anata wa) N2 mo hoshii desu ka?  
A: Iie, N2 wa hoshii kunai.  

Jon’s Japanese V2012.doc
I don't want a camera.
I want a car.
I want a house.
Do you want anything from the convenience store?
Q: Do you want a child?
A: No, I don't.

Note: ‘wants’ = hoshigatte
I want a Japanese friend.
My little brother wants my bike.
Helen wants a stereo.

(Natashi wa) kamera ga hoshikunai desu.
Kuruma ga hoshii desu.
Uchi ga hoshii desu.
Konbeni de nani ka hoshii desu ka?
Kodomo ga hoshii desu ka?
Iie, hoshikunai desu.

HOU GA II DESU - Expression of advice.
Had better do
Had better not do

This sentence pattern is used when the speaker gives the listener advice concerning a specific problem or situation

STRUCTURE:
Ta-form ] hou ga ii desu
Nai-form ] + hou ga ii desu

Examples:
A: I have had a fever since the day before yesterday.
B: Then you had better go to the hospital.
You had better not drink too much alcohol.
You had better take an umbrella today.
It really would be better for you not to go there.
If it is a cold, you had better go to bed early, you know.
It looks like it is going to rain,
so you had better take an umbrella.
It is better to brush your teeth after you eat.
You had better read Japanese books.
You had better eat vegetables too.
Had I better go home now?
Yuko had better study English more.
It is better not to work too much.
You had better not make your parents worry too much.
It is better not to eat anything before we go to bed.
You had better study a lot.
You had better not read manga.
You had better not smoke.

Otoitoi kara zutto netsu ga arun desu.
Ja, byouin e itta hou ga ii desu yo.
Amari o-sake o nomana hou ga ii desu.
Kyou wa kasa o motte itta hou ga ii desu.
Soko e wa ikanai hou ga ii desu yo.
Kaze dattara, hayaku neta hou ga ii desu yo.
Ame ga furi sou da kara,
kasa o motte itta hou ga ii desu.
Tabeta atode ha o migaita hou ga ii desu.
Nihon no hon o yonda hou ga ii desu.
Yasai mo tabeta hou ga ii desu.
Mou kaetta hou ga ii desu ka?
Yuko-san wa motto Eigo o benkyou-shita hou ga ii desu.
Hataraki-sugina hou ga ii desu.
Ryoushin o amari shinpai sasenai hou ga ii desu.
Neru mae ni wa nani mo tabenai hou ga ii desu.
Takusan benkyou shita hou ga ii desu.
Mango o yomanai hou ga ii desu.
Tobako o suinai hou ga ii desu.

HOTONDO – ’Almost, all but, hardly, scarcely, little, few’

Examples:
The work is almost finished.
I have hardly studied Japanese this week.

Shigoto wa hotondo owarimashita.
Konshuu wa hotondo Nihongo o benkyou shimasen deshita.
ICHIBAN       Most satisfactory…
This expression indicates that among 3 or more things in a certain range N1, N2 is the most satisfactory with respect to the adjective.

STRUCTURE:
Q: N1 (no naka) de N2 ga ichiban Adjective desu ka?
A: N1 (no naka) de [ANSWER] ga ichiban Adjective desu.

Q: A と B と C no naka de dare ga ichiban ADJ desu ka?  The question word can change to Nani, Itsu, Dare, Doko

Examples:
Q: Who is the youngest?    A-san と B-san と C-san [no naka] de dore ga ichiban wakai desu ka?

Q: What Japanese food is most delicious?  Nihon tabemono [no naka] de dore ga ichiban oishii desu ka?
A: Sushi is most delicious.
Nihon tabemono [no naka] de sushi ga ichiban oishii desu.

Q: What fruit is most delicious?  Kudamono [no naka] de dore ga ichiban oishii desu ka?
A: Watermelon is most delicious.
Kudamono [no naka] de watermelon ga ichiban oishii desu.

Q: What country in the world has the biggest population?  Sekai no kuni [no naka] de dore ga ichiban jinkoo desu ka?
A: India has the biggest population.  Sekai no kuni no naka de Indo ga ichiban jinkoo desu.

Q: Which drink do you like the most?  Beer と wine と sake [no naka] de dore ga ichiban suki desu ka?
A: I like beer the most.
Beer と wine と sake [no naka] de beer ga ichiban suki desu.

Among Japanese dishes, which do you like the most?  Nihon-ryouri [no naka] de nani ga ichiban oishii desu ka?
Tempura is my favourite.  Tempura ga ichiban oishii desu.

Q: Who is the tallest in your family?  Kazoku de dare ga ichiban se ga takai desu ka?
A: My younger brother is tallest.  Otooto ga ichiban se ga takai desu.

Tony is the brightest among my friends.

I heard that Mrs Vader likes Beatles songs the most.  Vader-san wa Beatles no uta ga ichiban suki da sou desu.
Among Tony, Carl & Todd, who plays golf the best?
I want to go to Rome the most.

Yoda was the first one to come to class this morning.
I think the bus is the most convenient way to go to the museum.
Mt Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
Which camera is the cheapest?
I like beer best.

I want to go to England most now.
Which month is the coldest in Japan?
- to IIMASU

Examples:
We say ‘Good night’ before going to bed.  
Mr Miller said ‘I will go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.’

to iimasu.

 IKENAI

Examples:
You must not smoke here.  
You must drink wine.  
You mustn’t drink too much. 
What’s wrong with it?

to iimasu.

IMASU/IRU

Is used to express *is* or *exists* for location. *Imasu* is used for *living things* – people and animals.

Examples:
Is Mr Tanaka here?  
There is Mr Tanaka.  
Where is Mr Tanaka now?  
He is in the library.  
Were you in Tokyo yesterday?  
Where is the cat?  
There was a cute child in the park.  
My older sister is now staying (or living) in Osaka.  
I have 3 brothers.  
Your car window is open.  
I am reading a Japanese newspaper.  
That store is closed already.

IRIMASU/IRU

Examples:
You need an English-Japanese dictionary.  
I need money now.  
Do you need some juice?  
This car needs a lot of gas.

IRO IRO

Examples:
This shop has *various* beers.  
(Various) a lot of *things* happened yesterday.  
I went to *various places*.  
I went to *various places* in Enoshima.  
There are many companies inside that building.

Various

Examples:
Kono mise wa *iro iro* na biiru ga arimasu.  
Kinou wa *iro iro na koto ga* arimashita.  
*Iro iro na tokoro* e ikimashita.  
Enoshima de *iro iro na tokoro* e ikimashita.  
Aho tatemono ni wa *iro iro na* kaisha ga imasu/iru.
ISSHO – DESCRIBING 2 people doing something TOGETHER
Is also used to invite the listener to do something with the speaker.

STRUCTURE: A-san wa B-san to issho ni Verb

Examples:
Carl & Tony are watching TV together.
Carl & Tony are going to a restaurant together.
Shall we have dinner together now?
Who did you go there with?
With a friend.

Carl-san wa Tony-san to issho ni terebi o mimasu.
Carl-san wa Tony-san to issho ni restaurant e ikimasu.
Ima kara issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka?
Dare to issho ni soko e itta no desu ka?
Tomodachi to desu.

……ITADAKEMASEN KA? Would you do?

STRUCTURE: (Te-form of causative Verb) + itadakemasen ka?

As I have a cold, may I have a day off today?
Kaze o hiita node, kyou ichinichi yasumete itadakemasen ka?

…… to ITTE IMASHITA Said that….

Used when conveying the words of a 3rd person to the listener.
When communicating an instruction or request from the 3rd person to the listener a simple plain form such as –te kure is used.

STRUCTURE: (te-form) kure]+to itte imashita

Dict. form ]

Examples:
Mr A asked you to tell him the time of the meeting.
Mr Johnson said he was going to Osaka on Tuesday on business.
Mr Brown said he was coming here tomorrow.
Mr Millar said that he would go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.
Carl suggested we drink coffee.

Mr A-san wa kaigi no jikan o shirasete kure to itte imashita.
Johnson-san wa kayoubi Osaka e shuchou-suru to itte imashita.
Brown-san wa ashita koko e kuru to itte imashita.
Millar-san wa raishuu Tokyo e shuchou-suru to itte imashita.
Carl-san wa kohii o nomou to itta.

ITSU – ‘When, what time’

Examples:
When did you come here?
Since when has she been sick?
Until when (how long) are you in Japan?
When will be convenient for you?

Itsu koko e kita desu ka?
Kanojo wa itsu kara byouki-na no desu ka?
Itsu made Nihon ni iru desu ka?
Itsu ga yoroshii desu ka?
**JIBUN –**

Is a pronoun used to refer to myself, yourself, himself, yourselves.

**Examples:**

I'm going **myself**.
Do it **yourself**.
Do your own work by **yourself**.
Mary is studying by **herself**.
Mary does everything by **herself**.
Mike is always studying in his **own** dormroom.

Bob is reading a newspaper by **himself**.
There is only one foreign employee in Power Electric.

**Jibun de ikimasu.**
Jibun de shinasai.
Jibun no koto wa jibun de shinasai.
Mary-san wa jibun de benkyou shite imasu.
Mary-san wa jibun de nan demo shimasu.
Mike-san wa itsumo jibun no ryoo (dorm) no heya de benkyou shite imasu.
Bob-san wa jibun de shinbun o yonde imasu.
Power Electric ni gaikoku-jin no shain ga **hitori** dake desu.

**……KA DOU KA**

- is used when an interrogative phrase without an interrogative word is put in a sentence.

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb[+] **Plain Form**
Adj[+] **Plain Form**+ **ka dou ka**
Na ![**Plain Form**](unnamed)
Noun ![**Plain Form**](unnamed)

**Examples:**

I don’t know whether or not Mr Lee will come.
I don’t know whether or not Yuki will write a letter.
I don’t know whether or not Carl went to Nelson.
I don’t know whether or not Chris ate dinner.
Do you know whether or not Tony is married?
I don’t know whether or not Carl’s books are interesting.
I don’t know whether or not Kaz is healthy.
I don’t know whether or not Chris is home.

Lee-san wa kuru **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.
Yuki-san wa tegami o kaku **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.
Carl-san wa Nelson e itta **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.
Chris-san wa bangohan o tabeta **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.
Tony-san ga kekkon shite iru **ka dou ka**, **shitte imasu** ka?
Carl-san no hon ga omoshiroi **ka dou ka**, shiranai.
Kaz-san ga o-genki **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.
Chris-san wa uchi ni iru **ka dou ka**, wakarimasen.

**Verb ni iki (-ki, -kaeri) masu –**

My wife will come to the airport to meet me.
An old friend came to see me from Kyoto.
I went back for the umbrella.
My son comes to have lunch every day.

Kanai ga kuukou ni mukae ni kimasu.
Mukashi no tomodachi ga Kyoto kara ai ni kimashita.
Kasa o tori ni kaerimashita.
Musuko wa mainichi hirugohan o tabe ni kaerimasu.

**KANA –**

‘I wonder if ……’

**Examples:**

I wonder if I will be in time for the train.
I wonder if she will come too?
I wonder if this is alright.
I wonder whose bag this is.

Densha ni ma ni au kana. ← check with H
Kanojo mo kuru kana.
Kore de ii kana.
Kore wa dare no kaban kana.
KANARAZU  Indicates that a certain event will or should happen without fail.

I will submit the report tomorrow without fail.  
When you enter the factory, please put on a helmet without fail.

KATA

| How to use  | Tsukai-kata |
| How to swim | Oyogi-kata  |
| How to speak| Hanashi-kata|

Pronunciation of a character

KITTO Indicates that the speaker believes something is almost certain to happen.

The weather will certainly be fine tomorrow.

Add more examples

ZEHI Indicates a strong desire for something to happen or be done.

I want to go to Kyoto at any cost
I want to go to Bali very much.
I want to eat dinner at any cost
I want to eat natto at any cost
I want to study kanji at any cost
I want to go to read this book at any cost

Zeitung Kyotod e ikitaidesu.
Zeitung Bali e ikitaidesu.
Zeitung bangohan o tabetaidesu.
Zeitung natto o tabetaidesu.
Zeitung kanji o renshuu shitaidesu.
Zeitung kono hon o yomitaidesu.

Kimochi ga ii and Kibun ga ii

Kimochi ga ii: used when speaker feels good because of outside stimulus.
Kibun ga ii: used when speaker feels good because of inside stimulus.

Examples:
It is such a sunny day today, that I feel great!
As I took medicine & my temperature went down, I feel good!

Kyou wa tenki ga yokute, kimonochi ga ii desu.
Kusuri o nonde, netsu ga sagatta node, kibun ga ii desu!

…… te KUDASAI MASEN KA? Will you please do - ?

Used for making requests

Will you please give me a call at 8 o’clock?
Will you please drink this drink?
Will you please carry this bag?
Will you please call Bob?
Will you please go to Siberia?
**te KURE**

- **te kure** is the dictionary form of –te kudasai and is used for making requests.

**STRUCTURE: (te-form) kure**

Examples:
- Help me for a second.
  Chotto tetsudatte kure.
- As this baggage is in the way, put it away.
  Kono nimotsu wa jama da kara, katasukute kure.

**KOTO**

‘Thing’, ‘what’

Examples:
- I’ll tell you a good thing.
  Ii koto o oshiete agemashou.
- Please tell me what you wrote in your thesis.
  Thesis ni kaita koto o hanashite kudasai.
- Do you remember what shachou said?
  Shachou ga itta koto o oboete imasu ka?

**KOTO ga arimasu - ‘There are occasions when, have (done), had an experience that’**

Examples:
- Q: Have you ever been to Hokkaido?
  A: No, I haven’t.
  Hokkaido e itta koto ga arimasu ka?
  Iie, arimasen.
- There was a time when carrots were very expensive.
  Ninjin ga totemo takakatta koto ga arimasu.
- There are times when I take a bath in the morning.
  Watashi wa asa ofuro ni hairu koto ga arimasu.
- There are times when Jon goes to school.
  Jon wa asagohan o tabenai de gakkou e iku koto ga arimasu.
- Sometimes Serena sleeps all day.
  Tokidoki Serena wa zutto nete imashita.
- Nothing much.
  Iya, betsu ni Nanka atta no?
- Tomorrow I can go to Hakone.
  Ashita wa Hakone e iku koto ga dekimasu.
- I can eat Japanese food.
  Nihon ryouri o taberu koto ga dekimasu.
- I got to see kabuki in New York.
  Nyuu Yooku de kabuki o miru koto ga dekimasu.

**KOTO ni shimasu/suru**

A volitional decision to do something.
NB: the dictionary form of verbs precede the ‘koto ga/ni suru’

Examples:
- I decided to quit my company.
  Kaisha o yameru koto ni (shita/shimashita).
- I make it a rule to exercise for about 30 mins every morning.
  Mainichi sanjuppun gurai undoo o suru koto ni shite imasu.
- I’ve decided to make a trip to Hokkaido this summer.
  Kotoshi no natsu wa Hokkaido o ryokou suru koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided to memorize 10 kanji every day.
  Mainichi kanji o tou oboeru koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided not to eat very much meat.
  Niku o amari tabenai koto ni shimashita.
- What are you going to have? (lit. decide on)
  Nani ni shimasu ka?
- I’ll have (lit. decide on) a hamburger.
  Hamburger ni shimasu.
- I’ve decided to meet more people.
  Mottou oozei hito au ni koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided to write a book.
  Hon o kaku koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided to buy a car.
  Kuruma o kau koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided to go to Hakone tomorrow.
  Ashita wa Hakone e iku koto ni shimashita.
- I’ve decided to go to Taiwan next year.
  Rainen Taiwan e iku koto ni shimashita.
I've decided to eat Japanese food.  
Nihon ryouri o taberu koto ni shimashita.
I've decided to quit smoking.  
Tabako o yameru koto ni shimashita.
I've decided to buy a new car.  
Shinsha o kau koto ni shimashita.
I've decided to take a vacation for a week.  
Isshukan kyuuka o toru koto ni shimashita.

KURU / KIMASU

Come, visit, show up

Examples:
Did Nancy come to the party yesterday?  
Nancy-san wa kinou party ni kimashita ka?
Mr Tanaka will come to my house tomorrow.  
Tanaka-san ga ashiha uchi e ni kuru/kimasu.
Today's newspaper hasn't come yet  
Kyou wa mada shinbun ga konai.
Please come to my office tomorrow.  
Boku no jimusho ni ashita kite kudasai.

DESCRIBING MULTIPLE CHARACTERISTICS

KUTE – is used to state 2 attributes of N

When the 1st adjective in a linked pair is in the A1 group, it’s ending, i, is changed to kute.

ie: ookii  ⇒  ookikute

i-adjective examples:

Sapporo is a cool and nice place.  
Sapporo wa suzushikute ii tokoro desu.
Miki's cat is small and cute, you know.  
Miki-san no neko wa chiisa kute kawaii desu yo.
I have heard that restaurant is inexpensive and good.  
Ano resutoran wa yasu kute ii sou desu.
A Rolls Royce is very expensive and I cannot buy it.  
Rolls Royce wa totemo taka kute kaemasen.
The book I read the other day was difficult and I did not understand it.  
The book I read the other day was difficult and I did not understand it.
This dictionary is cheap and convenient.  
Kono jisho wa yasu kute benri desu.

NA-adjective examples:

When the 1st adjective in a linked pair is in the A2 group, it is followed by de.

ie: heta da  ⇒  heta de

Mark is a very kind and nice person.  
Mark-san wa totemo shinsetsu de ii hito desu.
An electronic dictionary is simple and convenient.  
Denshi jisho wa kantan de benri (desu/da).
Marie is good at singing and sang at the Albert Hall.  
Marie-san wa uta ga jouzu de Albert Hall de utaimashita.

STRUCTURE:  A1 kute A2 desu  <− this is A1 joined to A2

ie: Yasukute shizuka  (note the ‘i’ of Yasui is dropped)

Examples:  Andrew is good at tennis and has small eyes.  
Andrew-san wa tennisu ga jouzo de, me ga chiisai desu.

- Describing a woman who is kind (shinsetsu), stylish and beautiful (kirei).  (all are A2 adjectives)  
Mayumi-san wa shinsetsu de stylish de kirei ga ii hito desu.

- Describing a house that is shizuka, kirei and atarashi.  (shizuka and kirei are A2’s, atarashii is A1)  
Watashi no uchi wa shizuka de kirei de atarashi kute desu.
**MADA….masen**  
Not yet–

Examples:
- Can you write Hiragana?
  No, I cannot write it yet.  
  **Hiragana ga kakemasu ka?**  
  **Iie, mada kakemasen.**
- Have you already eaten lunch?
  No, not yet.  
  **Mou, hirugohan o tabemashita ka?**  
  **Iie, mada tabemasen.**
- She has not come here yet.
  No, not yet.  
  **Kanojo wa mada koko ni kite ima sen.**
- Have you finished yet?
  No, not yet.  
  **Mou dekimashita ka?**  
  **Iie, mada dekimasen.**
- Can you speak Japanese?
  I cannot speak (Japanese) yet.
  **Nihongo wa hanasemasu ka?**  
  **Iie, mada hanasemashita ga, mada yoku narimasen.**
- I took the medicine, but I haven’t got better yet.
  **Kusori o nomimashita ga, mada yoku narimasen.**

**MADA: Negative Form: V-te imasen**  
Have not done yet

Examples:
- Q: Have you eaten sushi yet?  
  A: Yes, I have eaten.  
  **Hai, mou tabemashita.**
- A: No, not yet.  
  **Iie, mada tabete imasen.**
- Have you had lunch yet?  
  No, I haven’t yet.
  **Iie, mada tabete imasen.**

**MADA + Affirmative form**  
Still, yet

Examples:
- It is still raining.  
  Because I am still using them, please leave them there.
  **Mada ame ga futte imasu.**  
  **Mada tsukatte iru kara, sono mama ni shite oite kudasai.**
- My older brother is still a student.  
  **Ani wa mada gakusei desu.**
- Jill is 80 years old but she still skis.  
  **Jill-san wa hachi-ju sai desu ga mada suki ni shimasu.**
- Q: Has your father already returned from the USA?  
  A: No, he has not returned yet.  
  **Otosan wa mada o-wakai desu ka?**  
  **Iie, mada kaette kimasen.**
- Do you still have this kind of chocolate?  
  **Kono chokoreeto mada arimasu ka?**
- Do you still have sake?
  **Sake wa mada arimasu ka?**
- He is still sleeping.  
  **Kare wa mada nemutte imasu.**
- Do you still remember what I said?
  **Watashi no itta koto o mada oboete imasu ka?**
- Is your father still young?
  **Otoosan wa mada o-wakai desu ka?**
- Mr Smith is still eating his lunch.
  **Sumisu-san wa mada hirugohan o tabete iru/imasu.**
- I have not been to Japan yet.
  **Mada Nihon e itta koto ga nai.**

**Mama**  
Maintain the resultant state

An already given situation or condition remains unaltered – as is, unchanged, undisturbed, leave as is, remain, as it is, at that, as it stands

Examples:
My father went to sleep leaving the TV on. This room is as it was yesterday. I'll leave this room as it is. The TV was turned on and is still on. I fell asleep leaving the light on. I left the car engine on. As I will do it, please leave it as it is. Please put the report on that desk.

Chichi wa terebi o tsuketa mama nete shimaimashita. Kono heya wa kinou no mama desu. Koko wa kono mama ni shite okimasu. Terebi ga tsuita mama ni natte imasu. Denki o tsuketa mama nete shimaimasita. Kuruma no engine o kaketa mama ni shite oita. Watashi ga yarimasu Kara, sono mama ni shite oite kudasai (oite=leave as is) Sono tsukue no ue ni repooto o oite kudasai.

### MIERU/Miemasu

**Examples:**
- From the window the ocean is visible.
- Today the mountains look near.
- I could see small birds on the tree.
- Women look beautiful at night.
- Tony looks like a student.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visible, (can) see, look(s)</td>
<td>Mieru/miemasu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- | - | |
| Mado kara (wa) umi ga (mieru/miemasu). | Kyou wa yama ga chikaku (mieru/miemasu). | Watashi ni wa ki no ue no chisa na tori ga mieta. |
| Onna no hito wa yoru kirei ni mieru. | Tony-san wa gakusei ni mieru. |

### MIMASU / -te mimasu / -te mitai

**Try – ing / I will try to do something**

- This expression is used when a certain action is tried to see what it is like or to see what will happen as a consequence.

**STRUCTURE:** (te form) mimasu

**Examples:**
- I will try Japanese sake.
- I will try to read this book.
- I will try sushi.
- I will try to write an essay.
- I will try to go to school.
- I will try this new coat on.
- May I try the shoes on?
- I will think it over.
- Let's try to call him by phone.
- I would like to try some sushi.
- I would like to ride on the shinkansen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Try Japanese sake.</td>
<td>Nihon no o-sake o nonde mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try to read this book.</td>
<td>Kono hon wa yonde mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try sushi.</td>
<td>Sushi o tabete mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try to write an essay.</td>
<td>Essay wa kaite mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try to go to school.</td>
<td>Gakkou ni itte mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try this new coat on.</td>
<td>Atarashii kooto o kite mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try the shoes on?</td>
<td>Kutsu o haite mite ii desu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Think it over.</td>
<td>Yoku kangaete mimasu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try to call him by phone.</td>
<td>Kare ni denwa shite mimashou.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Try some sushi.</td>
<td>Sushi o tabete mitai desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ride on the shinkansen.</td>
<td>Shinkansen ni notte mitai desu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### -te MISEMASU

**To show / to display**

- Tejina o shite misemashou.
- Watashi no namae o katakana de kaite misemashita. Origami o otte misemashita.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show a trick.</td>
<td>Tejina o shite misemashou.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showed them how to write my name in katakana.</td>
<td>Watashi no namae o katakana de kaite misemashita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showed them how to fold origami.</td>
<td>Origami o otte misemashita.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (Interrogative) + mo (in negative sentence)

This phrase corresponds to ‘no – ‘ or ‘not any – ‘

- Nobody knows Carl’s address.
- It is dark and I cannot see anything.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nobody knows Carl’s address.</td>
<td>Dare mo Carl-san no juusho o shirimasen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is dark and I cannot see anything.</td>
<td>Kurakute nani mo miemasen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MIMASU**

- [Link to the original document](Jon's Japanese V2012.doc)
I did not meet anyone yesterday. Kinou wa dare ni mo aimasen deshita.

**MO**

- This expression is used to **present a reverse condition**. It is used when an action that is expected to be taken or an event that is expected to happen naturally under the given circumstances does not materialize, or a thing turns out in a way opposite to a socially expected idea.

**STRUCTURE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>+ te Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i-Adj</td>
<td>→ kute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>→ de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- Even if it rains, I'll do the laundry. Ame ga futte mo, sentaku shimasu.
- Even if group tours are inexpensive, I don't like them. Yasukute mo, watashi wa gurupu ryoukou ga kirai desu.
- Even if a PC is convenient, I won't use it. Benri de mo, pasukon o tsukaimasen.
- Even if it is Sunday, I will work. Nichiyoubi de mo, hatarakimasu.

**MO II DESU**

- This expression refers to **permission**.

**STRUCTURE:**

| V-te mo ii desu |

**Examples:**

- May I smoke here? Koko de tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka?
- May I eat here? Koko de tabemono o tabe mo ii desu ka?
- May I walk there? Asoko de arui de mo ii desu ka?
- May I take your photo? Anata no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka?
- It is alright for you to go home early today. Kyou wa hayaku uchi ni kaette mo ii desu.
- May I call you? Denwa shite mo ii desu ka?
- May I use this computer? Kono pasokon o tsukatte mo ii desu ka?

**MONO**

**Japanese**

- Thing to eat: Tabe-mono
- Thing to buy: Kai-mono
- Thing to ride: Nori-mono
- Thing to see: Mi-mono
- Thing to read: Yomi-mono
- Living thing: Iki-mono

**Literal meaning**

**English equivalent**

- Food
- Shopping, good buy
- Vehicle
- Highlight
- Literature
- Creature
MOSHI

If, in case, when

Examples:
In case of rain, it will be called off.
Moshi ame nara chuushi desu.
If I had more money, I would buy it.
Moshi motto okane ga areba, sore o kau no ni.
If I had a million yen, I would like to travel to various countries.
Moshi 1-oku-en attara, iro iro na kuni o ryoukoshitai desu.

MOTTE – I am in possession of N
An expression indicating that the speaker is in possession of N. Motte is the te-form of motsu (=have)

STRUCTURE: N o motte imasu (N をもっています)

Examples:
Q: Have you got a pen?
P: Yes, I do have a pen
John has a good car.
John-san wa ii kurumu o motte (imasu/iru).
John has a younger sister.
Kono daigaku wa ii toshokan o motte (imasu/iru).
Have you got a watch?
You have to have it?
Do I have to have it?
You have to have it. You don't have to have it.
You don't have to have a ticket.
You have to have a letter of introduction.
Do you have to have a letter of introduction?
Don't I have to have a passport?
You have to have a ticket.
You don't have to have a ticket.
You have to have a passport.
You don't have to have a passport.
Do I have to have a passport?
You have to have a ticket.
You don't have to have a ticket.

I may have (it)

I may not have it.
Motte inai ka mo shiremasen.
He may have (some) money.
Okane o motte iru ka mo shiremasen.
He may have the ticket.
Kippu o motte iru ka mo shiremasen.
He may not have any money.
Okane o motte inai ka mo shiremasen.

Not at all

I don't have any time.
Sukoshi mo jikan ga arimasen.
I don't know how to do it.
Dou suru ka shirimasen.
I don't know when.
Itsu ka shirimasen.
I don't know where.
Doko ka shirimasen.
I don't know anything.
Nani mo shirimasen.
He didn't say anything.
Nani mo iimasen deshita.
I don't have anything.
Nani mo motte imasen.

Place-1 kara Place-2 e o motte iku/motte kuru/motte kaeru
This expression indicates that a person carries thing N from Place-1 to another Place-2

I bring something back
Motte kaerimasu/kaette
I take something somewhere
You ask someone to bring something to you

**Examples:**
I will get a beer from the kitchen
Please get some cheese from the kitchen
Please bring 2 glasses of water.
Please bring a beer.
I got some cheese from the kitchen

**Motte** ikimasu/itte
**Motte** kimasu/kite/kimashita

Daidokoro kara biru o motte kimasu (get) –
Daidokoro kara chiizu o motte kite kudasai (get)
Mizu o ni-hai motte kite kudasai.
Biru o motte kite kudasai.
Daidokoro kara chiizu o motte kimashita

**MOU** means **ALREADY in an affirmative sentence.**
**and means ‘(not) any more’ in a negative sentence.**

Have you done/seen… [ACTION]?
*Is an expression use to indicate that the action represented by V has already been completed when the speaker mentions it.*

**Mada** is used to indicate that the V-action has not yet been completed when the speaker mentions it.

**MADA** means **YET**

**STRUCTURE:**  A-san wa MOU [ACTION] V mashita?

*The verb is mashita to reflect it is asking a past tense question.*

ie: Have you been married?  Have you read the newspaper?

**Example:**

Q: Have you seen Titanic?
A: Yes, I have already.
A: No, not yet.

Q: Have you eaten dinner?
A: Yes, I have eaten dinner.
Or: No, not yet.
Q: Have you been to Shinjuku?
A: No, not yet.

Is Mr Brown’s child already three years old?
That restaurant is not good, so I do not want to go any more.

I have already finished the work.
Jon has probably already arrived at the station by now.
It has already been 3 years since I came to Japan.
My father will be back in another 2 or 3 days.
I want to go and see it again.

**- n desu**

**Explanatory**

1) Used when the speaker explains to the listener the reason for his own words or actions &/or deeds or adds reasons to his answer.
2) Used when explaining a current situation, ie: what is happening.
3) Used when emphasizing the meaning of a sentence.
By using **n-desu**, you can add a nuance of explaining the reason or the circumstances. This form is often used in a colloquial environment, particularly if the speaker is asking for an explanation from the listener.

**STRUCTURE:**  
\[ \text{Verb}[+]\text{Plain Form}[+]\text{na} \]

**Examples:**

I took a day off from the company yesterday  
\( \text{Watashi wa kinou kaisha o yasumimashita.} \)

I had a fever.  
\( \text{Netsu ga attan desu.} \)

I am going out now.  
\( \text{Ima kara dekakerun desu.} \)

Believe me, this apple is really good.  
\( \text{Kono ringo wa hontou ni oishii desu yo.} \)

Q: What happened to you?  
A: I am late for class.  
\( \text{Jugyoo ni okure soo na desu.} \)

Q: It is a nice watch, isn’t it?  
A: Do you think so? I bought it in Europe.  
\( \text{Ashita issho ni eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka?} \)

Q: Won’t you go to see a movie with me tomorrow?  
A: Well, tomorrow is not good for me,  
\( \text{Ee to, ashiwa chotto tsugou ga warui n desu kedo.} \)

But how about the day after tomorrow?  
\( \text{Atsuin desu ga. Mado o akete kudasai masenka?} \)

It is hot. Can I close the window?  
\( \text{Oshiete kudasai masenka?} \)

I cannot write kanji.  
\( \text{Kono hon wa omoshiroi n desu ka?} \)

Q: ...where is good place?  
A: [Place] is a good place to buy [Object].  
\( \text{Basu wa osoi desu.} \)

I had too much to eat.  
\( \text{Tabemono o tabesugita n desu.} \)

I won’t drink coffee now; I am going to bed soon.  
\( \text{Ima wa kohii o nomimasen. Mou sugu nerun desu.} \)

I borrowed some money from the bank; I’m going to buy a car.  
\( \text{Ginko de okane o karimashita. Kuruma o kaun desu.} \)

When is the rainy season over?  
\( \text{Tsuyu wa itsu owaru n desu ka?} \)

---

**- n desu ka?**

Interrogative sentence used when the speaker is asking for an explanation of what he has seen or heard.

**Examples:**

You’re not eating much today. What’s the matter?  
\( \text{Kyou wa amari tabemasen, ne. Dou shitan desu ka?} \)

I have a stomach ache.  
\( \text{Onaka ga itaun desu.} \)

---

**- n desu ga**

Serves to draw the listener into the topic the speaker is talking about.

**Examples:**

The washing machine isn’t working; will you please take a look at it?  
\( \text{Sentakuki ga ugo�anain desu ga, chotto mite kudasaimasenka?} \)
NA
A negative imperative marker **used by a male speaker** in very informal speech.

**Examples:**
- Don't smoke!  
  - Tabako o suu na!
- Don't talk!  
  - Hanasu na! (shaberu na!)
- Don't eat!  
  - Taberu na!
- Don't drink too much sake!  
  - Sake o amari nomu na!
- Don't go to such a place any more!  
  - Sonna tokoro ni mou iku na!
- Don't go home!  
  - Uchi ni kaeru na!
- Don't read that book!  
  - Ano hon o yomu na!
- Don't play golf!  
  - Gorufu o suru na!

NAI

**Examples:**
- The bag I left sitting here is missing.  
  - Koko ni oite atta kaban ga nai.
- This is not a Japanese-made car.  
  - Kore wa Nihonsei no kuruma dewa nai.
- I don’t have my passport now.  
  - Ima pasupooto o motte i nai.
- There is no library at this school.  
  - Kono gakkou ni wa toshokan ga nai.

NAKANAKA….masen = ‘not easily’, ‘not…as expected’ –
Nakanaka is followed by a negative expression. Slot it in front of the Verb.

**Examples:**
- I cannot learn words easily.  
  - Kotoba ga nakanaka oboeraremasen.
- The taxi is not coming as soon as I expected.  
  - Takushii ga nakanaka kimasen.
- I ordered tempura, but it takes time for them to bring it.  
  - Tenpura o chuumon-shita noni, nakanaka motte kimasen.
- In Japan we can rarely see horses.  
  - Nihon de wa nakanaka uma o miru koto ga dekimasen.

In an affirmative sentence, NAKANAKA means ‘quite so & so’.

**Examples:**
- It was quite a good movie, wasn’t it?  
  - Nakanaka ii eiga deshita ne?
- James speaks Japanese quite well, doesn’t he?  
  - James-san wa nakanaka jouzu ni Nihongo o hanashimasu ne?
- Dinner was quite tasty, wasn’t it?  
  - Bangohan wa nakanaka oishikatta desu ne?

NAKEREBA [NARIMASEN/NARANAI] = ‘have to,’ ‘must,’ ‘need’
Expressing obligation/necesity of the speaker. ie: something must be done.

**Examples:**
- I have to go to the company by 9 o’clock.  
  - Ku-ji made ni kaisha ni ikanakereba narimasen.
- I have to learn more words.  
  - Motto tango o oboenakereba narimasen.
- The apartment needs to be much closer to the station.  
  - Apaato wa eki ni motto chikaku nakereba narimasen.
- I must take medicine.  
  - Kusuri o nomanakereba narimasen.
I must return the book by Saturday. Libraries have to be quiet.
I have to get up at 5 tomorrow morning.
I have to work today.
Libraries have to be quiet.
I have to get up at 5 tomorrow morning.
I have to work today.
Libraries have to be quiet.
That room has to be a bit larger.
To do this job, your English has to be good.

I have to go to the park tomorrow.
As the meeting will be held tomorrow, I have to prepare for it today.
I have to have it.
Do I have to have (it)?
I don’t have to have (it)?
You have to have a passport.
Do I have to have a passport?
You don’t have to have a passport.
You have to have a ticket.
You have to have a letter of introduction.
You must hurry.
Children must go to bed early.
You have to study hard.
I must return the book to the library.
You have to take care of your health.

Do youbugi made ni hon o kaesa nakereba narimasen.
Kyou wa hatarakanaakereba narimasen.
Toshokan wa shizuka de nakereba narimasen.
Ashita no asa go-ji ni okinakereba narimasen.
Ano heya wa mou suoshi hirokunakereba narimasen.
Kono shigoto o suru tame ni wa Eigo ga jouzu de nakereba narimasen.
Ashita kouen e ikanakereba narimasen.
Ashita kaigi ga arimasu kara, kyou junbi shinakereba narimasen.
Motte inakereba narimasen.
Motte inakereba narimasen ka?
Motte inakute mo ii desu?
Passpooto o motte inakereba narimasen.
Passpooto o motte inakereba narimasen ka?
Passpooto o motte inakute mo ii desu.
Kippu o motte inakereba narimasen.
Shoukajyou o motte inakereba narimasen.
Anata wa isoganakereba narimasen.
Kodomo tach wa hayaku ne-nakereba narimasen.
Anata wa isshokenmei benkyou shinakereba narimasen.
Toshokan ni hon o kaesa-nakereba narimasen.
Anata wa kenkou ni chui shinakereba narimasen.

**NAKUTE**

- The first part of the sentence presents a *cause* and the second part presents the *consequence* produced by the cause.

**STRUCTURE:**

V te-form ]
V naï-form]
Adj ] + nakute
Na – de ]

**Examples:**

As it is dangerous, please don’t touch the machine.
I have to call my mother tonight.
I have to write a paper, so I cannot go out today.

Abunai desu kara, kikai ni sawaranai de kudasai.
Konban haha ni denwa o kakenakute wa ikenai.
Repooto o kakananakute wa ikenai node, kyou wa dekakeraremashen.

**NANI**

‘What’

**Examples:**

What is in this bag?
What are you going to buy in the department store?
What do you want most now?
What are you talking about?

Kono kaban ni wa nani ga haitte imasu ka?
Depaato de nani o kau desu ka?
Ima nani ga ichiban hoshii desu ka?
Nani o hanashite iru desu ka?
This is the **conditional form** of a noun sentence, and is **used when the speaker addresses the topic introduced by the other person as the main theme and gives information.**

**STRUCTURE:** Noun nara

**Examples:**

**If** you are free tomorrow, shall we go to Osaka together?  
Ashita hima **nara**, issho ni Osaka e ikimasen ka?

I want to buy a cheap video player.  
**Yasui** video o kaitai desu.

**If** you want a cheap video player, then Akihabara **nara**, Akihabara ga ii desu.  

**If** it's English (you need), I can speak it.  
Eigo **nara** hanasemasu.

**If** you like France, shall we go there together?  
*Furansu ga suki nara*, issho ni ikimasen ka?

**If** you want to read books, let's go to the library together.  
Hon o yomu **nara**, toshokan e ikimashou.

**NARIMASU/NATTA** means ‘to become,’ ‘turn,’ ‘come (grow) to,’ ‘learn to’

Indicates **change in a state or conditions.**

**STRUCTURE:** Noun, Na-adj | ni **narimasu**  
*eg:* Sensei da ➔ Sensei ni naru  
i-adj | **ku** naru  
*eg:* Atsui ➔ Atsu-ku naru

**Examples:**

- 25 years old  
  25-sai

- **become** 25 years old  
  25-sai ni narimasu

- well  
  genki

- **become** well  
  genki ni narimasu

- cold  
  samui

- **become** cold  
  samuku narimasu

My big brother **became** a teacher.

I want to **become** a designer.

It has already **grown** dark outside.

She saw it and **turned** pale.

The colour of the lake was blue in the beginning and then **turned** green.

I will **become** 18 years old next month.

My father was sick but he **became** well.

The vacation started and school **became** quiet.

Japanese has **become** difficult, but it is fun.

The weather **become** bad.

The rent **became** expensive.

He **became** a doctor.

At last Spring has **come.**

I have **come** to like him.

Having lost my wallet, I **turned** pale.

Ani wa sensei **ni narimashita.**

Watashi wa dezainaa **ni naitai** desu.

Soto wa mou kuraku **narimashita.**

Kanojo wa sore o mite aoku **natta.**

Mizuumi no iro wa hajime wa aoku, sorekara midori **ni narimashita.**

Raigetsu watashi wa 18-sai **ni narimasu.**

Chichi wa byouki deshita ga, mou genki **ni narimashita.**

Yasumi ga hajimatte, gakkou wa shizuka** ni narimashita.**

Nihongo wa muzukashiiku **narimashita ga,** tanoshii desu.

Tenki ga waruku **narimashita.**

Yachin ga takaku **narimashita.**

Kare wa isha ni **natta.**

Yatto haru **ni natta.**

Watashi wa kare ga suki **ni natta.**

Saifu o nakushite, aoku **natta.**
‘ni’ – COMBINING SENTENCES:

To combine 2 sentences, ie: –

1) P ～ ikimasu  
   (ie: Depaato e ikimasu) &

2) N を kaimasu  
   (ie: shatsu o kaimasu)

1)+2) = P ～ N を kai ni ikimasu     The ‘masu’ is replaced with ‘ni’

ie: Depaato e shatsu o kai ni ikimasu

Examples:
Q: Depaato ～ nani o kai ni ikimasu ka?  
What will you buy when you go to the department store?
A: Depaato ～ shatsu o kai ni ikimasu.
   I will go to the department store to buy a shirt.

Continuing this pattern –

WHAT WILL YOU DO IN PLACE?
P ～ Verb (without ‘masu’)  ni ikimasu
P ～ Noun   ni ikimasu

Examples:  Go to a restaurant for a meal.  Restaurant e shukuji ni ikimasu.
Go to school to study.  Gakkou e benkyo ni ikimasu.
Go to a department store to shop.  Depaato e kaimono ni ikimasu.

Do copying   = copy o shimasu
Go                  = ikimasu
I am going to the next room to do some copying.  Tonari no heya e copy o shi ni ikimasu.

The Question:
A-san, what did you do in PLACE?  
A-san wa PLACE e nani o shi ni ikimashita ka?
A-san, what did you do in the library?  
A-san wa toshokan e nani o shi ni ikimashita ka?

Replace the  shi ni with the appropriate VERB, to get -
A: I read a book in the library (NB: yo was yomimasu)  
Toshokan e hon o yomi ni ikimashita.

Q: A-san, what did you do in Yoyogi?  
A-san wa Yoyogi e nani o shi ni ikimashita ka?
A: I went to Yoyogi to play tennis.  
Yoyogi e tennisu o shi ni ikimashita.

Q: What will you do when you go to the restaurant?  
A: I will eat sushi when I go to the restaurant.  
Restaurant e nani o shi ni ikimasu ka?
   Restaurant e sushi o  ate ni ikimasu.

Where do you want to go for Hanami?  
Hanami o shi ni doko e ikitai desu ka?

I (will) go to the department store  = Depaato e ikimasu
I (will) buy some shoes         = Kutsu o kaimasu

Combining these 2 produces:

->Depaato e kutsu o kai ni ikimasu
        I will buy some shoes when I go to the department store.

What did you drink when you went to the bar in Roppongi?  
Roppongi no bar e nani o nomi ni ikimashita ka?

Q: What will you  do in Kyoto?  
   Kyoto e nani o shi ni ikimasu ka?
A: I will see lots of temples in Kyoto.  
   Kyoto e takusan tera (temples) o mi ni ikimasu.
Q: What will you do when you go to London?
A: I will shop in London.

Q: What will you see when you go to Bali?
A: I will see lots of beaches in Bali.

Q: What will you buy when you go to Auckland?
A: I will buy lots of beer in Auckland.

Q: What did you eat when you went to Paris?
A: I ate lots of snails in Paris.

Q: What do you talk about when you meet Bob?
A: I talk about cars when I meet Bob.

Q: What do you do when you go to the park?
A: I play tennis when I go to the park.

Q: What do you do when you go to the gym?
A: I play soccer when I go to the gym.

I will go to see a movie with friends next Sunday.

Yesterday morning I went to Ginza. and then went to see a movie. I went to see a movie because I was free yesterday.

I went to a department store to buy a present. Carl went home to eat his lunch.

The pronoun ‘no’ corresponds to ‘one’

Examples:
Kono jisho wa watashi ga motte iru no onaji desu.
Akai kaban wa Y5,000 desu ga, kuroi no wa Y7,500 desu yo.
Kono kamera wa ookii desu ne. Motto chiisai no ga arimasu ka?
Verb (dict. form) + no wa means ‘to do/doing [such and such] is --’, or ‘It is – to do [such and such]’

Examples:
To speak in Japanese is not so difficult.  Nihongo de hanasu no wa amari muzukashi kunai.
Smoking is not good for the body.  Tabako o su i no wa karada ni yokunai.
Watching the US Open is interesting, isn’t it?  US Open o miru no wa omoshiroi desu ne?
Driving for many hours is hard.  Nan-jikan mo unten suru no wa taihen desu.
Reading this book is easy.  Kono to shu no wa kantan desu.
Going to Shinjuku is difficult.  Shinjuku e iku no wa muzukashii desu.
Using this PC is difficult.  Kono PC o tsukau no wa muzukashii desu.

OKIMASU

STRUCTURE:  (te-form) okimasu

1) Preparation - to complete a necessary action by a given time.

Before I go on the trip, I will buy and keep the tickets with me.
Ryouri o tsukatte (make) okimasu.
Ryoko ni iku mae ni, kippu o kat te okimasu.  Souji o shite okimasu.

2) A measure - to complete a necessary action in readiness for the next use.

When you use the scissors, please put them back where they were. Hasami o tsukattara, moto no tokoro ni shimatte oite kudasai.

3) To sustain the resultant state - leave as it is.

As it is cold, please keep the window closed.
Please keep the light on in the room.
I will keep the window open.

Samui desu kara, mado o shimete oite kudasai.
Heya no denki o tsuke te (turn on) oite kudasai.
Mado o akete (open) okimasu.

OMOIMASU

I think that…/ to think -
– is an expression used when the speaker conjectures that some person N will do the V-action

STRUCTURE:  N wa V (plain form) + to omoimasu

NOTE: ‘to’ (と) usually comes before ‘omoimasu’

Examples:
Q: What do you think of Japan?  Nihon d o omoimasu ka?
A: I think Japan is an interesting country.
I think it will rain tonight.
I think Teresa has already gone to bed.
Q: What will you do in Golden Week?  Golden Week ni nani o shimasu ka?
A: I think I will see a movie.
Q: Does Jason know this news?  Jason-san wa kono nyuusu o shitte imasu ka?
A: No, I don’t think he does.
I think Japan has a convenient transportation system.
I think I will play golf when I have time.

Hima ni nattara, gorufu o shiyou to omoimasu.
I think that learning Japanese is very interesting. Nihongo o narou no wa totemo omoshiroi to omoimasu.
I think that shirt is cheap. Ano shatsu wa yasui to omoimasu.
I think this room is lovely. Kono heya wa kirei to omoimasu.
I think that car is loud. Ano kuruma wa urusai to omoimasu.
I think that singer sings well. Ano kashuu wa uta ga jouzu to omoimasu.

The expression - *ni tsuite dou omoimasu ka?* is used to ask someone’s opinion
What do you think of the new airport? Atarashii kuukou ni tsuite dou omoimasu ka?
What do you think of this new book? Atarashii hon ni tsuite dou omoimasu ka?

- to OMOTTE IMASU

*omotte* is the te-form of ‘omoimasu’.

This expression conveys that the speaker has made up his mind before speaking and continues to have the same intention as he speaks.

**STRUCTURE:** Volitional Form + to omotte imasu (or ‘to omoimasu’)

**Examples:**
I am thinking I will go out shopping now. Ima kara kaimono ni ikou to omotte imasu.
I am thinking of going to see a movie with friends next Sunday. Kondo (=next) no Nichiyoubi ni tomodachi to eiga o mi ni ikou to omotte imasu.

- TSUMORI DESU

Used to convey the speakers intention.

**STRUCTURE:** Dict. form + tsumori desu

**Examples:**
I intend to get married next year. Rainen kekkon suru tsumori desu.
I intend to give this photograph to her. Kono shashin wa kanojo ni ageru tsumori desu.
I intend to give this book to Mike. Kono hon wa Mike-san ni ageru tsumori desu.
I intend to learn the technology very thoroughly. Isshokenmei gijutsu (=technology) o narau tsumori desu.
What kind of job do you intend to look for in Japan? Nihon de wa donna shigoto o saga tsumori desu ka?
I plan to work hard and save a lot of money. Isshokenmei hataraike okane o takusan tameru tsumori desu. Kotoshi no natsu wa doko ni mo ikanai tsumori desu.
I intend not to smoke. Ashita wa kaisha ni juu-ji goro iku tsumori desu. Tabako wa suwanai tsumori desu.
I intend to mail the letter. Watashi wa Mike-san to kekkon suru tsumori wa arimasen. Itsu tegami o dasu tsumori desu ka?
I think I talked to you, but I didn't, did I? Hanashita tsumori deshita ga, hanasanakattan desu ne. Yasumi ni wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka?
I am convinced that I am still healthy. My father is convinced that he is still young. Kono shigoto wa asobi no tsumori desu. Chichi wa mada genki na tsumori desu.
When do you plan to mail the letter? Watashi wa mada genki na tsumori desu.
I intend to buy a car.
I intend to get up early tomorrow morning.
I intend to live in Japan for 1 year.
I intend to consult with my friend later.
I intended to come back earlier.
What do you intend to do today?

Ashita no asa wa hayaku okiru tsumori desu.
Nihon ni ichinen sumu tsumori desu.
Atode tomodachi ni soudan suru tsumori desu.
Motto hayaku kaeru tsumori deshita.
Kyou wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka?

UCHI ni
During a period when a certain situation remains in effect.

Examples:
Tony’s Japanese improved while he was in Japan.
My stomach started to ache while I was running.
Read many books while you are young.
While thinking about it, I got lost.
I’ll sleep a lot during the holiday.
While the weather is good, I am going to the park.

While, before, during
During a period when a certain situation remains in effect.

Examples:
Tony-san wa Nihon ni iru uchi ni Nihongo ga jouzu ni narimashita.
Hashitte iru uchi ni onaka ga itaku narimashita.
Wakai uchi ni hon o takusan yominasai.
Kangaete iru uchi ni wakaeanku narimashita.
Atatakai uchi ni nonde kudasai.
Yasumi no uchi ni yoku nete okimasu.
Tenki ga ii uchi ni kouen e iku.

YOTEI DESU
An event scheduled in advance.

STRUCTURE:
Dict. Form ] + yotei desu
Noun + no ]

Examples:
The business trip is scheduled to be about a week long.
Do you have any plans for Sunday?
I am planning to play tennis.
I am planning to make a phone call.
I am planning to go to a party.
I am planning to see a movie.
I am planning to go to a rock concert.
I am planning to go to France.
I am planning to go back to Fiji at the end of August.
The flight is due to arrive at 6 o’clock in the evening.
Q: When is the next meeting?
A: The meeting is scheduled for Monday.
Q: When will you meet Mike?
A: I am scheduled to meet Mike on Thursday.
I’m planning to travel to India this autumn.
About how many people are you expecting?

Shutchou wa iishukan gurai no yotei desu.
Nichiyoubi wa nanika yotei ga arimasu ka?
Tenisu o suru yotei desu.
Denwa o kakeru yotei desu.
Party e iku yotei desu.
Eiga o miru yotei desu.
Rock concert e iku yotei desu.
Furansu e iku yotei desu.
Hachigatsu no owari ni Fiji e kaeru yotei desu.
Hikouki wa yuugata rokku-ji tsuku yotei desu.
Tsugi no kaigi wa itsu desu ka?
Getsuyoubi ni yotei desu.
Itsu Mike-san ni aimasu ka?
Mokuyoubi ni Mike-san to au yotei desu.
Kotoshi no aki ni, Indo e ryokou ni iku yotei desu.
Nannin gurai kuru yotei desu ka?
OWARU – .....

‘finish doing such and such’

Examples:
When you finish reading the book, please lend it to me. Sono hon o yomi-owattara, kashite kudasai.
Since everyone has finished eating, let’s start to clean up. Minna ga gohan o tabe-owattara, katazuke-hajimemashou.
Although I have finished writing this report, (although), I have to write another one. Kono repooto o kaki-owatta kerodo mou hiotsu hoka no o kakanakereba ikemasen.

RASHII – .....

‘seems, looks like, likely, apparently, I heard’

Examples:
It seems Tony is going to America. Tony-san wa Amerika e iku rashii desu.
Carl seems to have gone home already. Carl-san wa mou kaetta rashii desu.
That school’s exam seems difficult. Ano gakkou no shiken wa muzukashi rashii desu.
This neighbourhood seems very quiet. Kono atari wa totemo shizuka rashii desu.
This place seems to be a school. Kono tokoro wa gakkou rashii desu.
It seems like Dave likes oranges. Dave-san wa orenji suki rashii desu.
It looks cold in New York. New York wa samui rashii desu.
He seems to be ill. Kare wa byouki rashii desu.

SA

Adjective -> abstract noun.
Change the final –i of an i-adjective into –sa & you can transform the adjective into an abstract noun describing the character or condition represented by the adjective.

Examples:
Mt Fuji is high. Fuji-san wa takai desu.
The height of Mt Fuji is 3,776 metres. Fuji-san no taka sa wa 3,776 metres desu wa takai desu.
Weight Taijuu

no o SHITTE IMASU

Know that....

STRUCTURE:
Verb ]
Adj[+ Plain Form ]+no o shitte imasu
Na]+ da -> na ]
Noun ]

Examples:
Do you know the telephone number of the centre? Centre no denwa-bangou o shitte imasu ka?
Do you know that there was a fire near the centre? Centre no chikaku de kaji ga atta no o shitte imasu ka?
SHI – Indicating 2 or more reasons or causes, ‘and what’s more, not only, but also – ’

-kara is use for indicating a cause or reason.

When there are 2 or more reasons or causes, -shi is often used to indicate them.

**STRUCTURE: Plain form + shi**

**Examples:**
- **First Reason:** I have a lot of luggage
  - **Nimotsu ga ooi desu.**
  - **Ame ga futte imasu.**
- **Second Reason:** It is raining.
  - **Nimotsu ga ooi shi, ame ga futte iru shi,**
  - **takushi de kaerimasu.**

**Combined Sentence:**
As I have a lot of luggage and it is raining, I will go home by taxi.

- **First Sentence:** Tanaka speaks English well.
  - **Tanaka-san wa eigo ga jouzo desu.**
- **Second Sentence:** Hayashi speaks English well too.
  - **Hayashi-san mo eigo ga jouzo desu.**

**Combined Sentence:**
Tanaka speaks English well and, Hayashi speaks English too.

- **I'm Sunday today and the weather is fine, so..**
  - **Kyou wa Nichiyoubi da shi, tenki mo ii shi…..**
- **As it is cold today, I am not going anywhere.**
  - **Kyou wa samui shi, doko mo dekakemasen.**
- **This restaurant serves good food and the prices are low as well.**
  - **Kono restaurant wa ryouri mo oishii shi, nedan mo yasui desu.**
- **I went shopping, washed my car and studied Japanese.**
  - **Kaimono o shita shi, kuruma o aratta shi, Nihongo mo benkyou shimashita.**
- **My car was stolen, I lost my wallet and what’s more, I was bitten by a dog.**
  - **Kuruma o nusumareta (stolen) shi, saifu o nakushita (lost) shi, inu ni kamaremashita. (bitten)**
- **I not only played tennis but also saw a movie today.**
  - **Kyou wa tenisu mo shita shi, eiga mo mimashita.**
- **Here it's hot in summer, and what's more, it's cold in winter.**
  - **Koko wa natsu wa atsui shi, fuyu wa samui desu.**
- **This apartment is clean, and what’s more, it’s cheap.**
  - **Shigoto mo atta shi, kekkon mo dekita shi, totemo ureshii desu.**
  - **Kono apaato wa kirei da shi, yasui desu.**
  - **Kono apaato wa kare i da shi, yasui desu.**
- **It’s a nice day, so shall we go out somewhere?**
  - **Kyo wa tenki mo ii shi, dokake e ikimashou ka?**
- **She’s beautiful and what’s more, she’s intelligent.**
  - **Kanojo wa kirei da shi, atama mo ii desu.**

**Shika + negative expression**

**SHIKA….MASEN**

- Is used to convey the impression that there is nothing one can do but what is mentioned in the phrase - put it before the negative verb

**Examples:**
- I cannot write anything other than Romanji.
  - **Romanji shika kake masen.**
- Mike eats nothing but vegetables.
  - **Mike wa yasai shika tabemasen.**
- I cannot do anything but play soccer.
  - **Soccer shika shimasen.**
- Only Bob and Jim came.
  - **Bob-san to Jim-san shika kimassen deshita.**
- I have no more than 3 Japanese friends.
  - **Watashi wa san-nin shika Nihon no tomodachi ga imasen.**
I only have 2 thousand yen now. Today I can meet you at no other time except 6. You an only get there by taxi. I only know English. I only read Japanese newspapers. No one but Mr Tanaka smokes. I know nothing but Japanese. I had only one bowl of rice

SHIMAIMASHITA
Have done, finish doing, completion – Indicates completion.

(owatte = be finished, be over)
Have you completed the homework yet? (I have) completed the homework. I intend to finish reading this entire book today. Mr Smith finished reading the book in 3 days.

Also has a more common meaning – to convey a sense of having done something irreparable or a sense of loss.

STRUCTURE:
(te-form) shimaimashita
I have lost my passport
The car has broken down.
I forgot the phone number & I cannot contact him/her.

SHIMASU
Turn - into
Shimasu indicates that somebody ‘turns’ something into a certain state.

STRUCTURE:
Adj-ku ]+shimasu
Na, N-ni ]

Examples:
I turn the sound up.
I clean the room.

Oto o ookiku shimasu.
Heya o kirei ni shimasu.

SOU DESU/SOU DA
Looks like - Expression of Appearance

When used with a verb: it is used when the speaker sees some phenomenon about to take place at any moment and refers to it. The verb imanimo is used when emphasizing imminence. When used with an i-adjective or a na-adjective: it means that although something has not been confirmed for a fact, it looks so judging from the appearance.
STRUCTURE:
V masu-form ]
Adj ] + **sou desu / sou da**
Na ]

Examples:
Your baggage is almost falling from the shelf.
It doesn’t **look** like I’ll pass the exam.
That person **looks** very gentle.
You **looked** bored.
This meal doesn’t **look** very good.
You **look** good (great).
You **look** worried.
It **looks** like rain.
It **looks** like it will rain, doesn’t it?
That car **looks** expensive.
That steak **looked** delicious.
This neighbourhood **looks** quiet.
It **looks** like an interesting book.
This camera **looks** good, you know.
They say she is coming.
I understand the he speaks Japanese.
People say that Kate is going to get married.
They say the PM is going to visit NZ next month.
They say a typhoon is coming.
It **looks** like even I can do it.

**With adjectives**
It **looks/seems** high.
He **looks/seems** healthy.
There **looks/seems** to be no problem.
She **looks/seems** to be very delighted.

Tana (shelf) kara nimotsu ga ochisou desu yo.
Shiken ni pasu shisou mo arimasen.
Ano hito wa totemoya yasashisou desu.
Taikutsu sou deshita ne.
Kono ryouri wa amari oishikunassou desu.
O-genki sou desu ne.
Shinpai sou desu ne.
Ame ga furi sou desu.
Ame ga furi (sou desu/sou da) ne.
Ano kuruma wa takai (sou desu/sou da) ne.
Ano suteki wa oishisou datta.
Kono hen wa shizuka sou desu
Omoshiroku nasasou na hon desu.
Kono kamera wa yosa sou desu yo.
Kanojo wa kuru sou desu.
Kare wa Nihongo o hanasu sou desu.
Keito wa kekkon suru sou desu.
Shuushou wa raigetsu NZ o houmon suru sou desu.
Taifu ga kuru sou desu.
Watashi ni mo deki sou desu.

**NOTE:** ‘Looks not? Ask H ➔ ‘-nasa sou da’ and ‘looks good’ ➔ ‘yosa sou da’

**SOU DESU**
***Expression of hearsay***, used for conveying information one has obtained from another source without including one’s own opinion. **When the source of information is given**, it is indicated by – **ni yoru to** (= according to) and placed at the beginning of the sentence.

STRUCTURE: Plain form] + **sou desu**

Examples:
I hear that Mami is going to get married soon.
According to the news, there was a big earthquake in America.
They say it will rain.
They say this movie is interesting.
I hear Mr Tanaka is fine.
I have heard that the restaurant is inexpensive and good.

Mami-san wa mou sugu kekkon suru sou desu.
News ni yoru to, Amerika de ookina jishin ga atta sou desu.
Ame ga furi sou desu.
Kono eiga wa omoshiroisou desu.
Tanaka-san wa genki da sou desu.
Ano resutoran wa yasukute ii sou desu.

I hear that….
I heard that it will rain from today through to next Monday.

I understand that hotels in Boston are expensive. I have heard that the cherry blossoms in Washington are very beautiful. I heard that Mr Suzuki was a salesman. I hear it will be sunny tomorrow. It is said that this building is the tallest in Japan. I heard that Carl doesn’t drink any alcohol. I hear that meat in Japan is very expensive. I heard that Toshiko speaks very good English. I heard that Mr King is an English teacher.

Kyou kara mitsubu no getsuyoubi made ame ga furu sou (da/desu).

Boston no hoteru wa takai sou desu. Washington no sakura wa totemo kirei da sou desu.

Suzuki-san wa salesman datta sou desu. Asu wa hareru sou desu.

Kono biiru ga Nihon de ichiban takai sou desu. Car-san wa o-sake o nomai sou desu. Nihon no niku wa totemo takai sou desu.

Toshiko-san wa eigo ga totemo jouzu da sou desu. King-san wa Eigo no sensei da sou desu.

SUGIMASU/SUGIRU
– Sugimasu indicates that the degree of an action or a state is excessive. Usually refers to undesirable states.

Examples:
I drank too much alcohol yesterday. I ate too much sushi this morning. This bag is too big. If you watch TV too much, it will ruin your eyes. Please try not to play sports too much. This bag is too big for me to carry. I drank too much yesterday and I have a headache today. This Indian dish is delicious, but too spicy for children.

I bought too many apples. You are working too hard. These clothes are too big for me. This car is so expensive that I can’t buy it.


Terebi o mi-sugiru to, me ga waruku narimasu. Sports o yari-sugina y ni’ shite kudasai. Kono kaban wa ooki-sugite, motemasen.

Kinou nomi-sugite kyou wa atama ga itai. Kono Indo ryouri wa oishii keredo, kodomo ni wa karu-sugiru.


SUUKOSHI
– A few, some, a little, a bit, a moment

Examples:
I bought a few books. You can speak a little Japanese, can’t you?

Watashi wa hon o sukoshi kaimashita. Sukoshi Nihongo ga hanasemasu ne?

SURU/SHIMASU
– Feel, smell, hear (the senses)

Examples:
I heard children’s voices. This fish tastes funny, doesn’t it? This cloth feels rough. This flower smells good.

Kodomoto tachi no koe ga (shita/shimashita). Kono sakana wa hen na aji ga shimasu ne. Kono kire wa zarazara shite imasu. Kono hana wa ii nioi ga suru.
This paper feels good.
That tree smells good.

Kono kami wa ii shite imasu.
Ano ki wa ii noi ga shita.

**TABUN – ‘Probably’, ‘maybe’ - used with ‘deshou’ at the end**

This expression is used to express a guess about other people or what will happen in the future.

**STRUCTURE:** TABUN V (Jisho form) deshou

Or: TABUN A1-い deshou

Examples:

Q: Karen-san wa sashimi o tabemashita?
A: Tabun taberu deshou (She will probably eat) (NOTE: Taberu is Jisho form)

S/he will probably eat.
It’s probably red.
S/he is probably a student.
He will probably go to Kyoto.
He will probably play soccer.
Carl will probably drink beer.
James will probably not go.
I think it will snow today.
I am afraid your mother will be worried.
I think my father will be surprised with the news.

S/he will probably eat.
Tabun taberu deshou.
Tabun akai deshou.
Tabun gakusei deshou.
Kare wa tabun Kyoto e iku deshou.
Kare wa tabun soccer o suru deshou.
Carl-san wa tabun biiru o nomu deshou.
James-san wa tabun ikanai deshou.
Kyou wa yuki ga furu deshou.
Okaasan ga shinpai suru deshou.
Chichi wa sono shirase ni odoroku deshou.

**V-Tai – (I) want to (infinitive) – expressing DESIRE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ikitai</td>
<td>Ikitai desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Negative</td>
<td>ikitakunai</td>
<td>Ikitaku arimasen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>ikitatatta</td>
<td>Ikitakatta desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Negative</td>
<td>ikitatakunakatta</td>
<td>Ikitaku arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STRUCTURE 1:**

Q: Nani ga V-tai desu ka?  
A: (Watashi wa) N o V-tai desu  

What do you want to (do/eat/drink/go…)
(I) want to (infinitive)

Examples:

Q: What do you want to drink?
A: I want to drink beer.
Do you want to eat this meal?

Q: What do you want to eat?
Q: Do you want to eat sushi?
A: I want to eat sushi.
I don’t want to eat fish.
I did not want to eat eggplant.
I did not want to go to Nara.
I did not want to drink beer.
I did not want to go shopping.

Nani ga nomitai desu ka?
Biiru o nomitai desu.
Anata wa kono ryouri o tabetai desu ka?

Nani ga tabetai desu ka?
Sushi ga tabetai desu ka?
Sushi o tabetai desu. (or sushi ga tabetai desu)
Sakana wa tabekaku arimasen.
Nasu wa tabekaku nakatta.
Nara e ikitu nakatta.
Biiru o nomitaku nakatta.
Kaimono e ikitu nakatta.
A: Where do you want to go?
Doko e ikitai desu ka?

A: I want to go to Kyoto
Kyoto e ikitai desu.

I want to go to France.
Furansu e ikitai desu.

I want to buy a watch.
Tokei o kaitai desu.

I want to buy a pair of shoes.
Kutsu o kaitai desu.

I don’t want to eat anything because I am full now.
Ima onaka ga ippai dakara, nani mo tabetaku arimasen.

**STRUCTURE 2:**
Q: *QW (Question Word) ka V-tai mono ga arimasu ka?*
Nani/Doko/Dare/Itsu thing/object

Examples:
Q: Dave, is there anything you want to buy?
A: Yes, I want to buy a [OBJECT]. Or
Dave-san, nani ka kaitai mono ga arimasu ka?
Hai, arimasu. [OBJECT] ga kaitai desu.
lie, kaitai mono wa nani mo arimasen.

Q: Is there any place that you want to go?
A: Yes, I want to go to [PLACE]. Or
Doko ka ikitai tokoro ga arimasu ka?
Hai, arimasu. [PLACE] e ikitai desu.
lie, ikitai tokoro wa arimasen.

Q: Are there any places that you want to go this weekend?
Shumutsu ni doko ka ikitai tokoro ga arimasu ka?
Are there anything that you want to see?
(Anata wa) nani ka mitai mono ga arimasu ka?
I’d like to rest for a while.
Sukoshi yasumitai desu.
I hope to talk with you again.
Mata isshoni o-hanashi o shiitai desu ne.

Q: Is there any one that you want to meet?
Dare ka aitai hito ga imasu ka?
A: Yes, I want to meet [PERSON]. Or
Dai, aitai hito wa arimasen.
A: No, there is no one that I want to meet.

**TAME NI**
For the purpose of, because of, on account of, owing to, as a result of, in order to, so as to -

**STRUCTURE: Objective/Goal tame ni what’s going to happen next**
Noun + no] tame ni
Dict. form]

Examples:
I am saving money to buy a house.
Uchi o kau tame ni, okane o tamete imasu.
I am preparing materials for the meeting.
Kaigi no tame ni, shiryou o junbi-shite imasu.
The air service is being cancelled because of a typhoon.
Hikouki wa taifuu no tame ni kekkou shite imasu.
I have to save money for travel abroad.
Gaikoku ryoukou no tame ni chokin o shinakereba.
For the sake of my future, I want to study more.
Shourai no tame ni motto benkyou shitai desu.
I am working hard in order to save money.
Okane o tameru tame ni isshikenmei hataraite imasu.
To do this job, your English has to be good.
Kono shigoto o suru tame ni wa Eigo ga jouzu de
nakereba narimasen.

I am going to the airport to meet a customer.
Okyakusama o demukaeru tame ni, kuukou ni ikimasu.
Examples:
Because I fast was asleep last night…    Yuube wa gussuri nete ita tame
I did not feel the earthquake.          jishin ni kigatsukimasen deshita.

TARA
If it is, if, when, after (doing), if only, why don’t you (do), if it had been (depending on the context)…
This is a conditional expression. When ‘tara’ is attached to the past tense plain form of verbs, adjectives, etc. it changes the preceding clause into a conditional expression.
This pattern is used when a speaker wants to state their opinion or hypothesis, situation, request, etc. about something or somebody in the past, present or future, in the conditional.

The -tara conjunction is used to indicate that an action or state expressed in the subordinate clause occurs or may occur (conditional) before the one(s) expressed in the main clause. The way to differentiate between the meaning can only be derived from the context of sentence.
It is comparable to the English If [S1], then S2.

STRUCTURE:
Verb]+ Plain past form
Adj]+ Plain past form ] + ra
Na| Plain past form |
Noun| Plain past form |

Formation of ‘- tara’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copula</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ame da</td>
<td>Ame datta</td>
<td>Ame data-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ame ja/dewa nai</td>
<td>Ame ja/dewa nakatta</td>
<td>Ame ja/dewa nakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

i-adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ookii</td>
<td>Ookikatta</td>
<td>Ookikatta-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Na-adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ookiku nai</td>
<td>Ookiku nakatta</td>
<td>Ookiku nakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hima da</td>
<td>Hima datta</td>
<td>Hima datta-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hima ja/dewa nai</td>
<td>Hima ja/dewa nakatta</td>
<td>Hima ja/dewa nakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U-verb (Gp 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yomu</td>
<td>Yonda</td>
<td>Yonda-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ru-verb (Gp 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yomanai</td>
<td>Yomanakatta</td>
<td>Yomanakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miru</td>
<td>Mita</td>
<td>Mita-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minai</td>
<td>Minakatta</td>
<td>Minakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular Verb (Gp 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Plain Past</th>
<th>Tara form (just add ‘ra’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suru</td>
<td>Shita</td>
<td>Shita-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinai</td>
<td>Shinakatta</td>
<td>Shinakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td>Kita</td>
<td>Kita-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Konai</td>
<td>Konakatta</td>
<td>Konakatta-ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If I were to read a dictionary.
If I were not to read a dictionary.
If I were delicious.
If it was not delicious.
If I were quiet.
If it was not quiet.
If I were a laywer.
If I were not a laywer.
Examples:
If it is English, I can understand it. Eigo dattara, wakarimasu.
If I were you, I would not do such a thing. Watashi ga anata dattara, sono koto wa shimasen.
If it is not raining tomorrow, won’t you play tennis? Ashita ame ja nakattara, tenisu o shimasen ka?
If it is fine, won’t you take a walk with me? Ii tenki dattara, sanpo shimasen ka?
If it rains, I will not go to the picnic. Ame ga futtara, picnic ni ikimasen.
If it is not raining, I will not go to the party. Jikan ga nakattara, party ni ikimasen.
If it is hot, please turn on the air conditioner. Atsu kattara, aircon o tsukete kudasai.
If the weather is good tomorrow, would you like to play soccer? Ashita ii tenki dattara, soccer o shimasen ka?
If it is fine, won’t you take a walk with me? Ii tenki dattara, sanpo shimasen.
If you are free tomorrow, let’s go shopping! Ashita hima dattara, shoppingu ni ikō!
If you don’t like it, please leave it. Kirai datta, nokoshite kudasai.
If the new video camera is not good, I will not buy it. Atarashii bideo kamera ga yoku nakattara, kaimasen.
If I am free, I will go to Tokyo Tower. Hima dattara, Tokyo Tower e ikimasu.
Examples – I-Adjective
If it is inexpensive, I will buy a video recorder. Yasukatta, bideo o kaimasu.
If it is expensive, I won’t buy it. Takakatta, kaimasen.
If it is hot, please turn on the air conditioner. Atsu katta, aircon o tsukete kudasai.
If the new video camera is not good, I will not buy it. Atarashii bideo kamera ga yoku nakatta, kaimasu.
If my work is busy, I will not watch the movie. Shigoto ga isogashika dattara, eiga o shimasen.
If you are free, I will go to Tokyo Tower. Hima dattara, Tokyo Tower e ikimasu.
Examples – Na-Adjective
If I am free, I will go to Tokyo Tower. Hima dattara, Tokyo Tower e ikimasu.
If you do not like it, you do not have to eat it, you know. Suki ja nakattara, tabenakute mo ii desu yo.
If that temple were famous, I would have gone to see it. Sono o-tera ga yuumei dattara, mi ni ita no desu ga.
If it were quiet there, I would go. Soko (there) ga shizuka dattara, ikimasu.
Examples – Verb
When I go home, I will rest well. Uchi e kaetta yoku yasumimashou.
Please call me if you have time tomorrow. Ashita jikan ga attara denwa shite kudasai.
After shopping, I’ll go home. Kaimono o shitara kaerimasu.
If I had studied, I would have understood. Benkyou shitara, wakatta deshou.
When I drink coffee, I can’t sleep. Kohii o nondara, neraremasen.
If it were a good book, I would buy it. Ii hon dattara, kaimasu.
When I asked my teacher, I understood right away. Sensei ni kitara, sugo wakatta.
– tara ii desu ka? What/when/where/which/how should one do?
Is used to ask for advice or instruction from the listener about what the speaker had better do.

**STRUCTURE:** Interrogative (+ particle)+tara ii desu ka?

**Examples:**
Where do you suggest I buy a watch?
What shall I do?

Doko de tokei o katara ii desu ka?
Dou shitara ii desu ka?

– tatte Even if….

**Examples:**
Even if I tell him, he won’t understand it.
I will buy this ticket even if it is expensive.
Even if I had money, I wouldn’t want to buy a car.
Even if I buy books, I’m too busy to read them.
I don’t care even if it is dirty.

Ano hito ni wa hanashitatte wakarimasen.
Boku wa sono kippu o takakutatte kaimasu.
Okane ga attatte kuruma wa kaitakunai.
Hon o kattatte, isogashikute yomenai.
Kitanakutte mo kamaimasen. (don’t care)

– te kimasu Will go (somewhere) and then come back
- te kimasu conveys the meaning that one ‘goes somewhere, does something and then comes back.’

I am going to the bank.
I will come back (return) by the evening.

Chotto ginkou ni itte kimasu.
Yuuugata made ni kaette kimasu.

**N ga (te-form) imasu**
The state resulting out of a certain action, ie: what exists or is happening NOW
This expression is used to

1) Indicate a continuing action:

Mr Lee is watching TV now.
The light is on.
The window is open.
The chair is broken.
I am waiting for a friend now.
My father is already home.
Mr Yamada has gone to Boston and is there now.
Is the post office still open?
This TV is broken, isn’t it?

Lee-san wa ima terebi o mite imasu.
Denki ga tsuite imasu. (tsuite is te-form of tsukimasu)
Mado ga aite imasu. (aite is te-form of akimasu (open))
Isu ga kowarete imasu.
Ima tomodachi o matte imasu.
Chichi wa mou uchi ni kaette imasu yo.
Yamada-san wa ima Boston ni itte imasu.
Yuubinkyouku wa mada aite imasu ka?
Kono terebi wa kowarete imasu ne?

**WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW?**

(Ima) N o V-te imasu - this expression indicates that an action is in progress now

Q: What are you doing now?
A: (I am) reading a newspaper now.
A: (I am) drinking beer now.

Ima nani o shite imasu ka?
Ima shinbun o yonde imasu. or
Ima biiru o nonde imasu. or
A: (I am) eating sushi now.    Ima sushi o tabete imasu. or
A: (I am) smoking tobacco now.   Tobako o suite imasu.

VERY IMPORTANT!
Before dinner Tabemasu
While eating dinner Tabete imasu
After finishing dinner Tabeshimasha

Jon will eat dinner (before)    Jon-san wa bangohan o tabemasu.
Jon is eating dinner (present) Jon-san wa bangohan o tabete imasu.
Jon has eaten dinner (past)    Jon-san wa bangohan o tabemashita.

2) Indicate a state that is the result of a certain action that has already occurred or been done:
Ms. Suzuki is already married.   Suzuki-san wa mou kekkon shite imasu.

3) Indicate an action that is repeated over an extended period of time, eg: one’s occupation:
I work for a publishing company. Watashi wa shuppan no kaisha de hatarai te imasu.
I work for a book company.   Watashi wa hon no kaisha de hatarai te imasu.

– te mo
Even if, although

Examples:
I’ll go there even if it rains. Ame ga futte mo ikimasu.
I’ll go there even if it is cold. Samukute mo dekakemasu.
Jon doesn’t read books even if he buys them Jon-san wa hon o katte mo yomimasen.
No matter what I eat, it tastes good. Nani o tabete mo oishii desu.
No matter what I drink, I feel good. Nani o nomite mo, kimochii ga ii desu.
I’ll go there even if it is raining. Ame ga futte mo dekakemasu.

– to
Then (inevitably)
When expressing the situation where, as a result of a certain action, another action or matter invariably happens, to is used to connect the sentences.

STRUCTURE: V (Dict) to

Examples:
Press this button and the change will come out. Kono botan o osu to, otsuri ga demasu.
Turn this and the volume will go up. Kore o mawasu to, oto ga ookiku narimasu.
Turn to the right, and you will find a post office. Migi e magaru to, yuubinkyouku ga arimasu.

– to iu imi
Defines the meaning of a word positioned at ‘X’

STRUCTURE: ‘X’ wa ‘Y’ to iu imi desu.

Examples:
‘Arigatou’ means ‘Thank you’. ‘Arigatou’ wa ‘thank you’ to iu imi desu.
‘Moon’ means ‘tsuki’. ‘Moon’ wa ‘tsuki’ to iu imi desu.
What does that kanji mean? Ano kanji wa dou iu imi desu ka?
It means ‘Do not use’. Tsukau na to iu imi desu.
I ate at a restaurant called ‘Sakura’ yesterday. Kinou ‘Sakura’ to iu restaurant de tabemashita.
Yesterday I met a friend called ‘Atsushi’. The (machine called a) word processor is a convenient machine, isn’t it? Do you know the program called ‘Star Trek’? That means ‘Take it to drycleaning’, That means ‘Don’t take photos’. That means ‘Stop’. That means ‘Walk’.

Kinou ‘Atsushi’ to iu tomodachi ni aimashita. Waapuro to iu kikai wa benri na kikai desu ne. ‘Star Trek’ to iu bangumi o shitte imasu ka? Dry-cleaning ni shiro to iu imi desu. Shashin o toru na to iu imi desu. Tomare to iu imi desu. Aruke (walk) to iu imi desu.

TOKIDOKI
Always used in an affirmative sentence.

James is a good student but he sometimes misses class. Let’s eat together now and then. Let’s go to the movies sometimes. Let’s play golf sometimes.

James-san wa ii gakusei desu ga, tokidoki kurasu o yasumimasu. Tokidoki issho ni shokuji o shimashou. Tokidoki issho ni eigakan e ikimashou. Tokidoki gorufu o shimashou.

TOKORO
- A place, a point in time

Used to indicate a temporal position. Used when the speaker wants to convey which stage he is at in the course of a certain action.

STRUCTURE:
1) Dict. form ] + tokoro desu = Be going to do
2) Te-form + iru] + tokoro desu = Be doing
3) Ta form ] = Have just done

1) Dict. form ] + tokoro desu = Be going to do
This sentence pattern indicates that somebody is about to start doing something or something is about to start.
A: Have you already had lunch? Hirugohan wa mou tabemashita ka?
B: No, I am just going to eat now. Iie, korekara (just) taberu tokoro desu.
I am just going to have some tea. Choudo (just) ima kara ocha o nomu tokoro desu.
I am about to return. Kaeru tokoro desu.
I am about to have my breakfast. Asagohan o taberu tokoro desu.
I am leaving for school. Gakkou ni iku tokoro desu.
I was about to call you on the phone. Anata ni denwa suru tokoro desu.

2) Te-form + iru] + tokoro desu = Be doing
This sentence pattern indicates that one is doing a certain action or a certain action is now being done. Ima kopii-shi te itu tokoro desu.

3) Ta form ] = Have just done
This sentence pattern indicates that one has just finished a certain action or a certain action has just been completed.

A: Has Mr Takahashi left already? Takahashi-san wa mou kaerimashita ka?
B: Yes, he has just left now.
Dinner preparations have just been completed. I met her just as I left the bank.
Carl is just about to eat his dinner. Carl is eating his dinner. Carl has just finished eating his dinner.
Karen is just about to write a letter. Karen is writing a letter. Karen has just finished writing a letter.
I'm just about to go out now.

Hai, tatta ima kaeta ta tokoro desu.
Choudo shokuji no junbi ga dekita ta tokoro desu.
Ginkou o de ta tokoro de kanojo ni aimashita.
Carl-san wa bangohan o taberu tokoro desu.
Carl-san wa bangohan o tabete iru tokoro desu.
Carl-san wa bangohan o tabeta ta tokoro desu.
Karen-san wa tegami o kaku tokoro desu.
Karen-san wa tegami o kaite iru tokoro desu.
Karen-san wa tegami o kaita tokoro desu.
Watashi wa ima dekakeru tokoro desu.

**TOKORO ga**

**But, however, and**

Examples:
I came to do my shopping but the store was closed.
I tried it and it worked well. Tokyo's a good town. But it's too hot.

Kaimono o shi ni kita tokoro ga mise ga shimatte imashita.
Yatte mita tokoro ga umaku ikimashita.
Tokyo wa ii machi desu. Tokoro ga atsusugimasu.

**TOORI NI**

As/like

– This indicates that an action demonstrated by someone as an example is to be done by another in exactly the same way.

**STRUCTURE:**

\[ \text{ta form} \quad \text{toori ni} \quad \text{Noun+ no} \]

Examples:
Please speak exactly as I do.
Please assemble the box exactly following the drawing.

Watashi ga hanashita toori ni hanashite kudasai.
Kono zu (drawing) no toori ni, hako o kumitatete kudasai.

**WA – for expressing CONTRAST.**

**Examples:** (note ‘ga’ = ‘but’)
I am not going today, but I will go tomorrow.
Tanaka-san is going, but I am not going.
I drink alcohol, but I don’t smoke.
I can write Hiragana, but I cannot write Katakana.

Kyou wa ikimasen ga, ashita wa ikimasu.
Tanaka-san wa ikimasu ga, watashi wa ikimasen.
O-sake wa nomimasu ga, tobako wa suimasen.
Hiragana wa kakemasu ga, katakana wa kakemasen.
WAKE desu - No wonder, so it means that, that’s why, should - , I take it that, naturally…
The speaker’s conclusion obtained through deductive, logical judgement or calculation on the basis of what s/he had heard or read.

Examples:
Are you studying Japanese for 3 hours every day?

No wonder your Japanese is good.
Do you have an exam tomorrow?
Then you must be busy tonight.
Carl played golf for 10 years, so he should be good at it.
Are you swimming in the pool everyday?

No wonder you’re healthy.

Mainichi san-jikan mo Nihongo o benkyou-shite iru desu ka?
Yoku dekiru wake desu ne.
Ashita shiken desu ka?
Konban isogashii wake desu ne.
Carl-san wa juunen-kan mo gorufu o shita no da kara jouzu na wake desu.
Mainichi puuru de oyoide iru desu ka?
Jouhu (healthy) na wake desu.

WASUREMASHITA
Have forgotten to do.

STRUCTURE:  Dict. form + no o wasuremashita

Examples:
I have forgotten the telephone number.
I have forgotten to write my name on the report.

Denwa bangou o wasuremashita.
Report ni namae o kaku no o wasuremashita.

(verb) masu form + YASUI desu Easy to do

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YASUI</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Eg:</strong></td>
<td>iki + yasui&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasui</td>
<td>iki + yasui desu&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasui desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Eg:</strong></td>
<td>iki + yasukatta&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasukatta</td>
<td>iki + yasukatta desu&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasukatta desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Negative</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Eg:</strong></td>
<td>iki + yasukunai&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasukunai</td>
<td>iki + yasuku arimasen&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasuku arimasen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Negative</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Eg:</strong></td>
<td>iki + yasukunakatta&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasukunakatta</td>
<td>iki + yasuku arimasen deshita&lt;br&gt;hanashiyasuku arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples – YASUI:
The print in this dictionary is large & easy to read. Kono jisho wa ji ga ookikute, miyasui desu.
White shirts get soiled easily. Shiroi shatsu wa yogoreyasui desu.
This pen is easy to write with. Kono pen wa kakiyasui desu.
Tony is easy to talk with. Tony-san wa hanashiyasui desu.
Sushi is easy to eat. Sushi wa tabiasui desu.
Beer is easy to drink. Biiru wa nomiyasui desu.
+ NIKUI desu

Difficult to do

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NIKUI</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>iki + nikui</td>
<td>iki + nikui desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>iki + nikukatta</td>
<td>iki + nikukatta deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Negative</strong></td>
<td>iki + nikukunai</td>
<td>iki + nikuku arimasen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Negative</strong></td>
<td>iki + nikukunakatta</td>
<td>iki + nikuku arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples – NIKUI:

This medicine is bitter & difficult to drink.
Kono kusuri wa nigakute, nominikui desu.

This glass does not break easily.
Kono garasu wa warenikui desu.

The old typewriter in our office is difficult to use, so nobody uses it.
Ofisu no furui typewriter wa tsukai-nikukute dare mo tsukaimasen.

Mrs Smith is a little difficult (Lit. difficult person) to talk to.
Sumisu-san wa chotto hanashi-nikui hito desu.

Chopsticks are hard to use, aren’t they?
Hashi wa tsukainikui desu ne.

She is difficult to talk with.
Kanojo to wa hanashinikui desu.

His name is difficult to remember.
Ano hito no namae wa oboenikui desu.

V no o YAMERU / N o yameru

Discontinue a particular activity

This expression indicates that one will **discontinue a particular activity**, such as the performance of an action, a job or a habitual or customary action.

YOU DESU

Expression of conjecture, which the speaker has formed upon **obtaining information from the outside world** through his senses.

**STRUCTURE:**

Verb]+Plain Form]

Adj ]+Plain Form]+ you desu/da

Na ]_ Plain Form _

Noun (da → no )

Examples:

Mr Lee in Osaka **seems** to be fine.
Osaka ni iru Lee-san wa genki na you desu.

He **looks like** he will travel abroad.
Kare wa gaikoku e ryokou ni iku you desu.

The exam **seems** easy.
Sono shiken wa yasashii you desu.

His work today **seems** to have been hard.
Kare no kyou no shigoto wa kibishikat ta you desu.

It **appears that** Yoshiko is going to Japan during the holidays, since her mother is in Kyoto.
Okaasan ga Kyoto ni iru kara, yasumi ni Yoshiko-san wa Nihon e iku you desu.

It **seems** that the restaurant is good.
Ano resutoran wa oishii you desu.

There are always many people there.
Itsumo takusan hito ga imasu.

It **seems** that an electronic dictionary is convenient.
Denshi-jisho wa benri na you desu.

It **appears that** Todd is going to Osaka.
Todd-san wa Osaka e iku you desu.

That person looks like Todd.
Ano hito wa Todd-san no you desu.

It **seems** that Carl drank sake yesterday.
Carl-san wa kinou osake o nonda you desu.

This sake is like water.
Kare wa yoku benkyou suru you desu.

He **seems** to study hard.
Kanojo wa yoku namawo iku you desu.
They seem to quarrel sometimes.
There seems to be someone in the house.

Conjecture Summary

Information

[hear, read] -------------------
[see ] -------------------
[hear, read] -------------------
[reasoning, judgement]--,
[??] -------------------

Conjecture

S sou desu

- - Sou desu
- - Rashii
- - Deshou

YOU NI

An act for a certain purpose is expressed.

STRUCTURE:
[purpose/goal] you ni [volitional action to get closer to the purpose/goal]

Examples:
I study hard so that my Japanese will improve.
Please take notes so that you will not forget.
Please speak Japanese more slowly so that I can understand you.
Please write neatly so that I can read it.
Mr Smith spoke Japanese slowly so that I could understand him.
I went there by taxi so that I wouldn’t be late.
I took medicine so that I would recover from illness.

YOU NI NARIMASHITA

Has become…..
– ‘Narimashita’ means that a certain state has been transformed into another state.

STRUCTURE: Dict. form + you ni narimashita - is used when VERBS are involved.

Examples:
I have become capable of speaking Japanese.
I want to become capable of reading newspapers.
Carl has reached the point where he does not drink beer any more.
I am finally able to read difficult Japanese.
I have reached the point where I cannot memorise kanji anymore.
I haven’t reached the point where I can memorise kanji. I have come to understand the Japanese language. I’ve come to drink a lot lately. I have come to understand French.

Kanji ga oboerareru you ni naranakatta. Watashi wa Nihongo ga wakaru you ni narimashita. Saikin yoku sake o nomu you ni natta. Furansu-go ga wakaru you ni narimashita.

YOU NI SHITE KUDASAI

Please do –
Please do not -
– Used when asking someone to do/not do something habitually and repeatedly. Therefore it should not be used for an action that only takes place once and then is finished.

STRUCTURE: Nai form] + you ni shite kudasai

Dict. form]

Examples:
Before you go to bed, please be sure to make a habit of closing the window.
Please do not touch this machine at all.
Neru mae ni, kanarazu mado o shimeru you ni shite kudasai.
Zettai ni kono kikai ni sawanai you ni shite kudasai.

ZANNEN –

That’s/It’s a pity, isn’t it? / I’m sorry (to hear that) Zannen desu ne.
That’s too bad… Sore wa zannen desu.

ZENZEN – Indicates that one has absolutely no ability to do a certain thing / not at all.

STRUCTURE: zenzan (negative) Always used in a negative sentence.

Examples:
Q: Can you speak English? A: No, I cannot speak any English.
Eigo ga hanasemasu ka? Iie, eigo wa zenzan hanasemasen.

I don’t understand kanji at all.
I cannot write in Japanese at all.
I could not sleep at all last night.
I understand Chinese but I do not understand Korean at all.
That movie was not interesting at all.
James is completely different from his older brother.
Kanji ga zenzan wakarimasen.
Nihongo wa zenzan kakemasen.
Yuube wa zenzan neremasen deshita.
Chuugokugo wa wakarimasu ga kankokugo wa zenzan wakarimasen.
Ano eiga wa zenzan omoshiroku dewa arimasen.
James-san wa oniisan to zenzan chigaimasu.
ZUIBUN – is a qualifier and has 2 meanings: 1) Extremely and 2) A lot of. Zuibun meaning ‘extremely’ may be substituted by taihen or totemo.

1) Extremely
There are many people here, aren’t there? Koko wa zuibun hito ga ooi desu ne.

1) A lot of
You had a lot of beer, didn’t you? Zuibun biiru o nomimashita ne.

MISCELLNEOUS sentence structures:
(C1) te form ] + (C2) With –
(C1) nai form + de] + (C2) Without –

I will go out with an umbrella. Kasa o motte dekakemasu.
I will go out without an umbrella. Kasa o motanaide dekakemasu.

(C1) nai form + de (C2) Instead
On Sunday I do not go anywhere, instead Nichiyoubi wa doko mo ikan de, uchi de yukkuri yasumimasu.
I stay home and relax. Ashita wa kaisha o yasumimasu ka? Iie, yasunai de, hatarakimasu.

Will you have a holiday tomorrow? Ashita wa kaisha o yasumimasu ka? No, I will not have a holiday, instead I will work. Iie, yasunai de, hatarakimasu.

Noun de
The particle de sometimes indicates a cause. The accident caused the train to stop. Jiko de densha ga tomarimashita.
Snow caused the shinkansen to be delayed. Yuki de shinkansen ga okurimashita.

A1 Adjectives
The Dict. form of a verb + ‘no’ is used in the same way as a noun.

STRUCTURE:  Dict. form]+ no wa + adjective

Examples:
Playing soccer is fun. Soccer o suru no wa omoshiroi desu
Watching soccer is fun. Soccer o miru no wa omoshiroi desu

A2 Adjectives
The Dict. form of a verb + ‘no’ is used in the same way as a noun.

STRUCTURE:  Dict. form]+ no ga + adjective

Examples:
I like listening to music. Watashi wa ongaku o kiku no ga suki desu.
He is fast at typing. Ano hito wa taipu o utsu no ga hayai desu.
CHARACTERS AND WRITING TIPS

PUT JJ9 KANA.xls PAGE HERE
Tips for writing kanji

✔ Write from left to right
✔ Top to bottom
✔ Horizontal strokes are usually written before vertical strokes
✔ Write the centre stroke first, followed by the left and write strokes.
✔ Write the outside strokes, except for the bottom one, before the centre portion.
✔ Write a left-hand sweeping stroke before a right-hand one.
✔ A vertical stroke that pieces the centre is written last.
✔ A horizontal that pieces the centre is written last.
✔ Write a short left sweeping stroke before a horizontal stroke.
✔ Write a long left sweeping stroke after a horizontal stroke.

Print the kanji writing guide pages noted at top of file xxx
Kanji word list ➡ Insert excel file of same name: allow 8 pages

MISCELLANEOUS WORDS AND PHRASES

Table of Contents

Try to loosely group the below

Douboku
I'd like to give my old clothes to someone.
Clear, obvious

Drop of water
Well-worn, much used
The four seasons
Crossroads
A Caucasian
Chinese cabbage
Grey hair
First half, period
I missed the first half of the program.
Latter half
I cut the cake in half.
One’s mother tongue
Defeat, setback
In Japan, cars drive on the left.
Left handed
Right handed
Are you left handed?
Left and right
Make sure you look both ways.
An outward appearance.
To go out
Abroad/overseas
Unexpected/surprising
Water bill
I wonder what (present) I should get my father for Father’s Day?
Please put out burnable rubbish on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Engineering (public) works
Furigi o dare ka ni agetai.
meihaku

Mizutama
Ofuru
Shiki
Yotsukado
Hakujin
Hakusai
Shiraga
Zenhan 前半
Bangumi no zenhan o minakatta.
Kouhan 後半
Keeki o hanbun ni kitta.
Bokokugo
Haiboku
Nihon de wa, kuruma wa hidarigawa o hashiru.
Hidari-kiki
Migi-kiki
Hidari-kiki desu ka?
Migi-hidari / Sayuu
Sayuu no kakunin o shinasai.
Gaiken
Gaishutsu
Kaigai
Igai
Suidoudai
Chichi no Hi no purezento wa nani ga ii ka na…?
Moeru gomi wa ges-sui ni dashite kudasai.
Genius
Nature; natural
First week
My total income has increased.
I take a bath every evening.
Home made
A cat was asleep under the table.
Hearing something for first time.
That's news to me!
The West; Europe
I'm interested in Western culture.
Northwest
Western part
The Christian era; AD
A priority; preference
Captain
Versatile; multi-talented
Various; diverse
Recent years
Older; senior
Thank you very much for inviting me today/for everything.
A one year has passed since I came to Japan.
Encyclopedia
Taste, preference
My wife's taste is very particular.
Good reputation, acclaim
That new product gas a good reputation, doesn't it?
Ideal, best
I'll come and pick you up.
Please come and pick me up
Chinese; Mandarin
A foreign language
I've started learning Chinese.
A loan word; a borrowing
Many foreign loanwords are used in Japanese.
Reading
Fewer and fewer people enjoy reading these days.
Reading comprehension
Reading aloud
Reading material/matter
An on (Chinese) reading
A kun (native Japanese) reading
Please write both on and kun readings of the character.
A punctuation mark
Information; knowledge
Scandalous
Horsepower, energy
This engine develops 150 horsepower.
Power; authority
Effort; labour
Competence; ability
Physical strength
I am confident of my physical strength.
Manual labour
The distance covered; mileage
I ran the 100 metres in 11 seconds.
Weekly pay
Weekly magazine
Do you have any plans for the weekend?
We're going to be a little busy next week, aren't we?
An internal medicine
Drinking water
Is this water good for drinking?
Drinking water
He was arrested for drunk driving.

Reason, common sense
The martial arts
An implement, a tool
Lightning
I attended English conversation classes for a year.
A myth, mythology
A legend, a folk tale
A topic, subject
A consultation, an agreement, a discussion
To purchase, to buy up (out)
Company A bought out Company B.
Buying and selling; trading
I'm just going to do a bit of shopping.
I'm just going to do a bit of gardening.

Performance
The department chief is impressed with his performance.
Going out to buy
A buyer
A good bargain
The New Year; a new year
Renewal, replacement, update
It's time to renew my visa.
Time to renew/update
Fresh
A new problem has come up.
A stationmaster
I asked the stationmaster what time the last train left.

Minimum, worst, lowest
A fall, a decline, a drop
Particular; special
I think that is quite a different matter.
Seperately, respectively
Wisdom, intelligence
Construction work
Industry
I visited an automobile factory.

Note: 'Kengaku' = field trip, inspection, study by observation.

You can't get through because they are fixing the road. Sono michi wa koujichuu (under construction) de torenai.
I'm interested in traditional handicrafts.
Renovate, rebuild

Artificial
Those are artificial pearls.
Ability
This child has a talent for drawing.
Genius
Mozart was a genius.
Business ability
Talent, genius
Town mayor
The election for town mayor took place the other day.
Country town
Farming village, rural community
The population of that rural community has dropped considerably,
Fishing village.
I was raised in a small fishing village.
A fish market
I bought some tuna at the local fish shop.
A villager
(personal) experience
Generally, on the whole
Physical condition
One's build, one's figure
After playing tennis all day, I ached all over.
One's weight
I haven't weighted myself recently.
Street corner
Apprentice
A pupil, disciple
That teacher has 30 pupils.
Supper, dinner
Dinner will be at 6:00 pm.
Evening, dusk
Retirement
A drawer (of a desk), a withdrawal
Business, a transaction
A discount
Since we have some beef, let's eat sukiyaki tonight.

OTHER EXAMPLES OF 'ARU NODE'
Since it is Monday, let's go to the park.
Add more
A difference, a distinction
Summer gift-giving
I forgot to turn off the gas main.
The former prime minister came to Japan.
A public employee
My father was a government official.
Environmental pollution
Pollution has worsened since the 1970s.

A main character
Case, incident
The case was made public.
Prohibition, a ban
This is a no-parking area/zone
A suspension, a stoppage
The match was called off because of rain.
A pause, a suspension
A dead end, an impasse

Tensai
Mozart wa tensai datta.
Shousai
Eisai
Chouchou
Senjitsu, chouchou senkyou (election) ga atta.
Inaka machi
Nouson
Ano nouson no jinko ga daubu hetta.

Gyoson
Boku wa chiisa na gyoson de sodatta. (grew up)
Uo-ichiba add to places
Kinjo no sakanaya de maguro o katta. check with H
Murabito
Taiken
Daitai
Taichou
Karadatsuki
Ichinichijuu tenisu o shitara, karadajuu ga itaku natta,
Taijuu
Chikagoro, taijuu o hakatte inai.
Machikado
Totei
Deshi
Ano sensei ni wa sanjuunin ni deshi ga iru.
Yuushoku
Yuushoku wa roku-ji ni hajimarimasu.
Yuugata
Intai
Hikidashi
Torihiki
Nebiki
Gyuuniku ga aru node, konya wa sukiyaki ni shiyou.

Getsuyoubi ga aru node, kouen ni ikimasu.
Kubetsu
Ochuugen
Gasu no motosen o shimewasureta.
Moto-shushou ga rainichi shimasita.
Koumuin
Chichi wa koumuin deshita.
Kougai
Nanajuu-nendai kara kougai ga hidoku (badly, severely,
seriously, etc.) natte kita.
Shujinkou
Iken
Iiken ga ouyake (public) ni natta.
Kinshi
Koko wa chuusha (parking) kinshi kuiki (zone) desu.
Chuushi
Ame de shiai ga chuushi ni natta.
Kyuushi
Ikidomari
That road is a dead end.
Road closed
My watch had stopped and so I was late.

The centre
Enthusiasm
Determination
Psychology
I studied psychology at university.

The day, daytime
To be in time, to be useful
Did you make it in time?
The company is located between Kanda and Ginza.
Collection, recovery
They've started collecting plastic containers for recycling
This time; lately
Next time
Clockwise
A long way around, long-winded
Detour; a circuit
Construction work is going on, so please take the detour.
Use, application
The conference rom is presently in use.
Expense(s), costs

I learned ballroom dancing for a short time.
A favourite (food); a passion
Kindness; goodwill
Excellent shape, top form
My grandmother prefers tea to coffee.
Archeology
I'm interested in archeology.
A way of thinking; an opinion
I cannot follow his way of thinking.

Sightseeing, tourism
I went to England on a sightseeing trip.
A scene, a sight
Scenery, a scene
I was captivated by the beautiful landscape.
Gathering, meeting
Please be there tomorrow morning at 8.00am.
How much did it come to in total?
Dead person; the deceased

Death
Suicide
A classmate of mine died in a traffic accident.
Cause of someone's death.
The primary cause of death is cancer.
Please write your surname first.
Self confidence
Freedom, liberty
Independence, self reliance
He's a very independent person.
Self sufficiency
Nature

Sono machi wa ikidomari desu.
Tsuukou-dome
Tokei ga tomatte ite node chikoku shita. (← being late, lateness)
Chuushin
Nesshin
Kesshin
Shinrigaku
Daigaku de shinrigaku o benkyou shimashita.

Hiruma
Maniau
Ma ni aimashita ka?
Kaisha wa Kanda to Ginza no aida ni arimasu.
Kaishuu
Purasuchikku youki o kaishuu shihajimeta.

Konkai
Jikai
Tokei-mawari
Tomawari
ukai
Koujichuu na node, ukai shite kudasai.

Shiyou
Ima, kaigishitsu wa shiyochuu desu.
Hiyou

Shakou dansu o chotto naraishimashita.
Koubutsu
Koui
Zekkouchou
Sobo wa kohii yori koucha o konomu. (konomimazu)
Koukogaku
Watashi wa koukogaku ni kyoumi ga arimasu.
Kangaekata
Kare no kangaekata ni wa tsuite ikenai.

Kankou
Igirisu e wa kankou ryokou de ikimashita.
Koukei (regular/any view)
Keshiki (scenic/beauty)
Utsukushii koukei ni me o ubawareta.
Shuugou
Ashita was asa hachiji ni shuugou shite kudasai.
Awasete ikura ni narimashita?
Shisha

Death
Jisatsu
Doukyuusei ga kotsu jiko de shibo shita.
Shiin
Shiin no dai-ichii wa gan desu.
Myouji o saki ni kaike kudasai.
Jishin
Jiyuu
Jiritsu
Ano hito wa jiritsu shita hito desu yo.
Jikyuu jisoku
Shizen
A characteristic
To each his own
I think you'd better speak to her yourself.
You should try **various experiences** when you are young.

Early morning
Every day, I've been taking **early morning** jogs.
Sassoku
A parcel has arrived, so let's open it **right away**.
Let's get up early tomorrow!
Could you move up the meeting time by 30 minutes?

An AA size battery
You'd better change the batteries soon.

I think I'll go shopping in Ikebukuro this weekend.
The Earth; the globe
Let's create **environmentally-friendly** products.
Region
*ie*; I'd like to buy some **land** in Tokyo some day.
Pulp; fruit flesh
This fruit juice contains pulp.
Once a year
Research; study
Work; operations
I haven't made much progress with **the editing**.
Handmade; self produced
I'll make curry this evening.
A resident
Permanent resident
Permanent residence
I applied for **the right to permanent residence**.
Migration; immigration
Chart; diagram
Diagram; figure
Plan; blueprint
Weather map
An intention; a purpose
**What he intends to do** just isn't clear.
A statement; an announcement
The prime minister made an official statement.
A reputation
The equator
Distance covered; mileage
I ran the 100 metres in 11 seconds.

The man and woman make dinner every night.
Please come early tomorrow morning.

You'd better ask the store owner.
**What is that country's main industry?**
Public opinion
A front part
I parked the car in front of the house.
A car stopped in front of my house.

**Normal**
Well mannered; polite
Taxi **fare**

**Tokushoku**
Juunin toiro
Jibun kara kanojo ni hanashita hou ga ii to omou.
Wakai uchi wa **iroiro na keiken** o shita hou ga ii.

Soucho
Mainichi, **soucho** jogingu o shite iru.
Immediately
Nimotsu gatodoita node, **sassoku** akete miyou. («?)
Ashita, haya-oki shiyou!

Machiawase no jikan o sanjuppun hayamete kudasai.

Tansan-denchii
Soro soro («Slowly, gradually, soon) denchi o torikaeta hou ga ii.
Shuumatsu ni Ikebukuro e kaimono ni ikou to omou.
Chikyuu
Chikyuu ni yasashii seihin o tsukurou.
 tochii
Sono uchi, Tokyo ni **rochi** o kaitai.
Kaniku
Kono juusu no naka ni wa kaniku ga haitte imasu.
Nen ni ikkai
Kenkyuu
Sagyuu
**Henshuu sagyou** ga nakanaka susumanai.
Tezukuri
Konban, karee o tsukurou.
Kyojuusha
Eiju-ken
Eiju
Eiju-ken o shinsei shita.
Ijuu
Zuhyou
Zukei
Sekkeizuu
Tenkizu
Ito
Kare no ito ga hakkiri shinai.
Seimei
Shushou wa seimei o happyou («?? H) shimashita.
Meisei
Sekidou
Sokou kyori
Hyaku-meeteru o juuichi-byou de hashimashita.

Sono dansei to josei wa, maiban yushoku o tsukurimasu.
Ashita no asa hayaku kite kudasai.

Mise no shujin ni kiita hou ga ii.
Sono kuni no **omo na** sangyou wan nan desu ka?
Serou
Shoumen
Shoumen genkan ni kuruma o tometa.
Kuruma ga ichidai ie no mae ni tomatta.
Seijou
Rei-tadashii
Takushii-dai
The subject (of a sentence) Representation; representative
Rice paddy Fields and gardens; the country Rice planting When is the rice planting season? Fields and rice paddies Preparations; arrangements

Society, the world The world; society; life A century A generation A period; an age; the present For generations Public society; the community

Death Graveyard Both (sides) A method, a means A direction, a course I don’t want you to use anything other than a pencil. Please answer within 2 minutes. Since then, after that. I haven’t seen her since May. Before, since, the past Have we met somewhere before? He graduated from college last year. Elimination Removal I’d love to live in a more spacious house. An advertisement Vast; extensive

Arrangements; preparations Let’s get ready for our trip. A ways; a means A finish; completion Please finish it by today. Japanese Sports To put Kokugo Undou Oku

Appropriate, suitable Entirely, all, everything

The sun The sun is dazzling. A sword

Contents, details Please tell me what the job entails.

Guidance, instruction Within, no more than

Empitsu igai wa tsukawanai de hoshii. Nifun inai ni kotaensai. Irai Kanojo ni wa gogatsu irai atte imasen. izen Kare wa kyonen daigaku o sotsugyou shita. Izen doko ka de oai shimashita ka? Jokyou Tekkyo Motto hiroi ie ni sumitai na. Koukoku Koudai na

Ryokou no shitaku o shimashou. Shikata Shiage Kyoujuu ni sore o shiagete kudasai. Meaning Imi To plant Ueru (ask for masu form)

Tekisetsu na Issai
Taiyou Taivou ga mabushii. Tachi
Naiyou Shigoto no naiyou o oshiete kudasai.

Ansi

Iinai
Writing, a sentence
His writing is difficult to understand.
An example (sentence)
Please think of an example sentence.
I am interested in Egyptian culture.

**Culture, civilization**

**Literature**
A pattern, design
This is a traditional Japanese pattern.
A phrase, a complaint
A letter, character
Try and write the correct character.
Language, speech

A direction, a way, an aspect
The approaching train is bound for Ikebukuro.
You’d better make a reservation soon.
A district, a region, the countryside
I don’t know much about that region’s dialect.

Pronunciation of a character
Do you know how to read this Chinese character?

**Appropriate, suitable**
Entirely, all, everything
I think I’ll have my hair cut.
Suddenly the telephone went dead.
We’ll divide the room in two with a bookcase.
The sun
The sun is dazzling.
Sword
Domestic, the interior (of Japan)
That isn’t sold domestically.

Please say what you have to say within 3 minutes.
Within the year
The inside, the interior
Please queue up behind the line.

**Dissatisfaction, discontent**
Carelessness, inattention
The accident was caused by the driver’s carelessness.

Shortage, a deficiency, discontent
There was a water shortage this summer.

In the future, from now on
Pinwheel

A word, a language, an expression
The latter half
An aftertaste
A hind leg, paw
I’m looking for [object].

Found
Maximum, best, great
High priced
High grade / class
Please **proofread** this by the end of tomorrow.
Let’s go to the **bookshop** together.
Please write your name in **katakana**.
I had a postcard from a friend from elementary school days.
Please tell me what you saw.
He says he is going to leave the company.
I know that she came home very late last night.
Please go to the **end** of the **line**.
I take my medication **after** meals.
What shall we have to **eat** this evening?
Studying abroad
I went to Sweden **to study** for three years.
Domestically produced, grown
I’m planning to attend an international conference.

**Kaiwa**

**Membership fee, dues**
A line, queue, parade
There was a long **line** in front of the movie theatre.

**An event, function**
I’m going on an excursion to Mt Takao next week.

**Satisfaction**
A shortage, a lack
There isn’t enough time.
Since then; from that time
The origin, derived from
A caller, a visitor
No one knows what the future holds.

Wool, **woolen yarn**

**A full name**

**Surname**
Famous; well-known
He wrote a bestseller and became **well-known**.
I know nothing about it.
Bunch of flowers
**Blooming; to blossom**
I suffer from **hayfever** every year in **early spring**. Maitoshi, **harsakiki wa kafunshou** ni naru.
Let’s go and watch the fireworks.

**Bride**
The bride looks so gorgeous!
I picked up some beautiful **shells**.
I don’t like raw **shellfish** very much.

Let’s work out the next schedule.

**Safety, security**
**Peace of mind**
A welcome (reception)
An opportunity, a chance
Let’s get together again when we get the chance.

**A real, genuine thing**
This is real gold.
A sample

Kouka
Koukyuu
Ashita-juu ni kousei shite kudasai.
Issho ni shoten ni ikou ka.
Katakana de nanae o kaite kudasai.
Shougakkou jidai no tomodachi kara hagaki ta todoita.

Anata ga mita koto o hanashi te kudasai.
Kare wa kaisha o yameru to itte imasu.
Kanojo ga yuube osoku kaette kita no o shitte imasu.
**Retsu** no ushiro ni narde (← along? ask H) kudasai.
**Shokugyo** ni kusuri o nonde iru.
Konban wa, nani o tabeyou ka?
**Ryugaku**
**Sannenkan Sueeden ni ryugaku shita.**
**Gakui**
**Kokusan**
**Kokusa**

**Kai**

**Gyouretsu**
Eigakan no mae ni nagai **gyouretsu** ga atta.

**An event, function**
I’m going on an excursion to Mt Takao next week.

**Satisfaction**
A shortage, a lack
There isn’t enough time.
Since then; from that time
The origin, derived from
A caller, a visitor
No one knows what the future holds.

Wool, **woolen yarn**

**A full name**

**Surname**
Famous; well-known
He wrote a bestseller and became **well-known**.
I know nothing about it.
Bunch of flowers
**Blooming; to blossom**
I suffer from **hayfever** every year in **early spring**. Maitoshi, **harsakiki wa kafunshou** ni naru.
Let’s go and watch the fireworks.

**Bride**
The bride looks so gorgeous!
I picked up some beautiful **shells**.
I don’t like raw **shellfish** very much.

Let’s work out the next schedule.

**Safety, security**
**Peace of mind**
A welcome (reception)
An opportunity, a chance
Let’s get together again when we get the chance.

**A real, genuine thing**
This is real gold.
A sample

**Gyouji**
Raishu, Takao-san ni ensoku ni ikimasu.
**Manzoku**
**fusoku**
Jikan ga tarinai.
**Irai**
**Yurai**
Raikyaku
Mira no koto wa dare mo shiranai.
Keito
**Shimeii**
**Myouji**
**Yuumei**
Kare wa beutosera o kaite yuumei ni natta.
Sore ni tsuite wa nani mo shirimasen.
**Hanataba**
**Kaika**

**Gyouertsu**
Eigakan no mae ni nagai **gyouretsu** ga atta.

**An event, function**
I’m going on an excursion to Mt Takao next week.

**Satisfaction**
A shortage, a lack
There isn’t enough time.
Since then; from that time
The origin, derived from
A caller, a visitor
No one knows what the future holds.

Wool, **woolen yarn**

**A full name**

**Surname**
Famous; well-known
He wrote a bestseller and became **well-known**.
I know nothing about it.
Bunch of flowers
**Blooming; to blossom**
I suffer from **hayfever** every year in **early spring**. Maitoshi, **harsakiki wa kafunshou** ni naru.
Let’s go and watch the fireworks.

**Bride**
The bride looks so gorgeous!
I picked up some beautiful **shells**.
I don’t like raw **shellfish** very much.

Let’s work out the next schedule.

**Safety, security**
**Peace of mind**
A welcome (reception)
An opportunity, a chance
Let’s get together again when we get the chance.

**A real, genuine thing**
This is real gold.
A sample

**Honmono**
Kore wa honmono no kin desu.
Mihon
My grandmother **lived** until she was 90.
Petrol, kerosene
A precious stone
Coal
A magnet
National, state
I'd like to enter a **national university**.
Independence, freedom
America gained **independence** from Britain.

Sobo wa kyuujussai **made ikita**./ikimashita.
Jazu no nama-enso.
Sekiyu
Houseki
Sekitan
Jishaku
Kokuritsu

Kokuritsu no daigaku ni hairitai to omoimasu.
Dokuritsu
Amerika wa Igirisu kara dokuritsu shita.

**Will you walk to Osaka?**
No, I will go by plane.

**I will drive from Tokyo to Osaka by car.**
About how much time will it take?

Q: About how many minutes from your house to the station?
A: It take 10 minutes from my house to the station.

**Osaka e aruite ikimasu ka?**
Iie, Osaka e hikouki de ikimasu.

**Tokyo kara Osaka made kuruma de ikimasu.**
Nanjikan gurai kakarimasu ka?

Otaku kara eki made **nanpun gurai kakarimasu ka?**
Watashi no uchi kara eki made juupun gurai kakarimasu.

**Noun modification**
I saw a movie last week.

→ The movie that I saw last week.

Mr Wang works at a hospital.

→ The hospital where Mr Wang work.

I will meet a friend tomorrow.

→ The friend whom I will meet tomorrow.

Watashi wa senshuu eiga o mimashita.
Watashi **ga** senshuu mita eiga.
Wang-san byouin de hataraite imasu.
Wang-san **ga** hataraite iru byouin.
Watashi wa ashita tomodachi ni aimasu.
Watashi **ga** ashita au tomodachi.

**P de V-te Iru N-1 wa N-2 desu**
This expression is used to indicate the name of a person (or animal) that is doing something in Place P

**Examples:**
The person reading a book over there is Mr Yamada. Asoko de hon o yonde iru hito wa Yamada-san desu.
The one reading a book on movies over there is Mr Yamada. Asoko de eiga no hon o yonde iru no wa Yamada-san desu.
# Politics, officialdom & economics terms

## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>President</td>
<td>Daitouryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deputy Prime Minister</td>
<td>Fuku Souri Dajin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Politics</td>
<td>Seiji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Politician</td>
<td>Seiji-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>Seisaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right wing/faction</td>
<td>Uuyoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A right-wing party’s truck</td>
<td>Uuyoku no kuruma ga ie no mae o totta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deputy Prime Minister</td>
<td>Fuku Souri Dajin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prime Minister</td>
<td>Shushou / Souri Dajin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minister</td>
<td>Dajin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Election</td>
<td>Senkyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td>Houritsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parliament</td>
<td>Kokkai gijidou</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Official words and expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Government office</td>
<td>Yakusho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward office</td>
<td>Kuyakusho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City office</td>
<td>Shiyakusho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ministry of Justice</td>
<td>Houmushou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local government</td>
<td>Jichitai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family register</td>
<td>Koseki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy of the whole register</td>
<td>Koseki touhon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy of the entry for one person</td>
<td>Koseki shouhon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## At the immigration office

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Immigration office</td>
<td>NYUUKOKU KANRI JIMUSHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alien registration card</td>
<td>Gaikujin touroku shoumeisho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visa renewal</td>
<td>Biza (zairyu kikan) no koushin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential status</td>
<td>Zairyuu shikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-entry</td>
<td>Sainyuukoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple re-entry permit</td>
<td>Suiji sainyuukoku kyoka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of residence</td>
<td>Touroku zumi shoumeisho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of residence</td>
<td>Juuminhyou</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Forgetting to renew your visa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I go through the renewal procedures now?</td>
<td>Ima kara koushin no tetsuzuki wa dekimasu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did it expire? Why didn't you come?</td>
<td>Itsu kireta? Naze konakatta no?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm very sorry. [EXCUSE] I'm truly sorry.</td>
<td>Moshi-wake arimasen. [EXCUSE] Hontou ni sumimasen deshita.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Re-entry permit</td>
<td>Sai-nyuukoku kyoka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oh no! I forgot!</td>
<td>A, wasurete shimattara!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why didn't you get a permit?</td>
<td>Naze kyoka o toranakatta desu ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was so busy at work that it slipped my mind.</td>
<td>Shigoto ga isogashikute, ukkari shite shimaimashita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What should I do now?</td>
<td>Dou shitara ii deshou ka?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Losing your foreigners registration card

Excuse me, but I've lost my alien registration card. Sumimasen ga, gaijin tourokusho o nakushite shimaimashita.

When did you lose it? Itsu desu ka?

TAX AND INSURANCE

Taxes
Income tax
Local tax
To file a tax return
Certificate from employer showing amount of tax deducted at source.
Health insurance (for those employed)
Welfare pension insurance (for those employed)
Health insurance (for self-employed and students)
Pension insurance (for self-employed and students)

TAXES
Zeikin
Income tax
Shotokuzai
Local tax
Juuminzei

To file a tax return
Kakutei shinkoku o suru
Certificate from employer showing amount of tax deducted at source.
Gensen choushuu hyou

Health insurance (for those employed)
Kenkou hoken
Welfare pension insurance (for those employed)
Kousei nenkin hoken
Health insurance (for self-employed and students)
Kokumin kenkou hoken
Pension insurance (for self-employed and students)
Kokumin nenkin

Economic terminology

Business
Economics
Microeconomics
Macroeconomics
Unemployment
Finance
Accounting
Stock exchange
Capital
Investment
Shareholder

小売
経済
ミクロ経済学
マクロ経済学
失業
金融
会計
証券取引所
資本
投資
株主

Miscellaneous words

A king; a monarch
A king; His Majesty
A prince
A princess
A queen
Royalty
The throne
Date of birth
ID
The people, a national
Nationality, citizenship
An island nation
The United Nations

Kokuou
Oosama
Ouji
Oujo
Jou
Ouzoku
Gyokuza
Seinen gappi
Mibun shoumei
Kokumin
Kokuseki
Shimaguni
Kokuren
Public square  
Citizen; resident  
Mayor  
City Hall  
A ward office  
Can you get the documents from the ward office?  

NOTES
EMERGENCY ESSENTIALS

Table of Contents

I have lost [OBJECT].
I have lost my mobile phone.
I have lost my wallet.  
My car was stolen and I lost my wallet....

I think my [OBJECT] was stolen.
Plane ticket
Call the police (ambulance/doctor)!

Reporting a robbery at the koban

Excuse me. Last night our house was broken into and some money was stolen. What should we do? Sumimasen. Yuube dorobou ni hairarete, genkin o nusumaremashita. Dou sureba ii desu ka?

Hey! Chotto!
Help Tasukete!
Can you help me? Tasukete kudasai!
Police Keisatsu
Catch him/her! Tsuka ma’ete!
Go away / Leave me alone! Doite kudasai!
I'll call the police. Keikan o yobimasu.
Please call the (doctor/police/ambulance)!

Please call this number for me.
It's urgent! Kinkyuu desu.
Let me go! Hanase!
Freeze! Ugokunai!
Open up! (the door) Akete!
That's not necessary! Irimasen!

Attacked Osowareta Stolen Nusumareta
Forgot/lost Wasureta Lost Naku shimashita
Wallet/purse Saifu Cash Genkin
Passport Pasupooto Camera Kamera
Pickpocket Suri

Want to cancel Canceru shitai
Earthquake Jishin
Traffic accident Koutsu jiko
Typhoon Taifuu
Heavy traffic Koutsu juutai
Condition, state of health Youdai => I have good health
It's not my fault Watashi wa waruku arimasen.

[OBJECT] o nakushi mashita.
Keitai denwa o nakushi mashita.
Saifu nakushi o mashita.
Kuruma o nusumareta (stolen) shi, saifu o nakushita (lost) shi...
[OBJECT] o nasumareta you desu.
Koukuuken Keisatsu (kyuukyuusha/isha) o yonde kudasai!

For FIRE, RESCUE or an AMBULANCE, dial 119
For POLICE, dial 110

Police general information in English (Tokyo) 03-3501 0110
For information about civil and criminal matters, crime prevention (bouhan), etc:
Seikatsu Anzen Soudan Center - 03 3503-8484
If you are having trouble with the police and want to file a claim: 03-3581-4321
Public Information Desk (kouhouka), ask for the Kakarichou.

For FIRE – Kaji desu (there’s a fire). ___-ku, ___-cho, ___-chome, ___go (address) _____ ga moete imasu (___ is on fire)

For AMBULANCE – Kyukyu desu (I need an ambulance). ___-ku, ___-cho, ___-chome, ___go (address) ___-desu (your name) ga kyubyo desu (It’s an emergency)

For information about hospitals that give treatment in foreign languages, call 03-5285-8181 (in English, Chinese, Korean, Thai)

Phoning emergency services:
119 Ambulance
110 Police

I need an ambulance. Kyuukyuusha, onegai shimasu.
My friend is lying unconscious! Tomodachi ga taorete, ishiki-fumei desu!
Keep calm and give me your name and address. Ochitsuite, o-name to juusho o douzo.

MORE PHRASES FOR EMERGENCIES
The house is on fire. Come immediately. Ie ga kaji desu. Sugu kite kudasai.
To hang up (phone) denwa o kiru
The line has gone dead. Denwa ga kireta.
I can't hear you very well (we have a bad connection). Denwa ga tooi.
To charge (battery) Juuden (charge) suru
Public telephone Koushuu denwa
Area code Kyokuban
Wrong number Machigai denwa
**HOSPITALS / DOCTORS**

**Table of Contents**

Please take me to a hospital.  
Call an ambulance (please)  
Call the police (ambulance/doctor)!  
It hurts here.  
Is there an English-speaking doctor?

I want medicine for….

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allergy</td>
<td>Arerugii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backache</td>
<td>Youtsuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Hone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruise/bump</td>
<td>Uchimi/Kobo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burn</td>
<td>Yakedo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Kaze (kaze o hitte imasu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constipation</td>
<td>Bempi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Seki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>Kiri kizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>Geri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizziness</td>
<td>Memai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>Hiroo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fracture</td>
<td>Kossetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hay fever</td>
<td>Kafunshou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>Zutsuu / Atama ga itai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want medicine for…</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Name of condition] kusuri ga hoshii desu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hurt, injury, wound</td>
<td>Kega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigestion</td>
<td>Shouka furyoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injury, wound</td>
<td>Kega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insect bite</td>
<td>Mushisasare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itch</td>
<td>Kayui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicine</td>
<td>Kusuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menstrual pain</td>
<td>Seeritsuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular pain</td>
<td>Kinnikitsuuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea, sickness</td>
<td>Hakike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sneeze</td>
<td>Kushami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprain</td>
<td>Nenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunburn</td>
<td>Hiyake no itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever/ Temperature</td>
<td>Netsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>Hairen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P22 - ILLNESSES** (insert into above table as necessary)  \(\Rightarrow\) check with H

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rash</td>
<td>Jinmashin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruise</td>
<td>(Butsuketa) kizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood nose</td>
<td>Hanagi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken arm</td>
<td>Areta ude (ude no kousetsu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runny nose</td>
<td>Hanamizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear ache</td>
<td>Zutsuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sore throat</td>
<td>Nodo no itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low blood pressure</td>
<td>Teiketsuatsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asthma</td>
<td>Zensoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>Tounyoubyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food poisoning</td>
<td>Shokuchuudoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart attack</td>
<td>Shinzou hossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun stroke</td>
<td>Nesshabyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>Hairen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetanus</td>
<td>Hashoufuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculosis (TB)</td>
<td>Kekkaku</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I’m in pain</th>
<th>Itai desu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Doctor (/physician)   | Isha       |
| Doctor (/medical/physician) | Ishi |
| Doctor's clinic       | lin        |
Medical specialist
Medical treatment
Medical science; medicine
Medical science; medicine

Eye drops

What seems to be the problem?
It hurts here.

Dou shimashita ka?
Koko ga itai desu.

TYPES OF PAIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pain</th>
<th>Itami</th>
<th>Constant pain</th>
<th>Zutto itai/zutto tsuzukete</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute pain</td>
<td>Kyuuni</td>
<td>Sharp pain</td>
<td>Surudai itai/gekitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burning pain</td>
<td>Yakeru you ni</td>
<td>Joint pain</td>
<td>Kansetsu no itai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle pain</td>
<td>Kinnikutsu</td>
<td>Throbbing pain</td>
<td>Zukizuki suru itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excruciating pain</td>
<td>Gamen deknai hodo</td>
<td>Piercing pain</td>
<td>Sashi komu you ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prickling pain</td>
<td>Chiku chiku to</td>
<td>Severe pain</td>
<td>Hidoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sporadic pain</td>
<td>Toki doki</td>
<td>Stabbing pain</td>
<td>Sasu you ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throbbing pain</td>
<td>Gan gan to / zuki zuki to</td>
<td>Throbbing pain</td>
<td>Zukizuki suru itami</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When do you feel pain?

Doctor: When do you feel pain?

When the area is pressed.
When the area is moved.
When the area is touched.
When I have a bowel movement.
When I urinate.
When I bend.
When I breathe.
When I chew something.
When I cough.
When I lie down.
Right after meals
When I swallow.

Expressions of general problems

I have [STATE SYMPTOM]

Watashi wa [ Choose from below] ga shimasu.

Chills                   Samuke
Palpitations            Douki
Feel ill                 Kibun ga warui
Have a headache          Atama ga itai
Have a toothache         Ha ga itai
Have a cough             Seki ga deru
Feel nauseous/sick      Hakike ga shimasu
Feel dizzy               Memai ga shimasu

Light-headedness        Tachi kurami
Short of breath         Iki gire
Fainted                 Kizetsu shimasita/Shisshin shita
Have a stomach ache     Onaka ga itai
Have a fever             Netsu ga itai
Bleeding                Chi ga deru
Feel a chill             Samuke ga shimasu
Have diarrhea            Geri ga shimasu
Be constipated  Benpi o shimasu
Get burnt  Yakedo o shimasu
Bone is broken  Kossetsu
Bruised my arm  Te o dabokushita
Cut my finger  Yubi o kita
Feel fatigued  Tsukaretta hiroushita
Sore throat  Nido ga itai.
Feel listless  Karada ga darui
Had a spasm  Hossa o okoshita
Dry mouth  Kuchi ga totemo kawakimasu
Abdominal pain  Fukutsuu

An [object] is stuck in my throat.
My ear is plugged and I can’t hear well.

I've (cut/burnt) myself.
I've been bitten by (a dog/insect).
It hurts here.
My daughter has a temperature.
I've lost a filling.

AT THE DOCTOR

The bone is broken.
You will need an operation.
I'll take your temperature.
We are going to take an X-ray.
Please lie down over there.
You must (rest/sleep.)
You mustn't (get up/run/exercise).
Please wait at reception while we get your medicines ready.

All over one’s body
ie: I ache all over.

Have a runny nose, cough and wheezing
He's got a peanut stuck in his throat.
He fell down the stairs, cut his hand, and hit his head. Kaidan kara ochite, te o kitte, atama o utta.

Hard of hearing
Earlobe
Some water got into my ear.

Ear, nose and throat department
High blood pressure
Low blood pressure

Show me your stomach.
I'll write you a prescription.
Do you (they) understand English?

I'm allergic to [noun].
Injection
Intravenous drip
Operation
Cold medicine
Fever medicine
Pain reliever, sedative
How many times a day should I take this?
Twice a day
Before eating
After eating
Take (medicine, tablets, etc.)
Insurance
Surgeon
You should consult a surgeon.

Kusuri wa ichinichi nankai nomeba ii desu ka?
Ichinichi ni-kai
Shokuzen
Fukuyou
Hoken
Gekai
Gekai ni soudan suru beki da.

AT THE DENTIST

EXPRESSIONS OF DENTAL PROBLEMS
I have a toothache.
I have a throbbing toothache.
I have an awful pain.
This tooth hurts.
I have a decayed tooth.
I broke a tooth.
I have a loose tooth.
I lost a filling.
Can you fill it temporarily?
Please fill it with gold/silver.
I have pain when I chew.
I have a pain deep in my jawbone.
I have a swollen mouth.
It feels like my teeth are loose (loosening).
The tooth hurts when I eat something hot/cold/sweet.

Should the tooth be extracted/taken out?)
Please don’t extract the tooth.
My denture/bridge/crown is broken.

I would like to have my teeth cleaned.

Dentist: I'll put in a temporary filling.
I'll have to take this tooth out.

Shiseki o totte kudasai.
Kari ni tsumete okimasu.
Kono ha wa nukanakutewa narimasen.
VISTING THE PEDIATRICIAN

Doc: What's the matter?
He's had a fever since last night.

Doc: What was his temperature yesterday?
It was 38.7 degrees.

Doc: Any diarrhea?
No, no diarrhea.

Doc: Did he vomit?
No, no vomiting.

Doc: Let me examine him…
I don't think it's anything serious.
Give him lots of fluids.
I'll give him some medicine for the cold….
and something to bring the fever down.

Admission to a hospital
Admission to a school
Income, earnings
Immigration
Immigration office

Sample sentences:
I checked into the hospital to have an operation. Shujutsu no tame nyuuin shita.

Medical departments and wards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information desk</th>
<th>Uketsuke</th>
<th>受付</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information desk for new patients</td>
<td>An-nai / shinkan uketsuke</td>
<td>案内 / 新患受付</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outpatient</td>
<td>Gairai</td>
<td>外来</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting room</td>
<td>Machiai shitsu</td>
<td>待合室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation room</td>
<td>Shinsatsu shitsu</td>
<td>診察室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery</td>
<td>Geka</td>
<td>外科</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatology</td>
<td>Hifu ka</td>
<td>皮膚科</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiology</td>
<td>Houhasen ka</td>
<td>放射線科</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentistry</td>
<td>Shika</td>
<td>歯科</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment room</td>
<td>Shochi shitsu</td>
<td>処置室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacy</td>
<td>Yakkyoku</td>
<td>薬局</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward (wing)</td>
<td>Byoutou</td>
<td>病棟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward (room)</td>
<td>Byou shitsu</td>
<td>病室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delivery room</td>
<td>Bunben shitsu</td>
<td>分娩質</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other signs and notices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emergency exit</th>
<th>Hijou (de)guchi</th>
<th>非常口</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Danger!</td>
<td>Kiken</td>
<td>危険</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Chuui</td>
<td>注意</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pull</td>
<td>Hiku</td>
<td>引く</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Push (or press)</td>
<td>Osu</td>
<td>押す</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MEDICAL DICTIONARY TERMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abortion</td>
<td>Ninshin chuuzetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abrasion</td>
<td>Suri kizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>Fukutsuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addiction</td>
<td>Tandeki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesive tape</td>
<td>Bansoukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administer medicine</td>
<td>Touyaku suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenaline</td>
<td>Adorenarin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Otona / Seijin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse reaction</td>
<td>Fuku sayou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>Adobaisu / Shiji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected area</td>
<td>Kanbu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIDS</td>
<td>Eizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ailment</td>
<td>Fukai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amputation</td>
<td>Setsudan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia</td>
<td>Masui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia - General</td>
<td>Zenshin masui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia - Local</td>
<td>Kyokubusi masui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesiologist</td>
<td>Masui ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthetic</td>
<td>Masui zai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Kousei busshitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment</td>
<td>Yoyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment - to make</td>
<td>Yoyaku suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment - made</td>
<td>Yoyaku shita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment - want to make</td>
<td>Yoyaku shita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment card</td>
<td>Shinsatsu ken / yoyaku ken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area code</td>
<td>Kyoku ban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artery</td>
<td>Doumyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthritis</td>
<td>Kansetsu-en / ryuumachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asthma</td>
<td>Zensoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asthma attack</td>
<td>Zensok hossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>Te ni hairu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backache</td>
<td>Haitusu / senaka no itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backbone</td>
<td>Sekichu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria</td>
<td>Saikin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance</td>
<td>Zandaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandage</td>
<td>Houtai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Ryousei no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>Chi / Ketsu-eki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>Ketsu-atsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High blood pressure</td>
<td>Kou ketsu-atsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low blood pressure</td>
<td>Tei ketsu-atsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood sugar</td>
<td>Kettou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood tests</td>
<td>Ketsu-eki kensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood transfusion</td>
<td>Yu-ketsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood type</td>
<td>Ketsu-eki gata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloody stools</td>
<td>Ketsu-ben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloody urine</td>
<td>Ketsu-nyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel movements</td>
<td>Bentsu / Otsuui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
<td>Nyuu gan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast feeding</td>
<td>Bonyuu eiyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To breathe</td>
<td>Iki o suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin cancer</td>
<td>Hifu gan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer tests</td>
<td>Gan kensa / Gan kenshin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac arrest/heart attack</td>
<td>Shinzou teishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell</td>
<td>Saibou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centigrade</td>
<td>Sesshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>Kimo serapii / kagaku ryouhou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childhood</td>
<td>Shouni ki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese medicine</td>
<td>Kanpou yaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiropractor</td>
<td>Sekichuu shiatsu ryouhou shi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circulation</td>
<td>Junkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood circulation</td>
<td>Ketsu-eki junkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinic</td>
<td>Shinryou jo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical chart</td>
<td>Karute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold sweat</td>
<td>Hiya ase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conception</td>
<td>Jutai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirmation</td>
<td>Kakunin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To confirm</td>
<td>Kakunin suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consciousness</td>
<td>Ishiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent form</td>
<td>Dou-I sho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation</td>
<td>Monshin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation fee</td>
<td>Shinryou hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation room</td>
<td>Shin-satsu shitsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contagious</td>
<td>Densen-sei no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deafness</td>
<td>Mimi ga kikoenai koto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Shi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep breath</td>
<td>Iki o ookiku suu koto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dental hygiene</td>
<td>Shika eisei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dental office</td>
<td>Shika i-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentistry</td>
<td>Shika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatologist</td>
<td>Hifuka-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatology</td>
<td>Hifuka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>Tou nyou byou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>Shindan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digestion</td>
<td>Shouka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digestive system</td>
<td>Shouka kikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digestive system tests</td>
<td>Shouka kikan no kensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctor's bill</td>
<td>Shinryou hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctor's office</td>
<td>I-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dream</td>
<td>Yume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver's license</td>
<td>Unten menkyo shou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry mouth</td>
<td>Koukatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear lobe</td>
<td>Mimi tabu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear ache</td>
<td>Mimi no itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency</td>
<td>Kyuu-kyuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency call</td>
<td>Kyuu-kyuu denwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency case</td>
<td>Kyuu-kan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency surgery</td>
<td>Kyuu-kyuu geka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzyme</td>
<td>Kouso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excrement</td>
<td>Haisetsu butsu / Dai-shou ben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyeball</td>
<td>Gankyuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye lid</td>
<td>Mabuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farenheit</td>
<td>Kashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat</td>
<td>Shibou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Netsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fever</td>
<td>Takai netsu / kou netsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild fever</td>
<td>Bi-netsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal fever</td>
<td>Hei-netsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fingerprint</td>
<td>Shimon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First aid</td>
<td>Oukyuu te-ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First aid kit</td>
<td>Kyuu-kyuu youhin isshiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food additives</td>
<td>Shokuin tenka-butsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food poisoning</td>
<td>Shokuin chuudoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures</td>
<td>Kossetsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Kaisuu / hindo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency of dose</td>
<td>Fukuyou kaisuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General anesthesia</td>
<td>Zenshin masui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health insurance</td>
<td>Kenkou hoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health insurance card</td>
<td>Kenkou hoken shou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How soon</td>
<td>Ato dore gurai de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice</td>
<td>Kouri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice cube</td>
<td>Kaku gouri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech impairment</td>
<td>Gengo shougai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) increase</td>
<td>Fueru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) decrease</td>
<td>Heru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>Kansen shou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injection</td>
<td>Chuusha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insect repellent</td>
<td>Mushi yoke / Jochuu zai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instructions</td>
<td>Shiyou hou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurance</td>
<td>Hoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurance card</td>
<td>Hoken shou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal organs</td>
<td>Naizou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpreter</td>
<td>Tsuuuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritable Bowel Syndrome</td>
<td>Ichou shougai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itch</td>
<td>Kayumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jellyfish</td>
<td>Kurage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) lie down</td>
<td>neru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) lie on one's back</td>
<td>aomuke ni neru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) lie on one's front</td>
<td>utsubuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life (daily)</td>
<td>Seikatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life span</td>
<td>Jumyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid diet</td>
<td>Suibun / ekitai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid medicine</td>
<td>Mizu gusuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver function test (blood test)</td>
<td>Kan kinou sokutei kensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of weight</td>
<td>Taijyu genshou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower back pain</td>
<td>Youtsuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower abdomen</td>
<td>Shiitara hara / kafuku-bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower abdominal pain</td>
<td>Kafuku-bu no itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower back</td>
<td>Koshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measurement</td>
<td>Sokutei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical certificate</td>
<td>Shindan shou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medication</td>
<td>Touyaku / yakubutsu chiryou kusuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma</td>
<td>Meranouma / Koku-shoku shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menstruation (periods)</td>
<td>Gekkei / Seiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild pain</td>
<td>Karui itami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molar</td>
<td>Kyuushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mole</td>
<td>Hokuro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouth-to-mouth resusitation</td>
<td>Jinkou kokyuu / sosei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nail clippers</td>
<td>Tsume kiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naked</td>
<td>Hadaka no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal spray</td>
<td>Hana zumari no kusuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve</td>
<td>Shinkei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Hiru / Shougo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal diet</td>
<td>Futsu shoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Often</td>
<td>Tabi-tabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovaries</td>
<td>Ransou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overnight (stay)</td>
<td>Hito ban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>Sanso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Painkillers</td>
<td>Chintsuu zai / Itami dome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panic</td>
<td>Kyoukyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paternal side</td>
<td>Fukei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment</td>
<td>Shi-harai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlegm</td>
<td>Tan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical examination</td>
<td>Shin-satsu / shintai kensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical strength</td>
<td>Tairyoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of birth</td>
<td>Shussei chi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poison</td>
<td>Doku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poisoning</td>
<td>Chuudoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>Houshin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure</td>
<td>Te-tsuuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process</td>
<td>Keika / Katei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puberty</td>
<td>Shishun ki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Myaku / Myaku-haku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid pulse</td>
<td>Myaku ga hayai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skipped pulse</td>
<td>Kettai myaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow pulse</td>
<td>Myaku ga osoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse rate</td>
<td>Myaku-haku suu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rape</td>
<td>Goukan / Boukou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reaction</td>
<td>Han-nou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) recover</td>
<td>Naoru / Kaifuku suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery</td>
<td>Kaifuku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectum</td>
<td>Choku-chou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-examination</td>
<td>Saishin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refund</td>
<td>Harai modoshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious</td>
<td>Shuukyou no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory system</td>
<td>Kokyuu ki kei kikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saliva</td>
<td>Tsuba / da-eki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sculp</td>
<td>Touhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serious</td>
<td>Omoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side effects</td>
<td>Fuku sayou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sneeze</td>
<td>Kushami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid diet</td>
<td>Kokei shoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm</td>
<td>Seishi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stiff shoulder</td>
<td>Kata kori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stuttering</td>
<td>Domori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td>Jisatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunlight</td>
<td>Nikkou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface</td>
<td>Hyoumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) swallow</td>
<td>Nomi-komu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swollen</td>
<td>Harete iru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) try</td>
<td>Yatte miru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tweezers</td>
<td>Ke nuki / pinsetto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Kata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulcer</td>
<td>Kaiyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) urinate</td>
<td>Oshikko o suru / Nyou o suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Oshikko / Nyou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccination</td>
<td>Yobou sesshu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) vaccinate</td>
<td>Yobou chuusha o suru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vein</td>
<td>Joumyaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visiting hours</td>
<td>Menkai jikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visitor</td>
<td>Houmon sha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) vomit</td>
<td>Haku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>Oto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Taijuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight gain</td>
<td>Taijuu zouka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td>Taijuu genryou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well (healthy)</td>
<td>Kenkou na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole body</td>
<td>Zenshin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-ray</td>
<td>Rentogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-ray examination</td>
<td>Rentogen kensa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the event of an earthquake

Designated assembly point  Hinanjo
Emergency exit  Hijouguchi
Epicentre  Shingenchi
Fire  Kaji/kasai
Fire extinguisher  Shoukaki

FIRE!

Smoke  Kemuri
Firetruck  Shoubousha
Fire extinguisher  Shoukaki <-- check with H
Axe  Ono
Fire extinguisher  Shoukaki
Where is fire extinguisher?  Shoukaki wa doko desu ka?

FIRE!

FIRE!

Smoke  Kemuri
Firetruck  Shoubousha
Fire extinguisher  Shoukaki <-- check with H
Axe  Ono
Fire extinguisher  Shoukaki
Where is fire extinguisher?  Shoukaki wa doko desu ka?

MISCELLANEOUS VOCABULARY LIST

Accident report  Jiko shoumei sho
Adult  Seijin
Aisle  Tsuuro
Apply for  Moushikomu
Asthma  Zensoku
Blood type  Ketsuatsu

Electrical outlet (powerpoint)  Konsento
Emergency exit  Hijouguchi
Enjoy  Tanoshimu
Entrance fee  Tanimu
Faint, pass out  Ishiki o nakusu
Feel sick  Kibun ga warui
Fits well  Pittari no
Food poisoning  Shokuatari
Fragile  Kawaremono
Free  Muryou no
Get better, heal  Naoru
Glad  Ureshii
Go back  Kaeru
Hangover  Futsukayoi
Honeymoon  Shinkon ryokou
Hurry  Isogu
Important  Juuyouna
Including tax  Seikomi no
Insect repellant  Mushiyome
Internet access  Netto setsuzoku
Issue, publish  Hakkou suru
Last train  Saishuu densha
Local train  Kakueki teisha
Lose one's way  Maigo ni naru

Additional charge  Tsuika ryoukin
Air conditioning  Reibou
All-day pass  Ichinichi ken
Application form  Moushikomi youshi
Bleed  Shukketsusuru
Blood pressure  Ketsueki gata

Emergency  Kinkyuu no
Emergency measure  Kinkyuu no
Fee  Tesuuryou / ryoukin
Eye drops  Megusuri
Fashionable  Ryuukou no
Fire station  Shoubou sho
Fix  Naosu
Fraud  Sagi
Full (of people)  Manseki no
Get lost  Michi ni mayou
Go across  Wataru
Go out  Shokutetsu suru
Heatstroke  Necchuushuo
Humidity  Shitsudo
Immediately  Sugu ni

In time  Maniau
Indigestion  Shoukafuyou
Inspection  Kenka
Jet lag  Shoukaisuru
Jet lag  Jisaboke
Lie down  Yoku ni naru

Look for  Sagasu
Lost and found  Ishitsubutsu soudanjo

Page - 267 -
Jon's Japanese V2012.doc
For FIRE, RESCUE or an AMBULANCE, dial  119

For POLICE, dial   110

Police general information in English (Tokyo)   03-3501 0110
For information about civil and criminal matters, crime prevention (bouhan), etc:
Seikatsu Anzen Soudan Center -  03 3503-8484
If you are having trouble with the police and want to file a claim:  03-3581-4321
Public Information Desk (kouhouka), ask for the Kakarichou.

For FIRE – Kaji desu (there’s a fire).  ___-ku, ___-cho, ___-chome, ___go (address)
_____ ga moete imasu (___ is on fire)

For AMBULANCE – Kyukyu desu (I need an ambulance).  ___-ku, ___-cho, ___-chome,
___go (address)  ___-desu (your name) ga kyubyo desu (It’s an emergency)

For information about hospitals that give treatment in foreign languages,
call 03-5285-8181  (in English, Chinese, Korean, Thai)

Phoning emergency services:
119 Ambulance
110 Police

I need an ambulance.
[Emergency service] OK. What happened?
My friend is lying unconscious!
Keep calm and give me your name and address.
Kyuukyuutai desu.
Kyuukyuusha, onegai shimasu.
Hai. Dou shimashita ka?
Tomodachi ga taorete, ishiki-fumei desu!
Ochitsuite, o-name to juusho o douzo.